DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 352 994 IR 054 349

TITLE	Commission on Preservation and Access Newsletter, Numbers 1-40, June 1988-November-December 1991.
INSTITUTION	Commission on Preservation and Access, Washington, DC.
PUB DATE	91
NOTE	187p.
AVAILABLE FROM	Commission on Preservation and Access, 1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, DC 20036-2117.
PUB TYPE	Collected Works - Serials (022)
JOURNAL CIT	Commission on Preservation and Access Newsletter; n1-40 Jun 1988-Nov-Dec 1991
EDRS PRICE	MF01/PC08 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	*Academic Libraries; Access to Information; Administrators; *Archives; Consortia; *Financial Support; Higher Education; *Library Cooperation; Organizational Communication; *Preservation; Private Agencies; Public Agencies; Public Policy
IDENTIFIERS	Brittle Books

ABSTRACT

This document is a compilation of 40 newsletter issues published by the Commission on Preservation and Access from 1988 through 1991. The Commission was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information. The newsletter reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The newsletter is not copyrighted, and its duplication and distribution are encouraged. The newsletters in this collection contain the following kinds of information: (1) organizational activities and sponsored projects; (2) funding announcements; (3) reviews of other published information pertaining to preservation; (4) activities of allied organizations; and (5) public policy developments. (KRN)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

ED352994

Commission on Preservation and Access Newsletter.

June 1988--November-December 1991.

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

Marian Sitts

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
Office of Educational Research and Improvement
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)

☐ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.

☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.

• Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official OERI position or policy.

IR054 349

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. / Washington, D.C. 20036 / (202) 483-7474

No. 1

NEWSLETTER

June 1988

(**Note to Readers:** This is the first issue of an occasional newsletter intended to inform members of the university community about activities of the Commission and information related to the national brittle books program. It is being sent to library directors and provosts of Association of Research Libraries member institutions.)

SIGNIFICANT INCREASE IN N.E.H. FUNDING FOR OFFICE OF PRESERVATION? The House Appropriations Subcommittee that deals with annual funding for the National Endowment for the Humanities is considering significant increases in the budget for a national preservation microfilming program. In hearings on March 17 and April 21, the Subcommittee on Interior and Related Agencies heard testimony from a score of library, foundation and NEH leaders on the need for Federal participation in a national program. NEH Chair Lynne Cheney, at the request of Subcommittee Chairman Sidney Yates (D-Ill.), produced alternative, "capability" budgets showing NEH's Office of Preservation budget increasing from $4.5 million to $12.5 million for the coming fiscal year (FY89), with continuing increases for the following four years to a level of $20.3 million. Testimony showed NEH and the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation to be the two largest funders of microfilming efforts in the nation. Decisions on the proposed increases are expected to be made in House and Senate committees by mid-summer.

STRUCTURE OF A NATIONAL COOPERATIVE MICROFILMING PROGRAM In testimony at the March 17 hearing, Commission President Pat Battin proposed a model for a national cooperative microfilming program. A goal of filming 150,000 volumes a year would require 20 institutions to commit to filming 7,500 volumes each. At the 150,000 annual rate, it would take about 20 years to film 3 million volumes -- the estimated number of volumes it would be important to save in order to preserve a representative portion of the 10 million or more volumes that will turn to dust by that time. Congressman Yates and Lynne Cheney, NEH Chair, have mentioned alternative strategies -- neither of which has been acted upon -- that would also meet or exceed the 3-million-volume goal. One objective of Battin's model is to show that the brittle book preservation problem has quantifiable objectives, and is not just an "insurmountable problem."

MELLON PRESIDENT ENDORSES INCREASED FUNDING FOR PRESERVATION William G. Bowen, former President of Princeton and now President of the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, has also urged support for federal participation in a national

(continued on reverse)

Patricia Battin
President

Peter Winterble
Program Officer

cooperative preservation microfilming program. In a letter to Rep. Sidney Yates following the April 21 hearing, Bowen wrote: 1) The general objective is to preserve the published heritage of the past 150 years; 2) The proximate goal is to create microfilmed master copies (of archival quality) of at least the estimated 3.3 million books that constitute a minimum "common core" of the collections at risk; 3) The national stake in achieving this goal deserves emphasis; 4) The institutional mechanisms are in place to get on with the job; 5) There is no inherent "capacity limitation" that stands in the way of moving ahead much more rapidly; 6) Support from other sources must be encouraged, but the likely magnitude of such support should not be exaggerated, and 7) A substantial federal investment in this area is not only badly needed but will also clearly yield long-term benefits to the country as a whole. The letter followed Bowen's earlier testimony, in which he said that the National Endowment for the Humanities was "by far" the single biggest funding source for humanities activities in the nation.

INCREASE IN NUMBER OF LIBRARIES WITH PRESERVATION PROGRAMS The number of university and research libraries with preservation departments has risen from five in 1978 to 54 in 1988, according to informal but authoritative discussions with staff of the National Preservation Program Office at the Library of Congress. The information was sought as part of the Commission's response to inquiries from Congressman Yates' office during the National Endowment for the Humanities appropriations hearings. Carolyn Morrow of the Library of Congress surveyed a list of university and research libraries and discovered 54 institutions where there are either designated preservation departments or staff persons, and where a noticeable level of preservation activity is occurring. The five institutions with active preservation components ten years ago were: Columbia University, the Library of Congress, Newberry Library, New York Public Library, and Yale University.

$1.5 MILLION GRANT FROM MELLON FOUNDATION The Commission has received a grant of $1,500,000 from the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, bringing the total of grants and pledges since the Commission's founding in 1986 to $2.8 million. The Mellon grant, to be used for research projects and other activities related to the establishment of a national collaborative microfilming program, was one of several large preservation-related grants announced by the foundation. Other awards went to Yale University and the University of California at Berkeley ($500,000 each); $370,000 was awarded to the Committee on Institutional Cooperation (Big Ten universities and Chicago) in support of cooperative preservation programs. All three cooperative microfilming project grants were tied to NEH matching funds.

SURVEY OF FOREIGN LIBRARIES' PRESERVATION RECORDS A project to explore the feasibility of creating an international database of bibliographic records for preserved items will begin in June. Under the direction of Hans Rutimann, former deputy director of the Modern Language Association, a survey of national libraries in Great Britain, France, West and East

(continued next page)

Germany, and Venezuela will be undertaken to: 1) Determine the extent to which preservation records exist in each country, 2) Identify the difficulties in converting records to machine-readable format and entering those records in a common database, 3) Agree on the level of bibliographic detail needed to exchange records easily, and 4) Determine the best way to proceed to create a shared database capacity. The project will also include the development of an agenda for a meeting of representatives from the participating countries and the preparation of a report documenting findings and outlining possible next steps. The project will be a key step in determining how to avoid overlap in filming of materials in the developing United States cooperative microfilming project.

MID-ATLANTIC PRESERVATION SERVICE TO STUDY ARCHIVAL MICROFICHE As many preservation microfilming experts know, archival standards for 105mm microfiche film do not yet exist. The Commission has contracted with the Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service in Bethlehem, PA, to conduct the necessary experiments with its new microfiche camera to allow the development of archival standards for microfiche similar to standards that now exist for 35mm film. Among the particular issues to be addressed in the study are: Operation of the 105mm step-and-repeat camera to assure uniform exposure and spacing; proper processing of 105mm roll film, including methylene blue testing; proper operation of a full-fiche quality review station, and other technical processes. The report, including recommendations for archival processing of 105mm film, is due by late 1988.

NATIONAL ADVISORY COUNCIL ON PRESERVATION TO MEET IN FALL The National Advisory Council on Preservation is intended to provide a link between organizations committed to preservation and the Commission on Preservation and Access. Its members include individuals designated by library, academic and scholarly organizations with an interest in preservation. Two new members of the Advisory Council have been named: David Hoekema, Executive Director of the American Philosophical Association, and John Howe, Interim Librarian of the University of Minnesota, both representing the American Council of Learned Societies. Preliminary plans for a fall meeting are underway.

"SLOW FIRES" FILM SHOWN IN VARIETY OF SETTINGS The film "Slow Fires: On the Preservation of the Human Record," has been shown widely on national public television stations and at several meetings and conferences, including the Modern Language Association annual meeting, the Association of American Publishers meeting, and the Association of College and Research Libraries meeting in Florence, Italy. The distributor reported that more than 200 copies of the film were sold in the last quarter of 1987, including the sale of 20 copies for use by United States Information Agency regional libraries throughout the world. Information about purchase or rental is available from the American Film Foundation, Box 2000, Santa Monica, CA 90406.

(continued on reverse)

LEARNING ABOUT ALKALINE PAPER One of the Commission's goals is the encouragement of increasing use of acid-free paper. Among paper manufacturers known to be producing significant quantities of alkaline paper is the P. H. Glatfelter Paper Company, of Spring Grove, Pennsylvania (near Harrisburg). In addition to the Spring Grove mill, the company also produces alkaline paper at two other mills in Pisgah Forest, NC, and Neenah, WI. Commission staff and four others from the Washington area visited the plant in March to see an alkaline-process mill first-hand, and to learn what is involved in changing an acid-process mill to alkaline production. Officials of the company said that capital, equipment and other costs were manageable, but that the single most important factor in effecting a changeover was commitment to making it work. The dedication required on the part of engineers, chemists, plant foremen, workers and management needs to be "110%," according to one officer of the company. The long-range payoff to converting to alkaline process, he added, includes cleaner mill operation, cleaner environment (especially water), and use of less expensive materials in the manufacturing process.

.Alkaline Paper Advocate newsletter, a good source of information about acid-free paper, is published periodically by Abbey Publications (320 E. Center Street, Provo, UT 84601.) Editor Ellen McCrady conducts a continuous search for papermakers who offer acid-free products; the current issue lists 38 mills that produce one or more lines of alkaline or neutral paper. Also reported: 30% of the 45,500 tons of printing paper produced each day in the nation is alkaline or neutral. One chemical company predicts that the percentage will climb to 50% in the next few years.

GETTY TRUST FUNDS CONFERENCE ON PRESERVATION OF ART HISTORY MATERIALS Scholarly books in the art history and architecture disciplines create special problems for preservation, for the intellectual content of such volumes is in both text and image. Normal black-and-white microfilm technology is not suitable for reproduction of these documents, and at present, no facile and cost-effective means of preserving them is known. The Getty Trust has provided funds to hold a two-day conference in late October to consider the issue; it will be chaired by Pat Battin and John Haeger, Vice President of the Research Libraries Group for Programs and Planning. Invited participants will be asked to explore the variety of preservation needs within the art and architecture disciplines, and to identify areas where research is needed to develop eventual solutions.

(If you would like to be on the mailing list for this Newsletter, please write to the Commission at the address shown on the front page.)

CPA06038

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. / Washington, D.C. 20036 / (202) 483-7474

No. 2 **NEWSLETTER** July 1988

COMMISSION IS INCORPORATED AS INDEPENDENT NONPROFIT ORGANIZATION On July 1, the Commission was created as a separate nonprofit corporation in the District of Columbia. The move, foreseen in the Brittle Books document that resulted in the creation of the Commission in 1986, followed approval by the Board of Directors of the Council on Library Resources, Inc. The Commission will remain in its present offices under a lease agreement with CLR. The Board of Directors of the new organization includes the present ten Commission members and President Patricia Battin. The members are: Billy Frye, Chairman; Millicent Abell, Herbert Bailey, James Govan, Vartan Gregorian, Kenneth Gros Louis, Warren J. Haas, Carole Huxley, Sidney Verba, and William Welsh. The Commission is funded by grants and pledges from several universities and foundations; under its charter, the Commission will continue to solicit funding for research and development projects to support its general goal of preservation of the human record in all formats, and its current specific goal of fostering a nation-wide, collaborative preservation microfilming program to save a significant portion of deteriorating materials in research and university libraries.

FUNDING INCREASE FOR N.E.H. OFFICE OF PRESERVATION? As of early July, Congressional action to increase funding for the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation was still pending. The increase as passed by the full House of Representatives in June would lift the Office's budget by $8 million, to $12.5 million for the coming fiscal year. A House-Senate Conference Committee was to be named by mid-July. If approved, the increase would launch a large-scale nation-wide preservation microfilming program administered by the Endowment.

RESEARCH LIBRARIES GROUP ENDORSES NATIONAL PROGRAM The Board of Governors of the Research Libraries Group (RLG), at its June 17 meeting, formally endorsed the national, collaborative preservation microfilming program as proposed to Congress in support of increased funding for N.E.H. The Board also approved RLG participation in implementing such a program should Congress approve the new funds. RLG has had extensive experience in cooperative microfilming programs, many of which have been funded by the Endowment with matching funds from the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation. RLG also reported that its RLIN network is sharing master microfilm records with OCLC, and that with the inclusion of 75,000 OCLC records, there are now 150,000 master microform records in the both the RLIN and OCLC databases, thus providing complete capability in either database for filming institutions to learn whether an item has been filmed.

(continued on reverse)

Patricia Battin
President

Peter Winterble
Program Officer

CONTRACT TO EXPLORE COPYRIGHT IMPLICATIONS IN MICROFILMING The Commission has commissioned Robert Oakley, Law Librarian of Georgetown University in Washington, D.C., to explore the statutory and legal aspects of the rights to microfilm deteriorating library materials that may be out of print, beyond the period of copyright, or within copyright but with unclear or unknown copyright provenance. Oakley will also provide an analysis of the constraints and opportunities for subsequent use of microfilm copies by scholars through sale, loan or transmission, and suggest mechanisms by which royalties might be paid to rightful owners of copyright without the necessity of negotiating a separate agreement for each item filmed.

USE OF ACID-FREE PAPER IN TRADE PUBLICATIONS At its June 21 meeting, the Commission endorsed a letter from member Herbert Bailey to Association of American Publishers President Nicholas Veliotes encouraging the use of acid-free paper in trade publications and suggesting the establishment of an AAP working committee to consider appropriate responses. At a meeting with Bailey and Commission President Battin, Veliotes agreed to pursue the issue.

BRITTLE BOOKS: AN ASSET MANAGEMENT ISSUE "A key part of understanding what is at stake in the brittle book issue is to recognize the enormous contribution both public and private universities have made over the decades to our nation's well-being by developing and supporting distinctive research collections. That contribution has not been to scholarship alone, but to the American people at large. Brittle books and the papers and manuscripts decaying in our archives represent a major social problem of concern to all of us. The brittle paper problem is indeed a problem of societal, and not just library-world, dimensions. Therefore, the brittle book problem represents a serious threat to a fundamental national asset -- an asset that undergirds our common knowledge, our symbolic code, perhaps as no other does. For within this national asset are the parts of our common knowledge that cannot be related to us except through books and documents in our libraries and archives -- because the narrators and speakers and players are long dead." -- From Congressional testimony on behalf of increased funding for preservation microfilming by N.E.H. by Patricia Battin, March 17, 1988.

Note to readers: As stated in the first issue, the Newsletter is being sent to library directors and provosts of Association of Research Library member institutions and allied organizations. Recipients are encouraged to copy and distribute the contents to their staffs; the Commission regrets it cannot, for economic reasons, respond to multiple requests for subscriptions from the same institution.

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. / Washington, D.C. 20036 / (202) 483-7474

No. 3 **NEWSLETTER** August 1988

A MESSAGE FROM THE PRESIDENT The Commission on Preservation and Access became incorporated as an independent tax-exempt public charity on July 1, 1988. The Commission's objectives as stated in its by-laws are "to foster, develop and support systematic and purposeful collaboration among all libraries, archives and allied organizations in order to insure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information." We have set as our initial priority, within that broad agenda, a major attack on the brittle books problem. The program has four major components: 1) Convince publishers to use alkaline paper; 2) Support and encourage the continuing feasibility of affordable deacidification facilities; 3) Capture the intellectual contents of a substantial number of brittle books in an archival master copy format; and 4) Establish new and effective access mechanisms to the preserved items. The achievement of this ambitious program can only occur and be sustained by the permanent integration of preservation activities into routine research library operations. In the end, our success will depend not upon dollars nor technology, but upon the human resources needed to make it happen.

During the past ten years, the number of preservation operations in American research libraries has increased from about 5 in 1978 to more than 50 in 1988, as universities have acted to institutionalize the activities necessary for the preservation of scholarly collections printed on acid paper. And we haven't yet begun to fight! What are the implications that this growing emphasis on preservation, and a new collective resolve to save a substantial portion of our intellectual heritage, have for available staff resources and the need for new educational and training programs within the next decade?

The prospect of a vastly increased long-term coordinated reformatting program sustained by federal funding will place additional pressures on university budgets, library organizational structures and staff resources as the new operations are integrated into existing organizations. It appears that the scale and objectives of the proposed program will require more than a simple expansion of concepts and activities developed to support modest microfilming efforts based on intermittently-available grant funds. As with other operations in a complex library environment, a fully integrated preservation activity will need to draw upon a wide range of existing expertise in both the library and the larger university community, as well as to develop new experts and skills.

Given the fact that the financial exigencies of our universities show little sign of mitigation during the next decade, we need to identify a set

(continued on reverse)

Patricia Battin
President

Peter Winterble
Program Officer

of reasonable expectations for a model preservation operation from the perspective of both programmatic and financial reality. What represents an optimal preservation operation within a large research library? What represents an **affordable** preservation operation? Can these two views be reconciled? What new talents and skills will be required? What talents and skills already exist in the library and the university? How can the traditional organizational structure be modified to link existing talent to productive participation in the preservation program? What educational and training programs will be required to supply the human resources necessary for success? Should these needs be met through formal education and credentialing processes, through workshops, internships, and/or through on-the-job learning and development experiences?

As an initial step in identifying these new needs, and to inform our planning for an orderly and cost-effective educational process, the Commission has invited a representative group of preservation librarians, library directors, senior library staff responsible for traditional operations, library educators, and foundation officers to participate in a wide-ranging discussion of these questions. The gathering is scheduled for mid-October. I would appreciate thoughts and comments from your particular perspective as you reflect on the implications for human resources as we seek to transform our preservation "cottage industry" to an expanded mass-production effort necessary to achieve our goal. -- P.B.

PRESERVATION IN COLLEGE LIBRARIES The roles of major liberal arts colleges in the national preservation program will be the subject of a late October meeting of the 60 liberal arts college library directors comprising the "Oberlin Group." Commission President Pat Battin and George Farr, head of the Office of Preservation at the National Endowment for the Humanities, will attend the meeting, which will be held at Amherst, Mount Holyoke and Smith Colleges, at the invitation of Willis Bridegam, Amherst Librarian.

BIBLIOGRAPHIC CONTROL ISSUES Among the technical issues involved in a nationwide preservation microfilming program is that of the appropriate level of bibliographic control required in order to meet the needs of both researchers and librarians. When a book is filmed, its record in a bibliographic utility must either be amended to show the existence of the book in microfilm format, or, under strictest Anglo-American cataloging rules, a new record must be created for the microform. Since creating a new record is very labor-intensive, cataloging costs can escalate from as little as $2 or $3 (for minimal-level notation) to $25 or more when a new, full record is created. In addressing this issue in the context of a subsidized filming program, the Commission has intially proposed reimbursement for minimal-level cataloging, with additional bibliographic needs being supported by participating institutions. Further discussion on the part of participating institutions, including information from scholars and other users of bibliographic databases, will be necessary in order to reach a working agreement on the level of cataloging required in the program.

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. / Washington, D.C. 20036 / (202) 483-7474

No. 4 **NEWSLETTER** September 1988

MORE ON PRESERVATION FUNDING FOR N.E.H. In what appears to be the last critical Congressional action on increased funding for the National Endowment for the Humanities, a House-Senate Conference Committee on August 9 voted a $153 million appropriation for the federal fiscal year beginning October 1, a $12.5 million increase over the current year's NEH budget. Senate members of the Conference Committee, who had previously passed a status-quo budget for the coming year, agreed with their House colleagues and voted to increase the budget to its new level.

Besides closing about a third of the so-called "parity gap" with NEH's companion organization, the National Endowment for the Arts, the $12.5 million increase represents funding for the first year of a multi-year, nation-wide microfilming program as proposed in an Office of Preservation "capability budget" prepared by NEH at the request of Rep. Sidney Yates (D-IL), chairman of the House Appropriations Subcommittee on Interior and Related Agencies (which has appropriations responsibilities for the agency). Congressman Yates had championed the cause of preservation microfilming throughout hearings before his Subcommittee this past March, and had held a special hearing in April to expand on the problem of brittle materials in the nation's libraries. His interest in brittle books was initiated in part by a fact-finding hearing conducted last year by Rep. Pat Williams (D-MT), chairman of the House Postsecondary Education Subcommittee, who has also supported the current proposed NEH increase. Congressman Williams and other members of the informal House Arts Caucus had in turn been made aware of the acid paper problem during a visit to the New York Public Library two years ago, where they viewed first-hand the deterioration of library materials caused by acid paper. Since that time many library organizations, including the Council on Library Resources, the Commission on Preservation and Access, and the Association of Research Libraries have provided technical and programmatic information at the request of both House subcommittees. Representatives also testified at hearings, along with leaders of the National Humanities Alliance, the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, the American Council of Learned Societies, and other organizations.

Although Conference Committee agreement is normally tantamount to final passage, both houses of Congress must pass the Conference agreement, after which the bill -- part of an Interior and Related Agencies appropriations package -- is sent to the President. John Hammer, executive director of the National Humanities Alliance, who worked intensively to coordinate support for the NEH increase among the library, humanities and academic communities, said recently that prospects remained good for passage. Final Congressional and White House action on the bill is expected in September.

Patricia Battin
President

Peter Winterble
Program Officer

The Office of Preservation's current budget is $4.5 million; the $12.5 million budget approved by the Conference Committee represents a significant increase in the Office's role both within NEH and in the preservation community. The capability budget identifies nearly $7.5 million in the coming year as being set aside for activities related to microfilming of library materials and newspapers. As stated in the capability budget, the contents of more than 3 million brittle books would be preserved over the next 14 years if Congress votes continued support of the program in succeeding years.

SCHOLARLY ADVISORY COMMITTEES ON SELECTION CRITERIA Commission President Patricia Battin has announced that the Commission has contracted with Henry Riecken, a program officer of the Council on Library Resources, to initiate and provide support to a series of Scholarly Advisory Committees. The purpose of the Committees, to be composed of scholars and librarians, will be: 1) to consider preservation selection criteria in light of the needs of the various academic disciplines; 2) to advise on priorities and program directions within each discipline; 3) to review and assess results as the project progresses, and 4) to act as liaison groups with the academic disciplines. Plans call for a close working relationship among Riecken, Stanley Katz, President of the American Council of Learned Societies, and George Farr, head of NEH's Office of Preservation, in order to develop a network of relationships with the scholarly community and to achieve an increasing degree of clarity and agreement as to preservation directions. Before coming to the Council last year, Dr. Riecken was Associate Director for Planning and Evaluation of the National Library of Medicine, and is the emeritus Francis Boyer Professor of Behavioral Sciences of the University of Pennsylvania, where he taught psychology and sociology. He is also a former president of the Social Science Research Council and a former Associate Director for Education of the National Science Foundation.

COMMITTEE ON ROLE OF MID-SIZED LIBRARIES Paula Kaufman, newly appointed Dean of Libraries of the University of Tennessee, has agreed to chair a committee on the role of mid-sized libraries in the developing national preservation microfilming program. The charge to the committee will be to identify the activities, contributions and productive linkages of mid-sized institutions to the proposed NEH-funded microfilming program.

cpa08298

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. / Washington, D.C. 20036 / (202) 483-7474

No. 5 **NEWSLETTER** October 1988

$12.5 MILLION APPROVED FOR N.E.H. PRESERVATION PROGRAM President Reagan has signed a Fiscal Year 1989 appropriation bill increasing the budget of the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation to $12.5 million -- $8 million more than the current budget. The new federal fiscal year begins October 1. The action effectively creates the nation-wide preservation microfilming program that has been endorsed by many in the library and academic communities -- and in Congress -- during the past two years (see June, July and September issues of the **Newsletter**). The program, to be administered by George F. Farr, Jr., of NEH's Office of Preservation, will seek to film 3 million volumes in the next two decades. As outlined in a multi-year NEH "capability budget," the plan would require increasing preservation microfilming funding to an annual level of $20.3 million by fiscal year 1993 and continuing at that level for several years. The total NEH appropriation for the coming year was $153 million.

ROLE OF MID-SIZED LIBRARIES IN PRESERVATION PROGRAM The role of mid-sized libraries in the nation-wide brittle book preservation program will be explored by a committee to be chaired by Paula Kaufman, Dean of Libraries of the University of Tennessee. The NEH program to reformat three million volumes over a 20-year period is based on the concept of a sustained funding commitment to a core group of large research libraries that will form the basic framework of the program. Because of the diverse and dispersed nature of American research collections, however, many other libraries with special collections and strengths in a variety of disciplines will be called upon to participate in the nation-wide program as it develops. In addition, libraries throughout the nation will benefit from the increasing resources available through the access part of the preservation program. Commission President Patricia Battin's charge to the Committee includes consideration of such topics as: Collection development and management objectives of the mid-size library, including new concepts arising from the nation-wide preservation program; mechanisms for integrating the unique resources of smaller institutions; and models for the role of a mid-size library in a nation-wide preservation program as it will affect library operations in the 21st century. Other members of the Committee are Sheila Creth, University of Iowa; C. Lee Jones, Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service; Thomas Michalak, Carnegie-Mellon University; Marilyn Sharrow, University of California at Davis; Joan Gotwals, Emory University; Jan Merrill-Oldham, University of Connecticut at Storrs; and David Stam, Syracuse University.

(Continued)

Patricia Battin
President

Peter Winterble
Program Officer

ARL PASSES RESOLUTION ENDORSING NATION-WIDE MICROFILMING PROJECT At a recent meeting in York, England, the Board of Directors of the Association of Research Libraries approved a resolution commending "the achievements of the Commission on Preservation and Access" and pledging continued support of its program objectives. The meeting was held jointly with SCONUL, a British university and research library association similar to ARL, where preservation issues were widely discussed. The ARL Board will also communicate the Association's appreciation to Rep. Sidney Yates (D-IL), chairman of the House Appropriations Subcommittee on Interior and Related Agencies "for his longstanding concern for preservation of research materials, and to thank him for his leadership in securing a significant increase in federal support in this area." Finally, the Board also commended the National Endowment for the Humanities for its leadership in "marshalling the resources needed to resolve the brittle book problem in research libraries." It is anticipated that many ARL institutions will be participants in the expanded NEH preservation microfilming program.

CPA10048

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. / Washington, D.C. 20036 / (202) 483-7474

No. 6 **NEWSLETTER** November 1988

SEMINAR ON PRESERVATION ISSUES FOR SCHOLARLY RESOURCES FOR ART HISTORY

Scholarly books in the disciplines of art history and architecture create special problems for preservation because the intellectual content is contained in both text and image. A seminar, sponsored by the Getty Grant Program (see June, 1988, **Newsletter**), was held at Spring Hill, Minnesota, in late September to consider the preservation status of art history collections, the specialized requirements of art historians because of their dependence on images, and strategies for productive participation in a massive, federally-supported reformatting program. A background paper was commissioned for the meeting, which was attended by art historians, librarians, technical experts, and a university press editor.

The focus of the seminar was the preservation of the intellectual content of brittle books rather than the conservation of artifacts. The group recommended that a survey of photo archives be conducted to determine the extent of deterioration and to propose strategies for a major conservation program. The discussions centered around three major concerns: 1) the intellectual requirements of art history scholarship; 2) a selective review of existing technologies; and 3) the development of a series of recommendations for action. The participants agreed on three basic assumptions: 1) scholarship in art history is dependent upon images; 2) the current preservation process of black-and-white microfilm is not satisfactory for the reproduction of half-tone and continuous tone images; and 3) the preservation process must result in enhanced access to the scholarly resources.

The group recommended the establishment of a joint task force to develop basic premises, priorities, and overall strategies for a long-range preservation effort, including selection criteria and consideration of use of different formats. The task force should include representatives from a wide range of organizations, including ARLIS/NA, the American Association of Museums, the American Institute of Architects, the Archeological Institute of America, the College Art Association, the Society of Architectural Historians, and the Art and Architecture Program Committee of the Research Libraries Group. Proposed short-term strategies include filming only those publications amenable to black-and-white photography for the next two or three years while other possibilities, such as color microfilm and digital technologies are explored in prototype demonstration projects. An organized effort should be made to identify the requirements for digitizing color film and to develop the specifications for the art historian's workstation for future scholars. The long-term research agenda includes investigation of environmental issues for a variety of storage formats, research on the archival potential for color film, and the promotion of efforts to develop indexing standards for the classification of visual images.

The seminar was chaired by Patricia Battin and John Haeger, Research Libraries Group Vice President for Programs and Planning. A full report, including the background paper, will be issued by the Commission in early 1989.

(continued)

Patricia Battin
President

Peter Winterble
Program Officer

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

SLOW FIRES FILM TO BE RE-BROADCAST IN JANUARY "Slow Fires: On the Preservation of the Human Record" will be offered for broadcast again on the national Public Broadcasting System on Monday, January 2, 1989. PBS will provide the hour-long film to its approximately 300 television outlets via satellite that day and individual stations will be able either to broadcast it at the time of satellite transmission, or to tape it for later broadcast. Local PBS station scheduling departments should be consulted for actual time and date of broadcast. The film was first aired last spring, and more than 700 copies in a variety of formats have been purchased in North America and worldwide.

SENATOR PELL TO INTRODUCE CONGRESSIONAL RESOLUTION ON USE OF ACID-FREE PAPER Sen. Claiborne Pell (D-RI) will reintroduce a proposed joint Senate-House resolution calling for the establishment of a national policy on permanent papers when the 101st Congress is convened in January. He introduced the resolution "for the record" in the waning days of the 100th Congress, although it was not acted upon. The resolution urges federal agencies, publishers, and paper manufacturers to make acid-free paper the standard for all publications deemed to be of enduring value. The resolution would require directors of the three national libraries to monitor the nation's progress in implementing a national policy, and report annually to Congress.

AUTHORS AND PUBLISHERS IN SUPPORT OF PRESERVATION OF THE PRINTED WORD, an organization started by New York writer Barbara Goldsmith and co-chaired by Ms. Goldsmith and Vartan Gregorian, President of the New York Public Library, will solicit commitments from authors and publishers to have first printings on acid-free paper. Writers and publishers "taking the pledge" to do so will be honored at a ceremony at NYPL next March. At the same time, the library has established a Center for Paper Permanency which, according to Ms. Goldsmith, will serve as a clearinghouse for information about efforts to encourage the increased manufacture and use of acid-free paper.

TAPPI INSTITUTE HOLDS CONFERENCE ON PERMANENT PAPER The TAPPI (Technical Association of the Pulp and Paper Industry) Institute conducted a three-day symposium on paper permanency in Washington in late October. Attended by an international group of paper producers, paper chemists, and librarians, the conference focused on developments in the fields of acid-free paper manufacture, paper chemistry, and mass deacidification processes. Paper producers predicted that within the next two to three years, the amount of uncoated and coated acid-free paper produced in the U.S. would double from 1987 levels. A major reason cited for the increase was a change in the economics of paper manufacture, including cheaper availability of calcium carbonate, the filler used in producing alkaline paper. Commission President Patricia Battin presented a paper on practical choices on collection preservation, and Chairman Billy Frye provided concluding remarks at the conference, in which he congratulated TAPPI on recognition of a serious social problem and the organization's willingness to devote an annual conference to the subject. Strong support for the ongoing nation-wide preservation program currently being funded through the National

(continued)

Endowment for the Humanities was voiced by three congressional speakers at the conference, Sen. Mark Hatfield (R-OR), Rep. George Brown (D-CA), and Rep. Major Owens (D-NY).

SURVEY SHOWS CONTINUED USE OF ACID-FREE PAPER BY UNIVERSITY PRESSES A study conducted by the American Association of University Publishers and the Association of Research Libraries has revealed that nearly all university presses continue to affirm the use of acid-free paper in their publications. In a virtually complete response, 96% of AAUP members indicated they used permanent or alkaline paper in publishing; nearly 60% use permanent paper in all books, while 14% use it in all books except paperbacks. Copies of the report are available from ARL for $15. (ARL/OMS, 1527 New Hampshire Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20036).

UPDATE ON N.E.H. PRESERVATION PROGRAM George Farr, head of the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation, reports that as of early November, about 15 individual institutions and consortia were discussing with NEH the submission of proposals for filming of major collections under the expanded program. The deadline for completed preservation proposals is December 1. The Office's funding was increased by $8 million, to $12.5 million, for the current federal fiscal year. (See October and prior issues of **Newsletter**.)

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS MICROFILMING FUNDING INCREASED An important and distinct effort in the nation-wide filming plan is the commitment by the Library of Congress to film one million volumes at the same time filming of a proposed three million volumes is occurring in other research and university libraries. LC requested and received an additional $765,000 for the current fiscal year to increase its level of filming in proportion to the NEH-funded filming.

CONTRACTS APPROVED FOR MICROFILM TECHNOLOGY, RECORDS CONVERSION, CONSERVATION The Commission has approved several contracts related to the nation-wide preservation microfilming program. Contracts were approved with the Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service (MAPS) in Bethlehem, Pa., to 1) Develop archival standards for the processing of microfiche; 2) Develop a high-speed density checking capacity for roll film processing; and 3) Support development of specifications with the Xerox Corporation for a special composing reducing camera capable of digitizing 35mm film, producing film in difference reductions (roll and fiche), paper, and creating CD-ROM products. The Commission also approved a contract with the Research Libraries Group to study technical capabilities for scanning and converting existing bibliographic records of preserved materials to machine-readable format, and approved a contract with Barclay Ogden, preservation administrator at the University of California-Berkeley, for a research paper on the intellectual rationale for conservation of the book as artifact.

CPA11108

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. / Washington, D.C. 20036 / (202) 483-7474

No. 7 **NEWSLETTER** December 1988

FUNDING FOR PRESERVATION: A YEAR-END VIEW Nearing the end of what has been a productive year in pursuing the "preservation enterprise," it is both encouraging to note some successes and important to restate some desired outcomes. On the national level, the voting by Congress of a significant increase in funding for the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation ranks as an important event in several ways. It reflected the federal system's ability to look at and respond to a difficult and complex problem, as shown by the intensive involvement of key leaders in Congress, the Endowment, and the Library of Congress. It showed the effectiveness of collaborative efforts by a variety of institutions -- universities, foundations, libraries, nonprofit organizations -- in stating the case for preservation. Not least, it began to bring the problem of acid paper and brittle books from the "insurmountable" category into the realm of "difficult but possible." Many who read this Newsletter have had their share in making it happen. Other institutions -- notably foundations -- have provided continuing and significant funding for cooperative microfilming projects, for a regional microfilming facility, and for other activities needed to establish the necessary infrastructure to help make a nation-wide preservation program a reality. When comparing the financial accomplishments of the last year to what had been only imagined in years past, preservation has come a long way.

What remains to be done after a good launch is the necessity of keeping the preservation ship steaming and fitting it out for the long haul. Keeping the nation-wide program steaming will require encouraging Congress to continue funding for preservation along the lines of the NEH capability budget, which in order to work needs to be reauthorized each Congressional session. It will require encouraging foundations to begin, to continue and to expand their support of this national effort, both in the filming of brittle materials and in the establishing of a centralized facility for storage and retrieval of preserved materials. It will require state and local governments to assess, much as the federal government has done, appropriate responsibilities in working to preserve the collections within their jurisdictions. And, it will require university administrations to continue to realize that the costs of establishing effective preservation programs in libraries cannot be accommodated only within traditional library operating budgets.

As for "fitting out," there are several continuing roles the Commission can play in the coming years to assist in the overall preservation program. The Commission's mandate to be involved in research and demonstration projects continues. Among the items being addressed -- and for which continued funding is required -- are the development of the concept of the centralized storage and retrieval facility for preserved materials; analyzing the special needs of differing academic disciplines in reformatting their deteriorating materials; fostering the increased

(continued on reverse)

Patricia Battin
President

Peter Winterble
Program Officer

production and use of acid-free paper for publications of enduring value; monitoring new technologies that may be used in preservation activities; assessing the potential for international cooperation and collaboration in preservation; and exploring educational requirements to provide the necessary talent for institutions as they "fit out" for the long haul.

An important start has been made in getting preservation planning, filming and research launched in the past year. The challenges cited above, applying to everyone involved with preservation, will continued to be addressed as we move into the next stage of institutionalizing preservation as an ethic in American libraries and culture.

EXPANDED PRESERVATION ACTIVITY CREATES NEED TO ASSESS EDUCATION, STAFF As preservation activities increase in research libraries and archives throughout the nation, a parallel need has emerged for new educational programs and a reassessment of existing staff functions and alignments. These and other concerns were addressed during a day-long meeting in October, sponsored by the Commission and attended by a group of library directors, senior library officers, preservation specialists, and foundation representatives. There was general agreement that a greater share of financial and staff resources would be required than in the past, and that expanded educational programs would be needed to provide the necessary talent to manage and integrate increased preservation activity into library systems. How those resources will be obtained and allocated, and the structure of the necessary educational programs, were seen as open questions with a variety of solutions.

The preservation challenge was likened to the automation and retrospective conversion activities of the past two decades, in which libraries generally were required by financial and other circumstances to integrate major project activities into existing staff structures and to seek both outside funding and outside vendors to meet goals. It was further suggested that, in dealing with an emerging and expanding preservation challenge, libraries would need to lead with programs and priorities that focus on the inclusion of preservation as a shared staff agenda, so as to minimize overhead costs and to produce solutions within existing staffing structures.

Educational requirements appear to have both short- and long-term needs; brief courses and training opportunities for mid-level managers as their working responsibilities are restructured, and formal degree programs to develop the specialized skills and knowledge base required for the future. Also seen as educational needs were teaching management how to plan and implement comprehensive preservation plans, and providing technical staff education in conservation and preservation techniques. A variety of educational experiences -- from classwork to on-the-job training -- could be offered to begin to address learning needs.

Several specific strategies for responding to educational requirements were outlined. The long-term, continuing needs include an analysis of currently available education programs, and how they might be evaluated and expanded; the need for more formal education programs such as the Columbia model for those wanting to develop a preservation specialty within the library profession; development of preservation components in the MLS curriculum for all students, regardless of specialization; stronger faculty

expertise in both teaching and research in collection preservation; integration of archivists' concerns into MLS programs; and development of programs for technicians and two-year colleges and vocational institutes.

Short-term needs were seen to include short courses for mid-career librarians in preservation administration, such as those offered by the University of California for six-to-nine month periods; formal year-long programs in library schools for mid-career librarians with management strengths; short courses and workshops for curators, bibliographers and others to make easier the reorganization of responsibilities to include preservation concerns; and a series of technical training videotapes to substitute for or add to workshops.

Finally, the group recommended that the Commission establish a committee of library educators and librarians to specify in detail the requirements of recommended programs and ways to establish them.

ESTABLISHMENT OF SCHOLARLY ADVISORY COMMITTEES ON PRESERVATION As noted in an earlier Newsletter, the Commission has embarked on the establishment of several Scholarly Advisory Committees, which are being asked to help develop a strategy for preservation and a set of priorities for selecting what is to be saved in each of the major fields of scholarship. The first committee to be constituted is the Scholarly Advisory Committee on History. Its members are Professor John Howe, Department of History and Interim Director of Libraries, University of Minnesota (Chair); Dr. Margaret Child, Assistant Director, Smithsonian Institution Libraries; Dr. Larry J. Hackman, Director, State Archives and Records Administration, University of the State of New York; Professor Anna Nelson, Department of History, Tulane University; Professor Emiliana Noether, Department of History, University of Connecticut; Professor Mary Beth Norton, Department of History, Cornell University; and Dr. David H. Stam, University Librarian, Syracuse University. The first meeting of the committee is scheduled for January 23-24 in Washington. Additional committees of scholars in philosophy, art history, and modern languages and literature are in the process of establishment and will be announced in the next Newsletter.

12058

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. / Washington, D.C. 20036 / (202) 483-7474

No. 8 **NEWSLETTER** January 1989

SURVEY OF FOREIGN LIBRARIES' PRESERVATION RECORDS The project to explore the feasibility of creating an international database of bibliographic records (see June 1988 **Newsletter**) is making progress. Hans Rutimann, the project coordinator, has visited the national libraries in Great Britain, East and West Germany, and Austria; the libraries in Venezuela and France are scheduled to be visited in January and February. In addition, following leads from initial visits, Rutimann has met with staff members of the Stadt- und Universitaetsbibliothek in Frankfurt-am-Main, the Bayerische Staatsbibliothek in Munich, and the Swiss National Library in Berne.

It is too early for a detailed analysis of possible overlap abroad in the filming of deteriorating library materials. However, it is clear that concern about these materials is widely shared. Apart from differences of opinion concerning preservation problems, the fact is that some large-scale microfilming projects abroad have either begun or are in the planning stages.

For example, the Stadt- und Universitaetsbibliothek in Frankfurt is coordinating a project--funded in part by the Volkswagen Foundation (Stiftung Volkswagenwerke)--to film important collections systematically. Representatives from the participating libraries (Berlin, Freiburg, Marburg, Wuerttemberg, Wolfenbuettel, Munich, and Goettingen) will meet this month in Frankfurt to establish final guidelines for the project. Dr. B. Kossmann, Director of the Stadt- und Universitaetsbibliothek in Frankfurt, has agreed to report to conference participants on the Commission's work and to discuss ways of broadening Frankfurt's initial concept to include mechanisms for international dissemination of bibliographical data about filmed items.

Also important to our project is a study in progress at the Bavarian State Library (Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Munich). Under the direction of Drs. E. Lapp and U. Montag, a survey of German libraries will lead to guidelines for the acquisition, creation, and bibliographical control of microforms in research libraries. This study will have a significant impact on the German library community, and our ongoing dialogue with the Library could, in the opinion of its director, influence the guidelines.

"BRITTLE BOOKS" REPRINT IS AVAILABLE The Commission has a limited supply of reprints of the Brittle Books document describing the evolution of the Council on Library Resources' studies leading to the establishment of the Commission in 1986. For more information, please write to Pamela Block.

(continued)

Patricia Battin
President

Peter Winterble
Program Officer

NATIONAL ADVISORY COUNCIL ON PRESERVATION TO MEET IN JANUARY The National Advisory Council on Preservation, established by the Commission to promote preservation goals in a variety of academic, governmental, and professional organizations, will meet in Washington on January 26. The meeting will include presentations and discussion on matters of current interest in the preservation program, such as, The National Endowment for the Humanities' preservation program; preservation challenges and concerns in national and state archives; international preservation activities; and the establishment of scholarly advisory committees on preservation priorities in the academic disciplines. Members of the Commission will also be in attendance.

ELLEN McCRADY HONORED BY ALA RESOLUTION Ellen McCrady, publisher and editor of both the Abbey Newsletter and the Alkaline Paper Advocate, has been honored in a resolution sponsored by the Preservation of Library Materials Section of the Resources and Technical Services Division of the American Library Association. The resolution commends McCrady for "her singular work, on behalf of all libraries, to promote the preservation of library materials and the production of alkaline paper."

IMAGE PERMANENCE INSTITUTE COMMENDED The PLMS section of ALA also commended the Image Permanence Institute of Rochester, New York, for contributing significantly to the clarification of image stability issues as they relate to preservation microfilming; for providing an objective evaluative service for photographic and other imaging media, and for providing guidance on proper archival processing, storage, and handling of imaging media. Both resolutions were passed at the ALA New Orleans meeting in July 1988.

INFORMATION PACKAGE ON ALKALINE PAPER PRODUCED BY ARL The Association of Research Libraries has published a briefing package on alkaline paper, "Preserving Knowledge: The Case for Alkaline Paper." Sponsored by ARL, the Commission, and the National Humanities Alliance, the package is being made available to representatives of government, Congress, higher education, and industry as part of a campaign to promote the increasing production and use of alkaline paper.

MEIJI IMPRINTS MICROFORM PROJECT The Waseda University Library in Tokyo plans to film its collection of Meiji imprints totalling about 70,000 monograph volumes and 60,000 bound periodical volumes. The Library will then film the Meiji imprints of other libraries and institutions in Japan and worldwide not found in its own collection. The Library is currently creating a database of bibliographic records of its foreign publications. The Japan MARC records from the preservation project will provide retrospective conversion of the Library's distinctive Japanese holdings.

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. / Washington, D.C. 20036 / (202) 483-7474

No. 9 **NEWSLETTER** February 1989

PERSONNEL CHANGES Maxine Sitts has accepted appointment as Program Officer, effective February 21, 1989. She will be responsible for the development of an expanded communications program, including the **Newsletter**, and will assist in the preparation of the broad range of reports, grant proposals, and other written communications essential to the Commission's effectiveness. She will also participate in a variety of program activities and serve as an active liaison with colleagues in the field. Ms. Sitts brings her considerable talents to the Commission from the Association of Research Libraries, where she was Program Officer for Publications and Information Services in the Office of Management Services from 1982 to the present. Prior to that time, she served as Information Services Specialist for the Office of Management Studies from 1977-1981. She also spent six years at Stanford University as Publications Director for the ERIC Information Resources Clearinghouse.

Peter Winterble resigned as Program Officer, effective December 31, 1988, to move to New York City.

COMMISSION ADDS NEW MEMBER Richard De Gennaro, Director of the New York Public Library, was elected as the twelfth member of the Commission on Preservation and Access by the Commission as its quarterly meeting on January 25, 1989. The Commission also noted that the membership now includes the perspective of a university president with the appointment of Vartan Gregorian to the leadership of Brown University.

COMMITTEE ON COLLEGE LIBRARIES The Commission has established a Committee on College Libraries to consider the role of small colleges in the national preservation program. Kathleen Spencer, Librarian at Franklin and Marshall, has accepted the chairmanship of the group. The members include Willis Bridegam, Amherst College; Caroline Coughlin, Drew University; Barbara Brown, Washington and Lee University; Joel Clemmer, Macalester College; David Cohen, College of Charleston; Jacquelyn Morris, Occidental College; and David Kearley, University of the South. The first meeting will be held on February 21.

COLOR MICROFILM POTENTIAL EXPLORED Lee Jones, President of the Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service (MAPS), and James Reilly, Director of the Image Permanence Institute, made a recent visit to the laboratories of Herrmann & Kraemer (H&K), a small color slide and microfiche duplicating company in Garmisch-Partenkirchen, West Germany. The purpose of their travel, sponsored by the Commission, was to investigate the camera technology developed by Herrmann and Kraemer for high-quality color microfilming for preservation purposes. The firm has developed cameras and processing technology now being used in filming projects at the Vatican and the Bildarchiv Foto Marburg.

The H&K cameras can routinely achieve 200 lines per millimeter in resolution, with a range to 240 or 250 not unusual, as compared to the 140 lines per millimeter capacity of the standard microfilm camera. The camera height can be

(continued)

adjusted to 1/4000 of a millimeter for focusing accuracy. A variety of appropriate parameters have been fed into microcomputers which then drive such functions as light exposure, film advance, and a combination of exposure time and lens opening. Transparencies made by H&K can be processed through a digitizing copier, such as the Canon product now on the market, and produce extraordinary color reproductions on paper.

In addition to their color technology, the company has greatly improved the process for producing a high-quality continuous tone black-and-white microfilm. Although their major business is duplication of color slides and transparencies, the small, established, family-owned business is very much interested in participating in the preservation effort. They have designed probably the most advanced book cradle in the world, according to Lee Jones, for use in filming older, tightly bound, rare books which can be opened only 90 degrees without harming the binding.

Negotiations are underway with H&K to establish a demonstration project at MAPS to investigate the potential of this technology for art history materials, maps, and other visual resources requiring accuracy, stability, and high resolution of the reproduction.

HISTORY SCHOLARLY ADVISORY COMMITTEE MEETS The Scholarly Advisory Committee on History met at the Commission on January 23-24 to begin exploring the complex and ramified questions of strategy for preserving those materials that are of special interest to historians. Because this was the first of a series of meetings, it would be premature to report any definitive conclusions about strategy, but certain points on which there was firm agreement can be mentioned.

The Committee agreed that there was no such thing as a "core" body of materials for historical research. Scholars in the field range over a wide variety of materials and formats in doing historical research, and materials of interest keep changing. It is very difficult to predict the future course of historical inquiry, and it would be unwise to base a preservation strategy upon topics or themes.

There was considerable discussion of the differences between books and journals on the one hand and archives and manuscripts on the other. It was pointed out that archives serve many users who are not scholars but who need documentation of some point of fact. Archives thus have a kind of public accountability and responsibility that goes beyond scholarly use, and different criteria may be required for selection for preservation. Books usually exist in multiple copies and are likely to have a broader scholarly audience. Strategies for the preservation of books are more amenable to interinstitutional sharing, and the idea of a national collection in microfilm format for storage purposes is a very natural one. Furthermore, the bibliographic control that makes books accessible ordinarily does not obtain for archives. The differences between the two types of materials are great enough to suggest that they should be handled separately and the distinction between them be preserved for the purposes of the Committee on History.

The Committee tentatively explored a range of approaches to selection criteria, and their deliberations, although inconclusive at the first meeting, established directions for continuing discussions at future meetings.

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W. / Washington, D.C. 20036 / (202) 483-7474

No. 10 **NEWSLETTER** March 1989

ROWLAND BROWN WILL CHAIR THE TECHNOLOGY ASSESSMENT ADVISORY COMMITTEE now being constituted by the Commission. Brown, former President of OCLC, will head up a small group of senior people from universities, industry, and the publishing community who will be exploring technologies with potential for preservation activities. As now envisioned, the Committee will have several initial objectives:

* Active consideration of the potential of new technologies for storage and retrieval within the context of a national collection of preserved items, including technologies for capturing information and networking capacities;

* Recommendation and review of research and demonstration projects to be funded by the Commission;

* Consideration of issues involved in the preservation of electronic formats and the preservation of media including motion-picture film and sound recordings.

By establishing this Committee, the Commission expects to influence and help shape the application of emerging technologies for preservation purposes, some of which will mature and become routinely available during the next 20 years. Decisions to use untested formats for archival storage will involve a range of issues beyond their technical capacities for storage, access, and image reproduction. These issues, to be explored by the Committee, include longevity of the format, technical standards, hardware and software standards, cost-effectiveness, convenient user access, and assurance of continuing market availability.

Constituencies to be represented on the Committee reflect the close interrelationships among available technologies, the capacity of the higher-education community to provide access to electronically stored materials, and the primary publication formats of the future.

It is expected that the group will be fully constituted and hold its first meeting in May 1989.

WITH 19 COSPONSORS, SJ RES. 57 ON PERMANENT PAPER was introduced by Senator Claiborne Pell on February 8, 1989. The resolution seeks to establish a national policy to promote the printing of books and other publications of enduring value on alkaline, permanent papers. The measure is almost identical to SJ Res. 394, introduced late in the last Congress. Action is needed, says ALA's Washington Office, to encourage additional cosponsors to move the legislation through the process this year. Senators who are members of the Governmental Affairs Committee are especially important.

BRITISH LIBRARY PRESERVATION RECORDS WERE LOADED successfully into the RLIN BOOKS and SERIALS files early last month, reports C. James Schmidt, RLIN vice president and director. This action is a first step toward the eventual development of an international data base of bibliographic records, and can serve as a viable model for future projects. RLIN expects to receive and load BL records monthly.

FOR THE FIRST TIME, RECORDS FROM SEVERAL ORGANIZATIONS are included in the RLIN Register of Microform Masters. The August 1988 Register includes records added to the RLIN data base as part of the OCLC-RLG exchange of master negative records, as well as records on tapes from the Library of Congress, University Microfilms International, and the American Theological Libraries Association. The new publication includes entries for more than 120,000 master microfilm negatives cataloged in RLIN, as well as about 5,000 entries for materials scheduled for filming at RLG-member institutions.

Service copies of microform masters listed in the Register can be obtained from the institutions represented. The list of scheduled filming can help other libraries avert costly duplicate filming. For more information, contact Publications Coordinator, Central Support Services, RLG, Inc., 1200 Villa Street, Mountain View, CA 94041-1100.

THE ARL BRIEFING PACKAGE ON ALKALINE PAPER mentioned in the January 1989 Newsletter is being made available to a wider constituency by the Association of Research Libraries, which developed the folder of fact sheets and articles with the support of the Commission and the National Humanities Alliance. "ARL Briefing Package Number 3, Preserving Knowledge: The Case for Alkaline Paper" contains seven overview and background pieces, including a readable summary of frequently asked questions and answers; three articles on paper industry advances; three statements of author/publisher activities; and two statements on U.S. government response. The package has been sent to directors of 250 academic libraries. Additional copies are available for $7.00, prepaid, from: ARL, 1527 New Hampshire Ave., N.W., Washington, DC 20036.

SLOW FIRES HAS BEEN SELECTED to be shown at the Ninth Annual Film and Video Festival, to be held in conjunction with the Council on Foundations Fortieth Annual Conference, April 10-12, 1989, in Toronto. The Festival recognizes grantmakers' use of film and video to communicate messages important to their priorities and programs. Copies of "Slow Fires" remain available for sale in videotape and for rental and sale in 16mm format from the American Film Foundation, Santa Monica, CA. (Contact the Commission for a brochure and order form.)

OPTIONS FOR COLLEGE LIBRARY INVOLVEMENT in the national preservation program were explored by the eight members of CPA's Committee on College Libraries at its first meeting February 21, 1989. Library directors from institutions representative of the nation's liberal arts colleges developed three priorities for initial study and possible action:

* The identification of common preservation program elements and needs within the college library setting, and suggestions for local or regional training programs;

* The encouragement of proposals by college libraries to seek funding for projects to identify, and reformat or treat unique, endangered materials in their collections;

* The development of a preservation communication network among college libraries and campus administrators.

Sub-groups will be studying the areas above, with the committee meeting again on June 21, 1989. For more information, contact Committee Chair Kathleen Moretto Spencer, Library Director, Franklin & Marshall College, Lancaster, PA.

THE NATIONAL ADVISORY COUNCIL ON PRESERVATION (NACP) discussed issues reflecting its broad scope at its annual meeting January 26, 1989, at the Commission's offices. The NACP expressed support for the concept of a centralized collection of preservation microforms, which would provide secure storage of masters along with rapid, diverse access. Members heard from George Farr, Director of NEH's Office of Preservation, who summarized plans for the Endowment's new initiative to preserve the nation's research base. A presentation by Donn Neal, Executive Director of the Society of American Archivists, stimulated a spirited discussion on the complex issues surrounding archives preservation. The group also reviewed objectives and plans for two evolving Commission projects--the international project and scholarly advisory committees. The NACP was established to provide a link between organizations committed to preservation and the Commission; it plans to meet next in November 1989.

STATE-WIDE ACTIONS

THE STATE OF MICHIGAN has announced the formation of the Michigan Alliance for the Conservation of Cultural Heritage. According to Michele Kristin, Public Affairs Officer of The Michigan Council for the Humanities, the new alliance marks the state's first alliance of conservation leaders to promote the continuing availability of the cultural resources of the humanities for the benefit of future generations. The Alliance includes representatives from archives, art agencies, historical societies, libraries, and museums. Further information is available from Kristin at (517) 355-0160.

THE COMMONWEALTH OF MASSACHUSETTS Board of Library Commissioners is taking the initiative to develop a statewide preservation strategy for libraries, archives, manuscript repositories, and historical societies. The strategy is expected to include a grants program, needs-assessment surveys, and a series of training workshops, according to Gregor Trinkaus-Randall, Collection Management Consultant. An Advisory Committee held its first meeting last month and will be convening two or three times annually. More information is available from Trinkaus-Randall at (617) 267-9400.

The Commission's Newsletter reports on national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library directors, preservation specialists and administrators, archives administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission work's. The Newsletter is not copyrighted: its duplication and distribution within institutions in encouraged.

The Commission on Preservation and Access seeks to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations to insure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information. Patricia Battin - President; Maxine K. Sitts - Program Officer; Pamela D. Block - Administrative Assistant. CPA is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 11 **NEWSLETTER** APRIL 1989

Washington Testimony:

THE PROMISE AND CHALLENGE OF NATIONWIDE PRESERVATION

The following comments are excerpts from the published statement of Sidney Verba, University Librarian, Professor of Government, and Carl H. Pforzheimer University Professor at Harvard University, speaking on behalf of the Association of Research Libraries, Commission on Preservation and Access, and National Humanities Alliance on the Fiscal Year 1990 Appropriation for the National Endowment for the Humanities before the Subcommittee on the Interior and Related Agencies, Committee on Appropriations, U.S. House of Representatives, March 22, 1989.

ON SCHOLARSHIP, LEARNING, AND NATIONAL PRESERVATION EFFORTS. . . . [Five years ago] the problem of our disappearing record [brittle books] seemed beyond solution. It was of such a magnitude that one could only imagine working around its edges. To deal with the matter comprehensively would require a level of resources beyond that which the various research libraries could muster and a degree of coordination that seemed beyond the capacity of our diverse institutions. . . [Now] the increased funding that has gone into the preservation of brittle books has made it possible for us to anticipate that much of what is at risk of destruction will now be saved. . . . If we are to solve this problem, we have to work as a synchronized, coordinated whole—dividing up the task in a meaningful way so as to maximize the resources we have. . . . We can move ahead at Harvard with major preservation projects in the knowledge that our work will complement rather than duplicate that of other libraries.

ON PRESERVATION AS SEEN FROM THE DISCIPLINE OF POLITICAL SCIENCE. . . . I would like to go beyond the abstract statistics or the illustration of a randomly selected book to show how an entire field of endeavor can be endangered by the crumbling of our library resources....In the late nineteenth century, voting turnout in presidential elections was in the 75-80 percent range; by the 1920's it fell to the 50 percent range—lower than today. Why did this happen? To answer the question, scholars have turned to study the changing nature of American elections and the American party system from the end of the Civil War through the early part of the twentieth century. . . . The point is that the written record of this era—the party histories, the campaign documents, the candidate biographies, the local party accounts—are on acid paper. And much of the material is reaching the end of its shelf life. . . . We cannot lose our knowledge of that period—even if it is on paper laced with acid. The NEH program will prevent that from happening.

ON HARVARD AND THE NATIONAL PROGRAM.... Rarely has a program caught on as quickly as the NEH program. . . . It is a program for which we have been waiting. We had talked of our problems and we had bemoaned our fate. And we had, in fact, done a good deal on preservation. We had, with our resources, with federal resources, and with private resources, filmed over 16 million pages of fragile materials. But we were ready to do more. . . . The important thing is that we will be adding to a national endeavor. That fact energizes our efforts for we can see a real payoff in adding our work to that of others.

I want to stress the secondary impact of the NEH program. It will do more than support a vast amount of filming in those institutions that receive funding under the program. If the experience at other institutions is like that at Harvard, it will stimulate many other preservation activities. In our planning for the NEH program, we have redesigned our organizational capacity for preservation, a redesign that will allow us to meet the challenge of the new level of work. And we have directed our efforts at fundraising with our supporters and alumni toward the task of preservation. The prospect of NEH funding, rather than reducing our commitment to raise additional funds, has increased it.

IN CONCLUSION. If what differentiates humans from other species is the ability to use language, and if what differentiates civilization from pre-civilized forms of life is the ability to record that language by written words, then it follows that our essence as humans is contained in the written words we pass from generation to generation. These written words, entrusted to library collections, are turning to dust—and with that part of our lives is going as well.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

Permanent Paper Measure Introduced in House

An identical companion measure (H.J. Res. 226) to Sen. Claiborne Pell's S.J. Res. 57 was introduced by Rep. Pat Williams on March 23. Both measures would establish a national policy to promote and encourage the printing of books and other publications of enduring value on alkaline, permanent papers. Rep. Williams was joined by five cosponsors including Rep. Sidney Yates, who has championed the cause of preservation microfilming. Four more senators have joined the original 19 cosponsors of the Pell resolution, but more cosponsors are needed for both measures. Please urge your Representatives and Senators to sign on; especially important are members of the House Government Operations Committee and the Senate Governmental Affairs Committee and their respective government information subcommittees.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483- 6410.

Scholars Selected for Advisory Committees in Art History, Philosophy

Appointments to two more of the Commission's Scholarly Advisory Committees are now complete: Committees on Art History and Philosophy will be holding their initial meetings this month and next. We expect that a Committee on Modern Language and Literature will be constituted by June. Previously, in January 1989, the Committee on History held its first meeting (see the December 1988 Newsletter for a list of members and the February 1989 **Newsletter** for a review of the meeting). Members of these Committees are being asked to help develop a strategy for preservation and a set of priorities for selecting what is to be saved in each of the major fields of scholarship. The initial meetings involve very preliminary discussions over a wide range of subjects related to scholarship and preservation. No formal minutes are kept and no conclusions are reached. Over the next several months, participants will be consulting with colleagues in their respective disciplines as they develop suggestions for selecting materials for preservation. As consensus is reached in particular disciplines, the Commission will publish the committees' reports.

SCHOLARLY ADVISORY COMMITTEE ON ART HISTORY

Professor Egbert Haverkamp-Begemann
Institute of Fine Arts
New York University

Professor Phyllis Bober
Department of Archaeology
Bryn Mawr College

Professor Richard Brilliant
Department of Art History and Archaeology
Columbia University

Professor Lorenz Eitner
Director
Stanford University Museum of Art

Mr. Alan Fern
Director
National Portrait Gallery

Professor Larry Silver
Department of Art History
Northwestern University

Professor Deirdre C. Stam
School of Information Studies
Syracuse University

SCHOLARLY ADVISORY COMMITTEE ON PHILOSOPHY

Professor JoAnne Boydston
Center for Dewey Studies
Southern Illinois University

Professor Richard Burian
Department of Philosophy
Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University

Professor Edwin Curley
Department of Philosophy
University of Illinois, Chicago

Professor Norman Kretzmann
Department of Philosophy
Cornell University

Professor John McDermott
Department of Philosophy
Texas A & M University

Professor Jerome Schneewind
Department of Philosophy
Johns Hopkins University

Professor Charles Young
Department of Philosophy
Claremont Graduate School

The preservation issue...lies at the heart of professional scholarly endeavor. "Access to our past is indispensable to our future," the American Philosophical Association points out. Only if the words and artifacts of our predecessors can be preserved, will we have that access.

from the "Preservation Initiatives Among ACLS Societies: A Report", *ACLS Newsletter*, Autumn 1988, pp. 11-12.

Acid-Free Paper Pledged by Major Publishers

Commitment Day," held March 7 at the New York Public Library, has been hailed as a landmark in book preservation, with many major publishers committing themselves to use acid-free paper for first printings of quality hardcover trade books. The preservation campaign leading up to the day was spearheaded by author and library trustee Barbara Goldsmith, who started a group called *Authors and Publishers in Support of Preservation of the Printed Word* (see November 1988 **Newsletter**). Organizations endorsing the preservation effort included the Association of American University Presses, the Association of American Publishers, the Authors Guild, and PEN. Over 100 publishers and authors were present for the pledge-signing. On March 16, the NYPL reprinted the commitment pledge with signatures of 40 publishers and 43 authors as a full-page ad in the *New York Times*.

Advocating the use of alkaline paper for publications of enduring value has been a prime objective of the Commission since its founding. In June 1988, the Commission endorsed a letter from member Herbert Bailey to AAP President Nicholas Veliotes encouraging the use of acid-free paper. In late 1988, the Commission, along with the Association of Research Libraries and the National Humanities Alliance, sponsored a briefing package about alkaline paper, which was distributed to publishers, Congress, and higher education officials.

Preservation as a National Concern Reaches New Level of Visibility and Maturity

Lears, *Newsweek* (3/20), and *Publishers Weekly* (3/17) all carried articles about brittle books during March. Another refreshing note: Preservation humor is making its way onto the scene. *Wilson Library Bulletin* ran a cartoon on brittle books in its February 1989 issue, and University of Connecticut Library Director Norman D. Stevens applauds an increasing number of light-hearted approaches to preservation in his article "Humor and creativity: Preservation" in the March 1989 *C&RL News*.

Preservation humor is not brand-new, however, nor is it avoided by some of the major institutions. Stevens cites a 1965 report by David Weber (Stanford University Libraries Director) which "described the successful conclusion of a project, funded by the Sopwith Graphics Foundation, to develop a new felt tip pen ink containing a soluble pigment, 99.3% of which is absorbed into the fibers of book paper within 48 to 72 hours, thus eliminating the damage caused by users who underline and otherwise deface library books through the use of the more common felt tip pen." Also noted: New York University Libraries, the Music Library at the University of California, Berkeley, and Ohio State University Libraries. Watch for more preservation humor promised for the June 1989 *Wilson Library Bulletin*.

We must proceed in a way that preserves flexibility to respond to new and unknown situations. We have to tolerate a certain amount of ambiguity and even ambivalence, not about whether, but how to proceed....Every great human endeavor has proceeded as much on promise as on certainty.

*I [want to] underscore the overriding importance of the human or sociological factors to the development and success of a national preservation program: **Education and awareness,** leading to public support and action; **funding and requisite political support,** on the scale required; [and] **organization,** to achieve essential cooperation, sharing, logistical support, and agreement upon objectives.*

Concluding speech by Dr. Billy E. Frye (Chair of Commission's Board), October 1988 Symposium on Paper Permanency sponsored by the Technical Association of the Pulp and Paper Industry.

New Commission Publication:

Art Historians Confront Preservation Needs

Scholarly Resources in Art History: Issues in Preservation explores the unique requirements of art historians for productive participation in the new federally supported preservation microfilming program. The 43-page booklet is divided into two major sections: A report of the Spring Hill (MN) Seminar on Scholarly Resources in Art History convened by the Commission September 29-October 1, 1988, and a paper by Deirdre C. Stam on "Art Historians and Their Use of Illustrated Texts."

A preliminary section summarizes the discussions and recommendations of the seminar, covered in the November 1988 **Newsletter**. The Stam paper, which forms the major portion of the publication, reviews art historians' use of illustrated texts and summarizes recent *Art Bulletin* articles on the state of research in various art-historical subfields. It offers several conclusions about the role of text-cum-image format (image and text conceptually as well as physically united) in the discipline of art history and provides a number of questions that can help shape preservation planning.

Copies of the report are available from the Commission for $5.00 prepaid by a check (no cash) made payable to "The Commission on Preservation and Access."

ABOUT THIS **NEWSLETTER**... We're eager to have the **Newsletter** reach the widest possible audience involved in national and international preservation programs. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; we encourage its duplication and distribution within institutions. A Subscription Request Form is available from the Commission for those wishing to receive the **Newsletter** on a regular basis. However, to control mailing costs, we may limit the number of multiple requests from a single institution.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Ave., N.W. #313
Washington, D.C. 20036
USA

Nonprofit Organization
U.S. Postage
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 524

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 12 **NEWSLETTER** MAY 1989

MID-SIZED RESEARCH LIBRARIES EXPLORE ROLE IN NATIONAL PRESERVATION PROGRAM

The nine-member Mid-Sized Research Libraries Committee has met three times since its formation in October 1988, with its most recent meeting held on April 17, 1989. At its initial November 21, 1988, get-together, this group of 7 library directors, a preservation officer, and a representative of a preservation service looked at national program plans and then developed a series of options for possible mid-sized research library involvement.

One of the options identified in November was coordination of the preservation of mid-sized research library collections, which, when taken together, form an important intellectual resource. To gather more background on alternatives, the committee arranged a meeting with George Farr, director of the National Endowment for the Humanities Office of Preservation, on February 14, 1989. At that meeting, Farr briefed the committee on NEH plans and directions, stressing that the broadly based national program is open to all types and sizes of libraries.

At its meeting last month, the committee began developing a theoretical model of a "Mid-Sized Research Library Preservation Service" which would enable mid-sized libraries to do their part to support national preservation efforts. A strength of mid-sized libraries, the committee agreed, is their ability to select prime candidates for preservation filming economically and quickly, because often their collections are centralized and their records are in machine-readable form. In addition, their selection process is dynamic, involving scholars, faculty, and librarians.

However, most mid-sized libraries do not have the resources to prepare materials for filming or care for them after filming. Thus, a preservation service is seen as a set of pre- and post-filming activities—in addition to filming itself—to deal with the materials that are identified. For example, contractors might conduct detailed bibliographic searching, locate duplicate copies, online queuing, bibliographic control, preparation of target information and physical preparation for microfilming, the filming itself, and quality-control checking. The committee is investigating alternative operational models, including issues of membership, funding, governance, and workflow.

When the committee meets in September 1989, it also will be exploring mid-sized library preservation education and training needs, options for helping to institutionalize preservation programs in mid-sized libraries, and their role in providing archival materials, special collections, and manuscripts to the national preservation program.

Members of the Mid-Sized Research Libraries Committee are: Dale Canelas, University of Florida; Sheila Creth, University of Iowa; Joan Gotwals, Emory University; C. Lee Jones, Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service; Paula T. Kaufman (chair), University of Tennessee; Jan Merrill-Oldham, Preservation Department, University of Connecticut; Thomas J. Michalak, Carnegie-Mellon University; Marilyn J. Sharrow, University of California-David; and David Stam, Syracuse University.

SOCIETY FOR SCHOLARLY PUBLISHING EXHIBIT ON PRESERVATION

The 11th Annual Meeting of the Society for Scholarly Publishing (SSP) will include an exhibit on the national preservation program organized by the Commission and the New York Public Library. Three hundred of SSP's 1300 members are expected to attend the May 31—June 2, 1989, meeting at the Washington (DC) Hilton Hotel. SSP was founded in 1978 to enhance the general level of professionalism in scholarly publishing and to find solutions to common problems. Its members include scholars, editors, publishers, librarians, printers, and booksellers.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

More on "Slow Fires"...

As first reported in the March 1989 Newsletter, the film "Slow Fires," which tells the story of the deterioration of our world's intellectual heritage due to acid-based paper, was one of 29 films selected from more than 150 nominations to be shown at the Council on Foundation's ninth annual Film and Video Festival April 9-12 in Toronto. The half-hour version was aired twice on closed-circuit television and at a public screening area where more than 1,700 grantmakers gathered during the 40th annual conference of the Council. The festival was designed to encourage and recognize grantmakers' use of film and video to communicate messages important to their priorities and programs. Information on how to obtain the film and video is available from the Commission.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483- 6410.

Preserving the millions of already embrittled books and preventing further loss of our accumulated heritage are not problems amenable to a quick fix; years of research, effort, and special funding will be required.

—from *Library Issues: Briefings for Faculty and Administrators*, V9 n4, March 1989. Ann Arbor, MI: Mountainside Publishing Co.

The Ethics of Preservation to be Addressed in Spring 1989 *Educational Record*

The American Council on Education's quarterly publication, *Educational Record*, will feature a series of discussions on ethics in higher education in its Spring 1989 issue. One of the articles scheduled to appear, co-authored by Patricia Battin and Maxine Sitts, presents a case for the preservation of library materials as a national ethical imperative.

"As a key to preserving an atmosphere for learning, institutions of higher education have a moral responsibility to preserve the great book collections in their libraries," the article contends.

> *At first glance, the book preservation problem may seem similar to that of building maintenance. Book collections at a university are no doubt its largest capital asset, so it makes good financial sense to maintain them. The replacement costs of books—if indeed they can be replaced at all—only will become greater as time goes on. But even more important is the ethical imperative to act now. A university can survive without a building; it cannot survive without books.*

The American Council on Education, founded in 1918, is the nation's major coordinating body for postsecondary education. Through voluntary and cooperative actions, the Council provides comprehensive leadership for improving education standards, policies, procedures, and services.

Commission on Preservation Membership Changes

—HERBERT S. BAILEY, JR., RETIRES

Herbert S. Bailey, Jr., director emeritus of the Princeton University Press and a founding member of the Commission, will retire from the Commission effective July 27, 1989.

As a member of the university press community, Bailey made an effective contribution to the work of the Commission and to the cause of preservation generally. He has long understood the close ties between libraries and publishing and has served as an effective spokesperson for articulating the concerns of librarians and publishers to each other. Work on the ACLS Committee on Scholarly Communication amplified his voice in both camps, and his subsequent work as Chairman of the Committee on Production Guidelines for Book Longevity did much to stimulate the current and flourishing preservation movement.

At their May meeting, Commission members acknowledged Bailey's contributions for preservation efforts and his service to the Commission.

—DONALD S. LAMM APPOINTED

Donald S. Lamm, Chairman and President of W.W. Norton & Company, has accepted the Commission's invitation to serve as a member and representative of the publishing industry. Lamm joined W.W. Norton & Company in 1956 as a college representative. In 1960, he became (and remains) an editor, and from 1968 to 1976 he served as vice president. He was appointed president in 1976, and was named chairman in 1984. He also serves as director of W.W. Norton & Company, Ltd., London, Liveright Publishing Corporation, and the National Book Company, Scranton, PA.

Lamm is president of the Board of Governors of the Yale University Press and is on the Board of Directors of Roper Center for Public Opinion Research. He was a guest fellow at Yale University, his alma mater, in 1980 and 1985, and was the Ida Beam distinguished visiting professor at the University of Iowa in 1987-88. Lamm will join the Commission at its July 27, 1989, meeting

Technology Assessment Advisory Committee Fully Constituted; Holds First Meeting

An initial meeting of the Technology Assessment Advisory Committee (TAAP) was held May 11 to set an agenda for exploring technologies with potential for preservation activities. As constituted by Chair Rowland C. W. Brown, the committee includes the following representatives of business and higher education:

Douglas van Houweling, Vice Provost for Information Technologies, University of Michigan;

Michael Lesk, Division Manager, Computer Sciences Research, Bellcore;

M. Stuart Lynn, Vice President for Computing and Information Systems, Cornell University;

Dr. Robert Spinrad, Director of Corporate Technology, Xerox Corporation; and

Dr. Robert L. Street, Vice President for Information Resources, Stanford University.

See the March 1989 Newsletter (No. 10) for more information on this committee.

...

PERSONNEL NOTE: Rowland C. W. Brown, Chair of the Technology Assessment Advisory Committee, has been named Technical Person of the Year by the Columbus Technical Council, an organization of 8,000 engineers, scientists, and technicians. Brown served for nine years as president and CEO of OCLC Online Computer Library Center in Dublin, Ohio, before retiring in January 1989. The Technical Person of the Year award has been given since 1957 on the basis of character, competence, service to the profession, and community service.

Philosophy Scholars Take Preliminary Look at Preservation Needs

Broad categories of materials considered prime candidates for preservation microfilming were identified by the Scholarly Advisory Committee on Philosophy during its initial meeting April 25. All seven members representing various philosophy specialties were in attendance (see below). The small number of philosophy scholars, as compared to many other disciplines, may somewhat simplify the process of developing selection criteria, the group noted.

In a first look at preservation needs, journals received top-priority status, with agreement that complete runs of U.S. journals published between 1850 and 1920 are of prime importance. Outside the U.S., the group suggested high priority for Western Europe and acknowledged the need for future evaluation of non-U.S. materials. The committee also identified relatively low-priority categories such as newspapers, ephemera, and government documents.

The selection of monographs might well be carried out with the cooperation of the many specialized societies within the American Philosophical Association (APA), according to the committee. A number of individuals, universities, and philosophy centers were suggested for future consultation. The Commission was urged to sponsor an information booth at the APA conference scheduled for December 28-30, 1989, in Atlanta.

Initial meetings of the Scholarly Advisory Committees involve very preliminary discussions over a wide range of subjects. No formal minutes are kept and no conclusions are reached. Over the next several months, participants will be consulting with colleagues as they develop suggestions for selecting materials for preservation.

Committee Members: Jo Ann Boydston, Southern Illinois University; Edwin Curley, University of Illinois, Chicago; John McDermott, Texas A&M University; Charles Young, Claremont Graduate School; Richard Burian, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; Norman Kretzmann, Cornell University; Jerome Schneewind, Johns Hopkins University (Chair).

Environmental Conditions for Preservation: A New APPA-Commission Task Force

The Association of Physical Plant Administrators (APPA) and the Commission are establishing a joint Task Force on Environmental Conditions to develop a training course for facilities managers covering the preservation-related needs of college and university libraries. The curriculum will become a part of an active training program operated by the APPA for its members. The curriculum is expected to cover administrative issues such as asset management, as well as daily operational issues such as maintenance of temperature and humidity controls. In addition to conducting the training session itself, APPA also will be preparing an extensive resource notebook for participants.

The three Commission representatives to the task force are Patti McClung, Research Libraries Group, Inc.; Don Kelsey, University of Minnesota; and Joel Clemmer, Macalester College.

The APPA also plans to publish an article on the management of library buildings and preservation of their collections in an upcoming issue of its quarterly magazine, *Facilities Manager*. The Commission has asked Carolyn Harris, School of Library Services, Columbia University, to write the article, which will be the first on this topic to appear in the magazine.

The APPA, based in Alexandria, Va., was founded in 1914. Its purpose is to develop professional standards in the administration, care, operation, planning, and development of physical plants used in colleges and universities.

ON THE HILL: PRESERVATION NEWS

LSCA SUPPORT FOR PUBLIC LIBRARY PRESERVATION...During his National Library Week speech, House Postsecondary Education Subcommittee Chairman Pat Williams (D-MT) referred to the April 11 LSCA reauthorization hearing where, he said, "...we learned about some of the new challenges facing libraries that need to be addressed in the upcoming reauthorization." He devoted the rest of his statement to the preservation problem caused by acid-based paper, and noted he had introduced H.J.Res. 226 to establish a national policy on the use of permanent papers. Rep. Williams concluded:

> *Public libraries are important to this preservation effort. In addition to their holdings of books and publications, many public libraries maintain historic materials for their local communities. I believe that the Library Services and Construction Act would be the appropriate vehicle to support our public libraries in this effort. Witnesses testifying at the joint hearing recommended that Title III of the LSCA be amended to include funding for preservation activities. This would allow State Library agencies to educate local libraries on basic preservation techniques as well as provide limited dollars for the preservation of certain materials. This recommendation should be given careful consideration by the Congress.*
>
> (As reported by the American Library Association Washington Newsletter April 25, 1989)

PERMANENT PAPER PROGRESS....Several Senators and Representatives agreed during National Library Week Legislative Day visits on April 11 to cosponsor S.J.Res. 57 and H.J.Res. 226—measures to establish a national policy to promote and encourage the printing of books and other publications of enduring value on alkaline, permanent paper. In the past month, the number of cosponsors of Pat Williams' H.J.Res. 226 has grown from six to 16. Senator Claiborne Pell's S.J.Res. 57 now has 32 cosponsors. Many more cosponsors are needed. The April 25, 1989, edition of the *ALA Washington Newsletter* carries a list of cosponsors as of April 26. If your Representatives and Senators are not included, please urge them to contact Williams and Pell.

PAPER AND PRINT PRESERVATION HEARING...On May 4, the House Subcommittee on Science, Research and Technology chaired by Rep. Doug Walgren (D-PA), held a hearing on preservation of print. The first witness was Senator Pell, speaking in support of S.J.Res. 57 and the House companion measure. The standards for paper, especially for durability and strength, also were addressed. The hearing also considered EPA regulations that mandate federal agency use of recycled paper and the impact, if any, on the use of permanent paper for publications.

ARL TRAINING TO ASSIST LIBRARIES IN PRESERVATION PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT

As part of an ongoing effort to help libraries plan for and initiate coordinated long-term preservation programs, the Association of Research Libraries (ARL) has completed a Preservation Consultant Workshop for 16 preservation administrators, funded in part by the National Endowment for the Humanities Office of Preservation. The workshop was an opportunity for the preservation specialists to develop skills in identifying and diagnosing library problems; study concepts of library training and consultation; and gain a better understanding of the Preservation Planning Program operated by the Office of Management Services (OMS).

The 16 participants, who will be working with the OMS on several consulting assignments, are: Jennifer Banks, Massachusetts Institute of Technology; Wesley Boomgaarden, Ohio State University; Connie Brooks, Stanford University; Sherry Byrne, University of Chicago; Margaret Child, Smithsonian Institution; Michele Cloonan, Brown University; Bonnie Rose Curtain, NAGARA Preservation Project; Robert DeCandido, New York Public Library; Richard Frieder, Northwestern University; Deborah McKern, Emory University; Barclay Ogden, University of California-Berkeley; Lorraine Olley, Indiana University; Richard Peek, Columbia University; Vanessa Piala, Smithsonian Institution; Merrily Smith, Library of Congress; and Karen Turko, University of Toronto.

This effort is one of a number of programs developed by ARL to help institutionalize preservation as a vital component of library and archive operations on a continuing basis.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

BULK RATE
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 13 **NEWSLETTER** JUNE 1989

IMPORTANCE OF IMAGES, CATALOGS CITED BY SCHOLARLY ADVISORY COMMITTEE ON ART HISTORY

Some of the distinctive preservation needs of art-historical scholars were discussed during the first meeting of the Commission's newly formed Scholarly Advisory Committee on Art History on May 12. As with most other disciplines, art historians are concerned about complete runs of North American and European scholarly periodicals in their fields of interest, as well as classic monographs. Art historians draw upon the materials of many disciplines and subjects in the humanities, arts, sciences, and technology. On the other hand, the products of art-historical scholarship are considerably more limited in scope, which makes it more possible to define preservation needs.

Images are of prime importance to art historians, and image reproductions that are suitable for scholarly purposes are usually difficult and expensive to achieve. In some cases, however, preservation microfilming may be relatively simple to accomplish. Pre-photographic images such as woodcuts or lithographs were used prior to the 1880s, for example, and are easy to reproduce photographically.

A category of materials that is of prime importance to art history is catalogs of various sorts—exhibition catalogs prepared for gallery shows, sales and auction catalogs, and catalogs of permanent collections, for example. These materials may present some additional bibliographic control problems during preservation microfilming, because they may not be included in main library collections.

Special Report Inside
on
International Cooperative Preservation

Another distinctive need for art historians concerns the popular illustrated periodicals of the nineteenth century (chiefly from Europe, with some from North America) that served as outlets for the works of well-known artists, but that are not considered "scholarly."

The seven members of the Art History Committee are: Egbert Haverkamp-Begemann, Institute of Fine Arts, New York University; Phyllis Pray Bober, Department of Archaeology, Bryn Mawr College; Richard Brilliant, Department of Art History and Archaeology, Columbia University; Lorenz Eitner, Stanford University Museum of Art; Alan Fern, National Portrait Gallery; Larry Silver, Department of Art History, Northwestern University; and Deirdre C. Stam, School of Information Studies, Syracuse University.

BREADTH OF ISSUES ADDRESSED IN FIRST MEETING OF TECHNOLOGY ASSESSMENT ADVISORY COMMITTEE

Much discussion at the first meeting of the Technology Assessment Advisory Committee on May 11 centered on the breadth of the technologies and expertise involved in copying, preserving, storing, requesting, and disseminating preserved materials in the various formats and multiple media that are anticipated in the long-range objectives of the Commission. Four of the initial six members of the Committee attended the meeting at the Commission's offices, spending a full day reviewing its charge, planning its agenda, and discussing the broadening activities of the Commission.

There was general consensus and enthusiasm for organizing a conference next year drawing upon experts from the various technologies involved and the major information sectors impacted by these technologies to help meet the Commission's long-term preservation and access goals.

Committee members are: Rowland C. W. Brown, Chair, President, OCLC (retired); Douglas van Houweling, Vice Provost for Information Technologies, University of Michigan; Michael Lesk, Division Manager, Computer Sciences Research, Bellcore; M. Stuart Lynn, Vice President, Information Technologies, Cornell University; Robert Spinrad, Director, Corporate Technology, Xerox Corporation; and Robert L. Street, Vice President for Information Resources, Stanford University.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

International Cooperative Preservation

A Ten-Month Report on the International Project of the Commission on Preservation and Access

by Hans Rütimann, Consultant

Based on a speech presented at "Managing the Preservation of Serial Literature," an international symposium sponsored by the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions, May 22-24, 1989, at the Library of Congress

From its inception, the Commission on Preservation and Access has operated on the principle that preservation efforts cannot be solely a national concern. As in all Commission projects, a primary goal is to improve access to deteriorating and preserved materials that are often difficult to locate and use. Since "international cooperation in preservation" is a broad area, the Commission has focused first on exploring options for an international mechanism—a clearinghouse or database—to answer the basic question, "Which countries have preserved what materials?" The initial pilot project, which began in September 1989, encompasses the following three phases:

1) Conducting an exploratory study with the national libraries of Great Britain, France, West Germany, East Germany, Austria, and Venezuela. The study is meant to determine the extent to which preservation records exist in each country; to identify the difficulties of converting these records to machine-readable form and of entering them into a common database; to decide on the level of bibliographic detail needed to exchange records easily; and to determine the best way to proceed in creating a shared database capacity.

2) Developing an agenda and organizing a meeting "on the working level" of representatives from the participating countries—the meeting to be held in a convenient European location.

3) Preparing a report to document the findings, outline the next steps, and provide the basis for grant proposals in support of identified projects.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483- 6410.

Survey of Foreign Libraries' Preservation Records

I have now visited the national libraries in Austria, East and West Germany, England, France, and Venezuela, as well as several university and regional libraries and the relevant agency of the Commission of the European Communities. I have talked with directors of libraries and department heads in automation, conservation, reference and user services, and others, and I have heard many views and suggestions.

My findings support the assertion that "in the global society, our similarities are greater than our differences and our policies and practices should reflect that elemental truth." [Patricia Battin, "Information Collection, Preservation, and Sharing in the Global Context," Speech at IFLA Conference cited above]

No one I met abroad disagrees with this assertion. Of course, opinions vary on how to solve the problems or to what extent a crisis really exists. At the Zentralbibliothek in Zurich, for example, I was assured that the situation is really not that bad. On the other hand, at Berne's Swiss National Archives I was given the extremely pessimistic assessment that about 90% of Switzerland's 17 million books are in jeopardy because of high acidity. In neighboring Germany, the assessment falls somewhere between these two extremes: the results of a study by the Deutsche Bibliotheks-Institut are that, of the 152 million books in research libraries, about one third is in jeopardy.

But despite variations in the assessment of the situation and in local conditions, funding, and policies, the similarities still outweigh the differences.

Ongoing plans need to be known by all involved in preservation efforts if we are to avoid a massive duplication of effort and wasted resources—or worse, the loss of books and periodicals due to uncoordinated expenditures for preservation on the national and international levels.

What follows is a random selection of the types of developments that should be known—but are not—to everyone in a position to influence preservation activities in any given country:

• At **Japan's Waseda University**, efforts have been underway since July 1988 to film all imprints of the Meiji period. The first step is filming all imprints at Waseda University Library; the second step will involve securing either films or originals to be used for filming in collections abroad, primarily in Europe and the United States. Professor Yamamoto, the project director, insists that international collaboration is absolutely essential to the project. He adds that questions concerning the format of a register have yet to be resolved.

• At the **Biblioteca Nacional of Venezuela**, filming of newspapers, magazines, and books is proceeding, with an emphasis on "Venezuelan items." The library's annual microfilm production is some 300,000 images; there are ambitious plans for increased filming; and the register is maintained in admirable detail in machine-readable form. In my judgment, the register would be of immediate use in an international database.

• *In* **West Germany**, the German microform project is underway, partly funded by the Volkswagen Foundation. Coordinated at the Stadt- und Universitätsbibliothek in Frankfurt-am-Main, the project involves several important libraries, and the responsibility for systematically filming important collections is shared among the participating institutions. Some of these collections are probably unique: "Flugschriften" from the reformation in Marburg and unpublished German dissertations between World Wars I and II in Berlin. Others, such as the collection of German literature from 1850 to 1900 at Frankfurt's Rothschild Library, are probably duplicated at least in part elsewhere.

The list of collections to be filmed in the German microform project is, by itself, a strong argument for international collaboration and the sharing of such information. Whenever I mention this project in the United States, I am asked for a list of the collections targeted for filming, "just in case we plan to film in similar areas."

• **The European Community** of 1992 will significantly affect libraries. Directorate General XIII-B of the EC has issued a "Plan of Action for Libraries in the European Community" and commissioned a "Feasibility Study into a European Register of Microform Masters (EROMM)."

Ongoing plans need to be known by all involved in preservation efforts if we are to avoid a massive duplication of effort and wasted resources...

• **The National Library of Australia** has conducted a pilot study on the feasibility of developing a national register of microform masters. A national listing of microform masters is planned.

• At the **Bayerische Staatsbibliothek in Munich**, an important study is underway on the acquisition, control, and use of microforms in German libraries. The 150-page interim report includes the results of a survey of microform holdings and establishes coordinated production guidelines; it is a valuable overview of one country's activities and plans in preservation filming.

The Case for Participation

Why should a library in Europe or Asia or South America take part in an international register for microform masters? There are a number of reasons:

• To make the contents of the originals more accessible while preserving them.

• To increase access to information about microfilmed items (and to the microforms themselves) across institutional and national boundaries. Obviously, in most cases it is cheaper to buy a copy of the film than to film an original item.

• To avoid duplication of effort and therefore stretch the funds for preservation.

• To restrict the use of valuable originals and prolong their lives by making films available instead.

• To build an informational infrastructure for filmed items that would allow better coordination with the private sector.

There is another important reason to take the long-term and global view, and this has to do with improved forms of access. In the future, locating and purchasing microform masters will be even more important than today. It is

There is another important reason to take the long-term and global view, and this has to do with improved forms of access.

probable that new technology will allow us to convert microforms to a digitized form; this in turn will create an extraordinarily rich depository of texts in machine-readable form. With widely available technology—computer-based phototypography—the texts could be committed to print again (on acid-free paper, one would hope).

Thus, our efforts will not only preserve and enhance access to the text in a form familiar to us today. They also will add an increasingly valuable feature to a vast body of literature: photo images and machine-readability. In turn, this will permit manipulability and applications to disseminate texts in media such as CD-ROM, optical disk, and other formats as yet unknown.

Reflections After Ten Months

It is too early to provide a detailed analysis of activities abroad and potential overlap in the filming of collections (if such an analysis is possible at all). I have, however, drawn some general conclusions, and the most important conclusion is this:

We know what our ideal is—nothing less than a worldwide, totally integrated database system giving instant access to our entire preserved cultural heritage, with texts recorded on a medium that lasts forever, mechanisms to facilitate the purchase of texts on alternate media, and ways to move with ease from one technology to the next.

However, with today's pressing international preservation needs, we do not have the luxury of the ideal. We must move rapidly on all fronts. If we spend too much time trying to reach ideal solutions in all areas—deacidification, forms of alternate media, level of bibliographic details for registers, and structure of international networks—the very material we are trying to save will turn to dust.

Therefore:

• We cannot wait until ideal alternate media are developed and agreed upon. Microform is today's large-scale alternate medium. It should be viewed as an archival as well as a temporary measure, to be converted to other media at a later point, if desired.

• We cannot wait until agreement is reached on the ideal record structure for a register. We should go ahead with whatever record structures individual countries and institutions can afford. These structures should be fairly uniform (and usually they are) and differences can be settled later. I know that there is debate on this point, but if filming is to proceed at full speed (and in some countries it is), then the record has to keep pace with it. Also, it is worth considering that a standard for an intricate record, imposed by the larger institutions and expensive to maintain, will discourage many smaller institutions from participating.

• We cannot wait until national registers are in place, ready to be linked to an international framework. During my travels I met many dedicated individuals who were grateful to learn about the activities and plans elsewhere. Let us merge, combine, and share what we have today, using a building-block approach. The structure—an international register of microform masters—will always be a work in progress, but one that will be increasingly valuable in coordinating our efforts.

International Cooperation

We see some beginnings. Bibliographic information about items filmed by the British Library has been added to the records of the Research Libraries Information Network (RLIN), and RLIN records will be available through the British Library's BLAISE program. Also, the Bibliothèque Nationale will begin, on an experimental basis, a register exchange with the British Library.

International cooperation requires the involvement of many institutions, with inevitable political and economic sensitivities. Any organization that can facilitate effective international collaboration will be making a major contribution to preservation. What, specifically, can concerned organizations do?

• Continue to work toward standards for register information.

• Continue to apply pressure—on all fronts—for the use of alkaline paper.

• Explore all technological developments relevant to preservation.

• Facilitate cooperative ventures. For example, the Deutsche Bücherei in Leipzig does not have a comprehensive microfilming project for want of equipment and supplies. A partner in the West could provide hardware and, in exchange, receive copies of master negatives of items filmed under the exchange agreement.

• Disseminate information about funding prospects. In some countries, lack of funds is the biggest obstacle to effective preservation efforts. Some libraries abroad are unaware of how—in conjunction with a U.S. partner—they can seek federal funds in the U.S. available for preservation.

• In general, try to improve communication and exchange of information.

Any organization that can facilitate effective international collaboration will be making a major contribution to preservation.

We are continuing to work with the pilot project libraries to collect additional information that will form the basis for several models of cooperation. At the March 1989 Library of Congress symposium on "Managing the Preservation of Serial Literature," a participant from Australia asked when additional countries will be included in the International Project. The answer is that although of necessity we must start with a small number of countries, we urge anyone who knows about plans relevant to this project, anywhere in the world, to let us know. As I told the Australian representative, "Please don't wait until we get to you; by all means, come to us."

From The Conference Podium of The Society For Scholarly Publishing

May 31-June 2, 1989

Heard in a session on "What Libraries Really Want from Publishers?" A (somewhat) humorous wish list of 13-or-so desires of librarians included such items as "totally free information...absolutely no litigation...and...only GOOD published research." Speaker Katrina Strauch, head of collection development at Robert Scott Small Library, College of Charleston, also called for "...every (published) thing pristine, acid-free, and preserved...and available to users instantaneously..." She went on (in a more realistic tone) to emphasize to publishers the importance of current preservation activities, including increased federal funding through the National Endowment for the Humanities; the March 7, 1989 publishers' pledge day at the New York Public Library; and the recent decision of *Choice* magazine to include information on alkaline-paper-status as a part of its book reviews.

John Moore, director of Columbia University Press, checks out varying degrees of brittle paper on display during the 1989 Society for Scholarly Publishing meeting in Washington, D.C.

Three library directors test paper for acidity during the 1989 Society for Scholarly Publishing meeting in Washington, D.C. From the left, Joan Chambers, Colorado State University; Barbara Von Wahlde, SUNY, Buffalo; and Paula Kaufman, University of Tennessee

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

THUMBS UP FOR **PAPER AWARENESS** *TO D.C. PRINTING COMPANY CATTERTON PRESS, which published this Question-and-Answer in its May 1989 Newsletter:*

Q&A on Permanent Paper

—"I've been hearing a lot about acid-free paper lately. What's so special about it? Can anyone purchase it? Is it really as 'permanent' as the news items I've seen claim it is?"—FJR

Acid-free paper, also known as permanent paper or alkaline paper, has been around for several years. Recently, though, a group of **otherwise very quiet people** *[emphasis added] have been loudly promoting its use. Librarians are lobbying publishers in an effort to get more books, journals, and records printed on alkaline paper.*

In the normal production of paper, manufacturers use acidic rosins and sulfides. To see how quickly the cheaper grades of acidic paper deteriorate, just dig out an old paperback novel. The pages will be yellowed and much more brittle than when you originally bought the book. Imagine the extent of the problem for archivists trying to preserve books, government papers, and other important documents.

At least a dozen paper manufacturers make acid-free paper meeting government specs, and anyone can purchase it. Such paper should last several hundred years without significant deterioration under library conditions. In some cases, alkaline paper is even less costly to produce than acidic varieties, and it is also naturally brighter.

How to Correct or Change Your Address Label

Beginning this month, newsletters are being mailed non-profit bulk rate, using new mailing lists and labels maintained by the Commission. Send your address corrections and changes directly to Pamela Block, Administrative Assistant, at the Commission.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 14 **NEWSLETTER** JULY 1989

MAPS Final Report
FICHE SEEN AS ALTERNATIVE: 35MM "FORMAT OF CHOICE" FOR PRESERVATION FILMING

Microfiche does offer some "interesting preservation alternatives," but in the long term, we should view 35mm as the preservation format of choice and use other equipment to create end-user formats, according to a new project final report to the Commission and the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation from the Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service (MAPS).

"The Final Report on Step & Repeat Camera (105mm) Operating Strategies and Application of Archival Standards to the Fiche Production Process" also contains a surprising finding, described by C. Lee Jones, MAPS President, in a letter to the Commission:

> *We are especially concerned that the Photographic Activity Test has received so little attention from either preservation people or vendors. This is a test that indicates whether or not a particular enclosure is likely to have a negative effect on the film enclosed. As it turns out, very few of the fiche envelope enclosures we had tested passed this test. The manufacturer's response ranged from concern about how to make the required corrections to a cavalier, "Librarians don't pay attention to such standards."*

The report describes tests conducted from October through December 1988 on various kinds of projects: those with flat materials, those with materials requiring use of the TDC book cradle, and some relatively fragile materials. The projects enabled MAPS to test the production of archival quality 105mm film and to investigate procedures for its inspection and handling. Clearly, there are challenges when working with a step & repeat camera, according to the report, its unforgiving characteristics with regard to retakes being a major one. But most archival quality standards can be met in the process of producing 105mm film. The exception is the manner in which the archive master needs to be maintained and the way retakes are integrated into the resulting end product.

"Practical solutions are possible, but they must be defined in the context of a production environment. There is no suggestion that by so doing one has to compromise the archival filming mission: the preservation of information for long term storage, dissemination, and access," the report concludes. Copies of the report are available from the Commission.

Special Report Inside on Local Initiatives

45

ACID-FREE PAPER INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN CHOICE REVIEWS

The CHOICE editorial board and editors have approved the request of the Commission that CHOICE add acid-free paper information to the bibliographic entry that accommodates the review. In a June letter to the Commission, editor and publisher Patricia E. Sabosik states that CHOICE is now working with its computer vendor to add an additional field to its bibliographic record for the acid-free paper indicator. "We plan to complete this process in the next few months and begin publishing reviews with the indicator by the end of the year," she notes.

CHOICE will report whether the book that is sent out for review is printed on alkaline paper. They will take the information from the book itself or from the LC MARC record. They will not physically test the paper for a Ph value, but rather will rely on the information provided by publishers.

"CHOICE is pleased to provide this information to our subscribers and to assist the Commission and the broader library community in the mission of preserving library collections," Sabosik comments.

Preservation Initiatives of University Libraries Further Nationwide Preservation Efforts

A truly collaborative approach to preserving and providing access to our intellectual and cultural heritage demands proactive involvement at all levels—from individual citizens and institutions to international cooperative projects. The June 1989 Newsletter focused on international initiatives; this issue features news from the local level.

A major program direction for the Commission is to support the development of preservation awareness and capabilities at institutional, regional, and state levels, and to coordinate these initiatives with national and international preservation efforts. Reported here are university-level initiatives dealing with use of alkaline paper and programs to strengthen library preservation programs. If your university or library has recently accomplished a project or established a program related to national and international preservation concerns, please contact Maxine Sitts at the Commission, so that we can pass on your ideas to others.

Tulane University—Campus-Level Alkaline Paper Use

Early this fall, Francis L. Lawrence, Academic Vice-President and Provost at Tulane University, will be sending out a memo to deans, directors, and department heads, informing them of the availability and the choice of acid-free paper, thanks to University Librarian Philip E. Leinbach. In addition, the copy center and bookstore are changing their signage, order forms, and information available from the clerks so that individuals will make a conscious decision when choosing paper as to whether it will be acid-free or not.

It all started when Leinbach sent a one-page memo to Lawrence titled "Publications on Permanent Paper." His succinct statement of the problem and suggestions for action tie in well with the national preservation program:

> *Research libraries are engaged in a massive effort to preserve books that in the last hundred years have been printed using acidic paper and are now crumbling away. Using both private and public funds, programs to capture the contents of millions of volumes are well underway.*
>
> *At the same time we must forestall future problems by printing today's books on permanent paper (also called "alkaline" or "non-acidic" paper). I am requesting your support in several ways.*

Leinbach then goes on to ask that the faculty be informed of the importance of permanent paper and that they be encouraged to require publishers of their articles and books to use such paper, that there be a policy decision that all university publications of enduring value be printed on permanent paper, and that persons responsible for sources of paper make permanent paper available at the university.

A copy of Leinbach's memo is available from the Commission.

University of North Carolina—State-Level Alkaline Paper Use

On June 1 of this year, legislation to require acid free paper for State publications designated by James F. Govan, University Librarian at the University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, and State Librarian Howard McGinn, became law in North Carolina. Govan and McGinn are now working through the "mass of publications" to determine which will be required to come under this law, according to the UNC librarian.

The two librarians also will be visiting the Gladfelter paper plant along with a top state secretary, and will be working with state libraries and legislatures in other southeastern states to pass similar legislation.

Ten Research Libraries—Institutional Planning

Ten U.S. Association of Research Libraries (ARL) members have been selected to undertake preservation planning

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483- 6410.

projects as participants in ARL's Office of Management Services Preservation Planning Program. The effort is supported in part by a grant from the National Endowment for the Humanities Office of Preservation. The ten libraries that will conduct the program are Arizona, Boston Public, Colorado, Delaware, Duke, Georgia, Kentucky, Oklahoma State, Purdue, and Syracuse. The Preservation Planning Program involves a broad cross-section of staff at each library who are charged with conducting an investigation of the library's preservation situation and carrying out investigations of specific preservation needs. Each participating library prepares a comprehensive three- to five-year plan for local preservation program development.

The NEH grant also supported the operation of a Preservation Consultant Workshop for 16 experienced preservation librarians. (Please see the May 1989 Newsletter for more details, including names of the participants.)

New Statistical Report:
Library Preservation Programs Continue to Expand

A report detailing the critical organizational, functional, and fiscal components of preservation efforts in 109 of its members has been released by the Association of Research Libraries (ARL). *ARL Preservation Statistics 1987-88* illustrates the concerted efforts of large university libraries to address preservation needs, and verifies that the institutionalization of preservation programs and activities is indeed continuing to take place. The statistical profile includes information for six major categories: administration, personnel, conservation treatment, binding, preservation microfilming, and expenditures. An important element in the report is the analysis of the data to provide statistical measures for distinguishing between stages of preservation program development.

Overall the statistics reflect the expansion of preservation programs in U.S. and Canadian research libraries. Seventy-six respondents report they employ a preservation administrator, and of those, 48 are full-time. The data also highlight current preservation microfilming activity. In the aggregate, the 109 reporting libraries microfilmed 54,112 titles, or approximately 70,000 volumes, in 1987-88. During the same period, total preservation expenditures exceeded $50 million.

Copies of *ARL Preservation Statistics 1987-88* are available from ARL, 1527 New Hampshire Ave., N.W., Washington, D.C. 20036. The price is $10.00 per copy for members, $15.00 for nonmembers. Orders should be prepaid.

Plans are currently underway for a 1988-1989 survey of preservation activities, according to Jutta Reed-Scott of the ARL office.

Library Directors Discuss Implications of Centralized Storage; Dissemination of Preservation Microfilm

During their May 1989 membership meeting in Providence, RI, a group of Association of Research Libraries (ARL) library directors discussed the concept and implications of a centralized collection of preservation masters from which copies could be distributed quickly and economically. The following report on the "Current Topics" session (one of four held at that meeting) comes from William J. Studer, library director at Ohio State University and ARL's representative to the Commission's National Advisory Council on Preservation:

"Clearly, little more than broaching a complex issue such as this can be accomplished in an hour's discussion, but there did appear to be a favorable, if tentative, consensus on the potential advantages of centralized access, given the realities of over one million preservation masters now in existence and three to four million additional to be produced over the next twenty years—the majority of which will be done with funds from the NEH Office of Preservation and must therefore be made openly available. The number of libraries serving as creators—and therefore holders—of preservation microforms will grow significantly; and the prospect of scholars having to contact multiple sources for copies, as well as the redundancy, inefficiency, and costliness of many libraries acting as repositories and service centers for their individual stores, would not likely prove cost effective.

Priorities for a national preservation effort will be different from any particular state's, but at both the federal and state level, agencies must play the multiple roles of planners, funders, leaders, educators, and coordinators. We have to see our work at the institutional, state, and national levels as part of one major effort.

—Carole Huxley, Deputy Commissioner for Cultural Education, New York State; Welcoming Speech at the National Conference on the Development of Statewide Preservation Programs, March 1-3, 1989, Library of Congress.

"Lively discussion ranged over a wide variety of elements, including the need for a cost study of alternative models, as well as how best to finance such a public good, determination of costing and pricing for storage and copy service, development of a governance model which facilitates broad participation, the equipment implications of providing service copies in electronic format (vs. microform), formulation of an open policy for defining the

potential collection scope of microforms held in a central facility, the ramifications of copyright restrictions, and the coordination of development of any such service with European efforts.

"A point of complete agreement was that ARL directors should be closely involved in shaping the plans for a centralized service.

Newly Available From The Commission

Reprints of article, "Institutions Have Moral Responsibility to Preserve Great Book Collections," by Patricia Battin and Maxine K. Sitts, in *Educational Record*, Spring 1989. pp. 54-55.

New printing of *Commission on Preservation and Access Background Paper*, including sections on History, Basic Operating Principles, Programs and Activities, International Project, Scholarly Advisory Committees, Library Committees, Technology Assessment Advisory Committee, Meeting Sponsorship, Into the Future, Support and Funding Principles, National Advisory Council on Preservation, and Strategies for a National Preservation Effort: The "Brittle Books Program." This 15-page paper has been reprinted with blue ink in a booklet format suitable for distribution to university administrators, government officials, library users, and others interested in supporting preservation efforts.

Please mail your requests for these materials to Pamela Block at the Commission, specifying if possible your intended use for them. Single and multiple copies are available, at no cost.

Updated Resource On Deacidification

The Commission is continuing to track on developments in mass deacidification as part of its overall charge to investigate technologies applicable to national preservation and dissemination efforts. Unlike microfilming technologies, mass deacidification still is under development—the only working system existing today is the one developed by Wei T'o Associates in 1981, according to the useful report, "Mass Deacidification for Libraries: 1989 Update" by George Martin Cunha, in the January-February 1989 *Library Technology Reports* (Vol.25, No.1).

The report includes sections on mass deacidification in 1987, status of 1987 systems in 1989, and new systems in the U.S. and Europe. From the Executive Summary:

> *The perspective on mass deacidification is changing rapidly. . . . There is now increased emphasis on the strengthening of acid-damaged paper because deacidification alone of embrittled paper is an exercise in futility. . . . This could mean that all other processes that deacidify only will be obsolete soon.*

Library Technology Reports is published by the American Library Association, 50 East Huron Street, Chicago, IL 60611. Single issues, when available, cost $45.00.

Newsletter Subscription Reminder

Directors of libraries that are members of the Association of Research Libraries and the Oberlin Group receive TWO copies of this newsletter, sent separately by non-profit bulk-mail rate. The second copy can be distributed within your institution to staff members, college/university administrators, and others who are interested in national and international preservation efforts.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 15

NEWSLETTER

Summertime Good News Edition

AUGUST 1989

COLLEGE LIBRARIES COMMITTEE IDENTIFIES TRAINING, COMMUNICATION NEEDS

Members of the College Libraries Committee moved forward on several fronts during their second meeting on June 21, as they explored options for participation in the evolving national preservation program. A subgroup on endangered materials reported upon an informal questionnaire sent to 80 college libraries, which identified a number of endangered special collections that might be candidates for inclusion in the national program. The committee is interested in hearing from other college libraries that may have collections of national significance in need of preservation microfilming due to brittleness.

Following a report from a subgroup on training, the committee agreed that there is a high priority need for a specialized workshop for college library administrators who are responsible on a part-time basis for a preservation program. The committee is identifying the necessary components for such a workshop, and has made a formal recommendation to the Commission to add this need to its education and training agenda for the coming year.

A subgroup on communication recommended that the committee increase its contacts with college librarians, college administrators, and college library users. Articles or columns in journals and direct letters to colleagues will be developed over the next several months.

The committee also heard a report from George Farr, Director of the National Endowment for the Humanities Office of Preservation, concerning NEH funding policies for preservation grants. Committee members are:

Barbara J. Brown, University Librarian, Washington & Lee University; David Cohen, Director of Libraries, College of Charleston; David A. Kearley, University Librarian, University of the South; Kathleen Spencer (chair), Library Director, Franklin & Marshall College; Willis E. Bridegam, Librarian of the College, Amherst College; Joel Clemmer, Library Director, Macalester College; Caroline M. Coughlin, Library Director, Drew University; and Jacquelyn M. Morris, College Librarian, Occidental College.

AALL TO CONDUCT PRETEST OF MICROPUBLISHER STANDARDS SURVEY

The Commission has contracted with the Special Committee on the Preservation Needs of Law Libraries of the American Association of Law Libraries (AALL) to conduct a pretest of a survey of micropublishers concerning their filming standards. Under the contract's terms, two staff members from the Harvard Law Library Preservation Department will conduct site visits to micropublishers to test a comprehensive survey covering microform production and quality control, storage of first-generation master negative film, storage containers and enclosures, and inspection of stored first-generation negatives.

The pretest group includes several general publishers as well as micropublishers that concentrate on legal materials. The contract calls for mailing the surveys to publishers in the U.S. and England this fall, with in-depth site visits at the beginning of 1990. A final project report due in late spring, 1990, will be disseminated broadly by the Commission, since this is an area of considerable concern to preservation specialists.

As explained in the project description:

> *Commercial filming may or may not have the same requirements, and may or may not meet the preservation standards used by libraries. Yet, so many titles have already been filmed by commercial publishers that unnecessary duplicate filming for preservation would waste valuable resources. In order to evaluate how commercial microforms fit into a national preservation program, it is necessary to know how commercial microfilm is produced, used and stored.*

After the Commission-sponsored pretest, the survey form, which is being developed jointly by AALL and the RLG Preservation Committee, will be sent to commercial publishers across the country and around the world.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

NEDCC, SOLINET Expand Preservation Services

In response to the national initiative to step up preservation microfilming activities, the Northeast Document Conservation Center (NEDCC) is directing its resources to facilitate projects at research libraries and other repository institutions. An H.W. Wilson Foundation grant has enabled NEDCC to initiate a week-long training program that includes classroom sessions and hands-on experience in NEDCC's microfilming laboratory. The Center also will continue to function as a centralized microfilming facility for large-scale brittle books filming projects. Beginning October 1, 1989, Dr. Margaret Child, former Assistant Director for Research Services of the Smithsonian Institution Libraries, will join NEDCC's Field Service Office as a national consultant. Dr. Child, who also served as Assistant Director of the Division of Research Programs at the National Endowment for the Humanities, will be available to perform surveys of institutional preservation needs, as well as to advise on statewide preservation planning, consortium projects, and preparation of grant proposals.

Meanwhile, the Southeastern Library Network (SOLINET) is looking for an experienced library professional for the new position of Preservation Program Director, reporting to the Chief Operating Officer. This position is being created to provide focused management attention to SOLINET's Preservation Program, which is undergoing considerable growth. As a senior manager, the Preservation Program Director will be responsible for overall planning, budgeting, and management of the program components, as well as evaluation and implementation of new services.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483- 6410.

NEH Announces $15 Million for Preservation Projects

An August 3 press release from the National Endowment for the Humanities announces more than $15 million in new grants for projects to preserve books, newspapers, monographs, photographs, videotapes, and other resources for scholarly research. The announcement includes the largest grants that NEH has ever awarded for preservation projects. The Endowment estimates that, when completed, all the new projects will preserve the knowledge in some 167,300 embrittled volumes that otherwise would be lost.

"The grants . . . will help libraries and archives to ensure that the knowledge contained in their disintegrating collections will not disappear forever," said NEH Chairman Lynne V. Cheney. "These projects will help preserve a significant part of our cultural legacy so that it may be available to future generations of scholars."

The new grants are administered by the NEH Office of Preservation. The universities and research institutions receiving support to preserve the contents of brittle books are: New York Public Library; Harvard University; Columbia University; Research Libraries Group, Inc. (Brown, Emory, Florida, Iowa, New York, and Northwestern Universities, Dartmouth College, the New York State Historical Society, Columbia Teachers College); University of California, Berkeley; Yale University; University of Chicago; Princeton University; and the University of Texas at Austin.

A news release, list of grant projects, and fact sheet are available from NEH, 1100 Pennsylvania Ave., NW, Washington, DC 20506.

Librarians and publishers have recognized that they have mutual interests in the dissemination and preservation of information. Librarians, publishers, authors, and editors will work together to achieve a delivery system that satisfies reader demand and provides a reasonable rate of return on investment . . .

While new roles emerge, the traditional responsibilities of preserving the records of humanity's achievements, failures, culture, history, and knowledge will become more important. Librarians have unprecedented opportunities to make a difference in the lives of people. We cannot discard or disregard the past. While we are helping people solve twenty-first century problems, we must be prepared to make it easy for people to study the past.

—*From "The Online Information System at Georgia Institute of Technology," by Miriam A. Drake, in Information Technology and Libraries*, Vol.8, n.2, June 1989.

50

SPECIAL SECTION — Progress On Paper

Publishers Like Alkaline, According to *PW*

"Toward the Totally Acid-Free Book" is the title of an article in the July 21, 1989, *Publishers Weekly*. Featuring a profile of the company, Ecological Fibers of Lunenberg, MA, the article begins with these encouraging words: "The day when books can be made totally acid free is almost here. While acid-free text paper has been on the market for some time, the publishing industry now is beginning to see the emergence of such new acid-free products as end-leaf sheets and cover boards." Ecological Fibers makes all its coatings with water-based technology—new for the industry and ecologically sound, since it eliminates waste discharge into the environment and solvent odor in the plant.

"While I realize that today's push is to acid-free text paper, why sell a book with acid-free text that may stay pristine for 500 years, but with an acid pH cover that librarians will have to replace in 25 years or less?" asks paper manufacturer Quill in the article.

The same *PW* issue carries an extensive article, "Public Drive for Alkaline Paper Inspires New Action in the Mills." From the opening paragraph: "...it may well be that in a few short years alkaline paper will become a non-issue; not that acid paper will make a reappearance, but by then almost every paper mill of any size will have converted to alkaline technology, according to most mill operators interviewed for this article." One estimate from industry analysts predicts that by 1992, half of the uncoated, free-sheet paper produced in this country will be acid free. "But the shift is not entirely altruistic on the part of mills," the article adds, "since the change to alkaline production is cost-effective for paper manufacturers just now."

Reviews in *LJ* Designate Use of Permanent Paper

Library Journal has been providing permanent paper information in the bibliographic citation that accompanies each review in its Professional Reading column since Spring 1988. *LJ*'s Book Review has included the designation "permanent paper" since the beginning of this calendar year, reports GraceAnn A. DeCandido, Senior Editor.

Permanent Paper Bill Passes in Senate

On July 31, the Senate passed S.J.Res. 57, to establish a national policy to promote the use of permanent, alkaline papers, by a voice vote. The resolution had been ordered reported for floor action on June 13 by the Senate Governmental Affairs Committee. Many thanks to those of you who worked to gather support for this resolution, which was introduced by Sen. Claiborne Pell. A companion House measure, H.J.Res. 226 introduced by Rep. Pat Williams, probably will be acted upon in the Fall.

Archives and History General Commission of United Methodist Church Acts on Alkaline Paper, Preservation Microfilming

The General Commission on Archives & History of the United Methodist Church made progress on two preservation fronts at its July 1989 annual meeting: the use of alkaline paper and microfilming. The group passed a Resolution on Alkaline Paper to "begin to use alkaline paper in all of its publications of enduring value and...encourage other general, jurisdictional, and annual conference agencies to do the same as soon as possible." The resolution also invites other church general agencies—including four major publishing units—to take similar action. Finally, the resolution announces the intention to submit legislation requiring the use of alkaline paper for all works of enduring value at the church's 1992 General Conference. Also adopted by the group was a recommendation from the Library Committee to appoint a special task force "to develop a comprehensive strategy for preservation microfilming of Methodist materials for the 1992-1996 Quadrennium." The planning will be conducted in consultation with the Methodist Librarians' Fellowship, the Association of United Methodist Theological Schools, the General Board of Higher Education and Ministry, and the Preservation Board of the American Theological Library Association.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Cooperative Preservation Programs Underway in Many States

[The following article is excerpted from a report by Carolyn Morrow on the National Conference on the Development of Statewide Preservation Programs, held March 1-3, 1989, at the Library of Congress.]

The impetus for the conference came, in part, from the realization that a significant number of states were already in the process of developing statewide programs. These programs endeavor to preserve collections important to our cultural and intellectual heritage held by libraries, archives, and historical agencies. The conference was attended by 148 individuals representing 47 states, 3 territories, and the District of Columbia. During 17 hours of meetings and discussion, participants focused on the legislative, funding, and public awareness challenges and benefits of organizing a multi-institutional coordinated preservation program within the context of a single state.

Opening remarks from Carole F. Huxley, Deputy Commissioner for Cultural Education, New York; James H. Billington, Librarian of Congress; Don W. Wilson, Archivist of the United States; and Lynne V. Cheney, Chairman of the National Endowment for the Humanities, emphasized the importance of coordination at all levels of government and described the gathering momentum of a nationwide preservation effort.

Carolyn Morrow, Assistant National Preservation Program Officer at the Library of Congress, identified four common elements that could be described as either obstacles to or prerequisites for statewide preservation program development. These included a sufficient preservation knowledge base in the state, a history of interinstitutional cooperation and collaboration, an institutional focal point for preservation, and access to the legislature. In concluding, Morrow noted that statewide preservation programs are "an opportunity to celebrate the history of the states, their individual textures and their differences," and that this activity "isn't something that can be done from Washington, DC."

Representatives from a number of states gave presentations on their preservation projects. Among them:

New York: Document Conservation Training and Planning Project, a three-year process of identifying preservation needs and involving key players.

Illinois: A model for statewide preservation action beginning with grass roots interest, the development of a statewide information and outreach program, and the formation of a statewide Preservation Task Force.

South Carolina: Statewide preservation planning with the assistance of a regional preservation program.

Florida: The development of a statewide plan for library disasters to minimize losses to collections and reduce replacement costs.

Other states represented on the program included Alabama, California, Connecticut, Maine, Maryland, Minnesota, Missouri, Nevada, Oklahoma, Pennsylvania, and Virginia.

As professionals in the field of scholarship, we have a responsibility to preserve the historical record that we have inherited and the contributions that contemporaries are making to it. The library, which houses that record, pays homage to the past, acknowledges the present, and salutes the future. As a repository of our intellectual heritage and a center of scholarship, it deserves reverence and protection against all threats to its security. Withholding that protection will erase the history of our civilization for future generations, wiping clean the slate of centuries of accumulated knowledge.

—From "Our silent enemy: ashes in our libraries," by Lois DeBakey, Ph.D., and Selma DeBakey, B.A., in Bulletin of the Medical Library Association, Vol.77, n.3, July 1989.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 16 NEWSLETTER SEPTEMBER 1989

NEW REPORTS AVAILABLE ON INTERNATIONAL PROJECT, SELECTION STRATEGIES

Two new reports—one on the International Project and one on selection strategies for preservation—have been issued by the Commission on Preservation and Access.

The International Project Progress Report (August 1989, seven pages) is a report of a June 1989 visit by Hans Rütimann to libraries and other organizations identified for this pilot project. The report provides updates on preservation microfilming activities in Deutsche Bibliothek, Frankfurt-am-Main; Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut, Berlin; Stadt-und Universitätsbibliothek, Frankfurt-am-Main; Council of Europe, Strasbourg; and Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, Provins, Sablé.

The International Project was begun in June 1988 to explore the feasibility of creating an international database of bibliographic records for preserved materials. Its main goals are to determine the extent to which preservation records exist in other countries; facilitate agreement on the level of bibliographic detail needed to exchange records; and determine how to proceed to create a shared database capacity.

Selection for Preservation of Research Library Materials Report (August 1989, four pages) is being distributed to stimulate further thinking on the part of the community of scholars and librarians who must develop judicious selection strategies. As the national preservation microfilming program reaches higher levels of activity, librarians and scholars are facing the challenge of establishing priorities for choosing which materials to preserve when not everything can be saved. The report discusses disciplinary differences in the needs and objectives of preservation, possible approaches to selection strategies, and factors that affect the choice of an approach.

Several hundred complimentary copies of both papers are being distributed with the cooperation of a number of library preservation organizations. Additional complimentary copies are available from Pamela Block at the Commission.

PROGRESS REPORTED ON SCANNING TECHNOLOGY

The Research Libraries Group, Inc. (RLG), which is conducting research under a contract from the Commission, has reported considerable progress in planning a test of Optiram's technology to convert bibliographic records to machine-readable format. The project is one of a number being sponsored by the Commission to increase the efficiency of the preservation microfilming process. Although focusing on issues of immediate benefit to the emerging national preservation program, the project also should result in tangible benefits for retrospective conversion of other bibliographic records.

The research is being done in cooperation with the Library of Congress (LC). Based on decisions made in a June meeting, RLG and LC are proceeding with a pilot project to convert sample fiche from both the NYPL (New York Public Library) Register and the Bibliothèque Nationale (BN) Register. In addition, LC is selecting 250 sample cards, and several RLG libraries have chosen another 250 sample cards, intended to test Optiram's ability to scan and convert into MARC format records reflecting a wide range of cataloging practices, card formats, and typical problems encountered.

Libraries have been charged for centuries with preserving and presenting the elements of our cultural heritage. If they allow their electronic systems to embrace a diverse and physically remote universe of materials and [if] user interactions are designed in a sensitive, educationally sound fashion, they can become the provider of that common base. They are a natural for the role.

—From "Rethinking OPACS: The Design of Assertive Information Systems," by Patricia B. Culkin, in *Information Technology and Libraries*, Vol.8, n.2, June 1989.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

SPECIAL REPORT

DEVELOPMENT OF A TECHNOLOGY ASSESSMENT AGENDA

By Rowland C. W. Brown
Chair, Technology Assessment Advisory Committee

With the establishment of the Technology Assessment Advisory Committee (TAAC), the Commission on Preservation and Access is pursuing a broad technological assessment agenda to undergird its program development and help guide and support those who are undertaking and financing long-term, collaborative preservation efforts.

A current focus is large-scale preservation microfilming projects, with other options rapidly developing. Elements are already in place from a technological standpoint: Standardized equipment, supplies, and services (both non-profit and commercial) are available for microfilming and storing masters of relatively standard black-and-white print materials. Progress continues in the exploration of high-volume production methods of microfilming and alternative methods of deacidifying vulnerable but still preservable materials. Looking further ahead, libraries and funding agencies are seeking out electronic alternatives to filming as well as investigating electronic access to filmed materials. Within this context, the Commission needs to explore whether investment in current preservation methods will continue to be feasible as these technological developments occur.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483- 6410.

Obviously, the goal is not only to produce a copy of a deteriorating item with relatively permanent life and of comparable or even enhanced quality and definition, but to provide copies that can be electronically stored, searched, disseminated, and reproduced in suitable print form from remote locations in a manner that is both convenient and cost-effective for the library and its users. This type of remote access must be provided in ways that are acceptable and comfortable to people who have been accustomed to finding these materials on library shelves. Such an approach to enhanced access will require a collective effort and centralized dissemination strategies on a significant scale.

With these new patterns of use of print collections, there are a myriad of issues and concerns regarding appropriate collection and dissemination policies, the governance and economics of any collective effort, and copyright and fair use implications. Many of the solutions will depend in large part upon technological developments and the resulting electronic infrastructure that will be available to libraries in the United States and internationally. The TAAC is addressing these technological issues to help provide guidance to the Commission, its institutional sponsors and funding agencies, and all those involved in the preservation effort.

Over the next few years, the Committee expects to concentrate on such areas as electronic image capture or scanning, compression and enhancement, optical character recognition, storage devices, transmission networks, workstations, user interfaces, searching algorithms and printing devices. One of its charges is to alert the Commission to promising developments and possibilities for useful demonstration projects. To do so, it will collaborate with institutions such as the Library of Congress, the National Archives, the National Library of Medicine, the Smithsonian Institution, the National Agricultural Library, various university and commercial consortia, the National Science Foundation, EDUCOM, OCLC, and RLG, as well as the research departments of the commercial hardware, software, and communications sectors.

Attention will be given to current and proposed efforts to support—through more advanced, technologically structured telecommunications networks—the linking of research efforts of academic institutions, government and industry. The Committee also will track on developments regarding supercomputers, scholarly communication, and library bibliographic resource sharing and document

delivery efforts to determine how and when these efforts might provide the infrastructure for access to preserved copies as well as to current materials. Likewise, the Committee will be in touch with the publishing industry as it explores future strategies for electronic publishing of current material that will, in all likelihood, have significant import for access to preserved materials.

It appears to the Committee that the situation for electronic storage and access in the preservation program is highly propitious, not only because of rapid development of several congruent and interdependent technologies, but because of several other factors as well. These factors include the enormous effort, interest, and investment in electronic record retention and access by industry and government; the above-mentioned networking activities that are being spurred in part by a growing national interest in our competitive stance in research; and a similar national competitive interest—as well as enormous profit potential in the entertainment industry for the emerging high-definition television and the necessary national fiber optic infrastructure that it demands. It is quite likely that one or more of these developments will ultimately play a role in how libraries and library users will obtain access in the future to our priceless print and film heritage. The TAAC intends to assist the Commission in sorting out these diverse developments and in determining their importance to our collective efforts. The task is made all the more difficult, albeit exciting, by the fact that these developments are taking place in many parts of the world, so the focus cannot be limited to developments within the United States.

• • • • •

The Technology Assessment Advisory Committee is a small group of senior people from universities, industry, and the publishing community who will be exploring technologies with potential for preservation activities. The Committee has several initial objectives:

- Active consideration of the potential of new technologies for storage and retrieval within the context of a national collection of preserved items, including technologies for capturing information and networking capacities;
- Recommendation and review of research and demonstration projects to be funded by the Commission;
- Consideration of issues involved in the preservation of electronic formats and the preservation of media including motion picture film and sound recordings.

Committee members are: Rowland C. W. Brown, Chair, President, OCLC (retired); Adam Hodgkin, Director, Electronic Publishing, Oxford University Press; Douglas van Houweling, Vice Provost for Information Technologies, University of Michigan; Michael Lesk, Division Manager, Computer Sciences Research, Bellcore; M. Stuart Lynn, Vice President, Information Technologies, Cornell University; Robert Spinrad, Director, Corporate Technology, Xerox Corporation; and Robert L. Street, Vice President for Information Resources, Stanford University.

ARL Adopts Guidelines for Bibliographic Records for Preservation Microform Masters

As plans for large-scale microfilming move forward and national funding for preservation microfilming increases, an essential requirement is the establishment of a cooperative database that provides users with information concerning the identity and location of existing microform masters. To help move toward that goal, the Association of Research Libraries has adopted a set of Guidelines for Bibliographic Records for Preservation Microform Masters (Books), which balances the cost of record creation with the need for reasonable access. The Guidelines are intended to provide mutually acceptable rules for record fullness and consistency. More information is available from: Association of Research Libraries, 1527 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, DC 20036.

Hewlett Foundation Grant Continues Support of Cooperative Preservation Programs

The William and Flora Hewlett Foundation has announced the awarding of a $300,000 grant to the Commission on Preservation and Access to help support national and international preservation and access programs. The two-year grant provides a continuation of support from the Hewlett Foundation, which was one of the charter supporters of the Commission three years ago.

The grant will contribute to the support of a broad range of preservation programs and projects, both currently operating and to be developed over the next two years. Ongoing programs of the Commission include an international initiative to explore cooperative microfilming, a communication program to maintain national visibility and support for the preservation cause, scholarly advisory committees to assist in the identification of selection criteria for filming, and a number of technological explorations.

Newsletter Subscription Reminder

A primary purpose of the Commission on Preservation and Access is to establish a two-way communication link with university administrators, scholars, government officials, library directors, and key library staff members about the national preservation program. With that goal in mind, this newsletter is produced and funded to provide a direct, regular information flow among individuals involved in preservation issues. To keep our costs at a reasonable level, the circulation is controlled to reflect the above primary audiences. We are not able to provide complimentary copies to Serials Departments for processing. As noted previously, directors of libraries that are members of the Association of Research Libraries and the Oberlin Group receive TWO copies of this newsletter, sent separately by non-profit bulk-mail rate. The second copy can be distributed within your institution to staff members, college/university administrators, and others who are interested in national and international preservation efforts. The newsletter is not copyrighted and may be freely reproduced.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 17 NEWSLETTER OCTOBER 1989

TRANSLATION OF REPORT ON MASS DEACIDIFICATION

The translation of an article originally published in German that summarizes a substantial study of deacidification techniques is being distributed by the Commission.

The study summarized in the report was conducted by the Battelle Institute for the West German Library. The nine-part report first reviews the problem of acidic books, the development of paper production, aging processes of paper, and approaches to solutions (including transfer onto microfilm and preservation in the original form), and then describes three mass deacidification procedures: The American diethyl zinc (DEZ) process, the Wei T'o magnesium methyl carbonate process, and the French magnesium methyl carbonate proces The article's author is Peter Schwerdt, a co-author of the full Battelle Report.

Among the report's findings:

> *It should be stressed that all mass deacidification processes developed so far result only in an extension of the remaining life expectancy of books at the time of treatment, depending on their condition. A restoration of the original durability of the paper is not achieved in this manner. . . . The preservation of endangered library and archival collections can be successful only through the use of a comprehensive concept that combines all presently known measures of preservation and accommodates the possibility of future expansion.*

The Commission funded the translation and distribution of the report as a contribution to the knowledge base on this technical issue. Several hundred copies have been distributed to universities and libraries. Additional copies are available at no charge, by writing Pamela Block at the Commission.

This article first appeared in issue 36 (1989) 1 of *Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie*. The full report is expected to be made available in German in Fall 1989 in an offprint from the same journal, under the title "Massenkonservierung für Bibliotheken and Archive," from Verlag Vittoria Klostermann GmbH, Frauenlobstrasse 22, D-6000 Frankfurt a.M.90.

HENRIETTE AVRAM ELECTED TO COMMISSION

Henriette Avram, recently appointed Associate Librarian for Collection Services at the Library of Congress (LC), has been elected to the Commission for a three-year term. In her new position at LC, Mrs. Avram has overall responsibilities for preservation programs and activities. She also oversees acquisitions, cataloging, and certain research activities.

Mrs. Avram began at LC in 1965 as Assistant Coordinator of Information Systems. In a succession of advancements, she became Chief of the MARC Development Office (1970), Director of the Network Developing Office (1976), Director for Processing Systems, Networks and Automation Planning (1980), and Assistant Librarian for Processing Services (1983).

During the past three decades, Mrs. Avram has been an influential leader in the development of the comprehensive and cohesive computerized bibliographic structure that is now well established nationally and internationally. As a forceful advocate of bibliographic causes and an intellectual leader in librarianship, she has been honored by institutions and professional organizations throughout the world. Last year, she was awarded the ALA Joseph W. Lippincott Award for distinguished service to the profession.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

Change Magazine Spotlights Call for New Preservation Strategies

The Forum section of *Change, The Magazine of Higher Learning*, (September-October 1989) features an article by Patricia Battin on "Crumbling Books: A Call for Strategies to Preserve Our Cultural Memory." The article calls attention to the national and global challenge of preserving resources for scholarship and asserts that "we cannot afford, economically or intellectually, to solve the preservation problem in isolation from the fundamental changes occurring in research and publishing." *Change* is published by the American Association for Higher Education, Washington, DC. The Commission is making reprints of the article available at no cost. (Contact Pamela Block at the Commission.)

Update on House Permanent Paper Measure

House action on legislation to establish a national policy to promote and encourage the printing of books and other publications of enduring value on alkaline, permanent papers is expected later this month or in early November, according to the Washington office of the American Library Association. H.J.Res. 226 introduced by Rep. Pat Williams (D-MT) has been referred to the Government Operations Committee and the Administrative Committee of the House. Both committees must act within the next month or two to secure final passage this year, and a small pro forma hearing may be called, according to the ALA office. The House measure had garnered 52 cosponsors as of last month. The companion Senate measure, S.J.Res. 57, introduced by Sen. Claiborne Pell, was passed by voice vote on July 31.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

Ad Hoc Group to Explore Test Project for Preservation Reprints

Collection development and preservation librarians, a reprint publisher, and Commission staff will be meeting this month to explore the feasibility of reprinting and making available at reasonable cost a small, specially selected set of materials requiring preservation. The meeting is being sponsored by the Commission as one of a number of efforts to explore alternatives to access for preserved materials. The proposed project also ties into the Commission's interest in developing collaborative arrangements among librarians, scholars, and publishers.

The project under consideration would test the feasibility of one or more libraries working with a publisher to identify, reprint, and market selected materials from those that have been identified as requiring preservation. In addition to Commission staff, the meeting will include David Farrell, U.C. Berkeley; Tony Ferguson, Columbia University; Michael Keller, Yale University; Jan Merrill-Oldham, University of Connecticut; and Leo Balk, Garland Publishing Inc.

Commission Distributing 1988-89 Annual Report

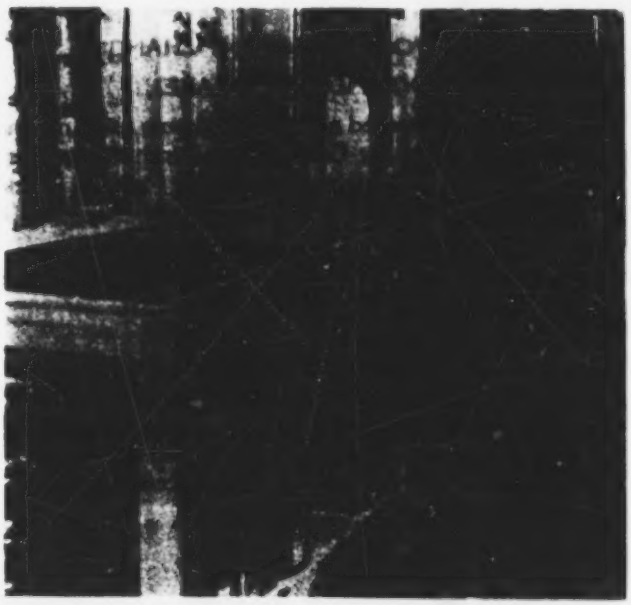
The *Commission on Preservation and Access Annual Report, 1988-89* summarizes a year full of activities and accomplishments for all concerned with the national preservation program. As noted in the report's introduction, for the librarians, archivists, scholars, and university administrators who have long been striving to preserve scholarly resources, this period might well be remembered as a watershed twelve months — a time when the passage of major federal funding enabled the preservation movement to advance into a new stage of multi-faceted awareness and action.

The Commission's major initiatives for 1988-89 as analyzed in the report include institutional support, communication linkages, selection criteria, new technologies, and copyright implications. Other issues — paper quality, deacidification techniques, and statewide planning for preservation — seemed best served by supporting the efforts of existing organizations. The report also highlights a major Commission program, the International Project.

The report is being mailed to all persons on the Commission's mailing lists. Additional copies are available from Pamela Block at the Commission.

Commission Fall Meeting to be Held in Chicago

In what is expected to be the first of a series of regional meetings with sponsors, the Commission will be holding its fall 1989 quarterly meeting with library directors and preservation librarians from Committee on Institutional Cooperation (CIC) institutions. The Chicago-based meeting on November 9 will provide an opportunity to discuss priorities and prospective agenda items directly with some of the Commission's primary constituents to ensure that its work is consonant with the needs of the higher education community.



—Photo courtesy of Preservation Department, Milton S. Eisenhower Library, The Johns Hopkins University.

Who Receives This Newsletter

National Advisory Council on Preservation	22
Research Library Committee	28
Oberlin Group—Library Directors	62
Association of Research Libraries - Directors	120
University Chief Academic Officers	128
Scholarly Advisory Committee on History	7
Scholarly Advisory Committee on Philosophy	7
Scholarly Advisory Committee on Art History	7
Mid-sized Research Libraries Committee	9
College Libraries Committee	8
Technology Assessment Advisory Committee	7
Editors and Publishers	134
Preservation Officer/Administrators	62
Archives Administrators	7
Regional or State Agencies/Networks	9
Professional Organizations/Associations	19
University Administrators/Faculty/Scholars	14
U.S. Government	3
Business/Industry	13
Individuals	7
Librarians/Library Directors (in addition to above)	61

How to Correct or Change Your Address Label

This newsletter is mailed non-profit bulk rate using mailing lists maintained by the Commission. Send your address corrections and changes directly to Pamela Block, Administrative Assistant, at the Commission.

More Reviews to Cite Acid-free Paper Info

Along with *Choice* and *Library Journal*, the *American Archivist* is now including information on the use of acid-free paper in its bibliographic citations accompanying book reviews. It also will begin using the infinity symbol in reviews beginning with the Winter 1990 issue, according to Anne R. Kenney, editor.

Task Force on Environmental Conditions: Course For Physical Plant Managers

The Association of Physical Plant Administrators (APPA) has selected three persons to work with the Commission on developing a course on environmental conditions for books and museums. The three APPA planners are: George Preston of the Art Institute of Chicago, Richard Siegle of the Smithsonian Institution, and John E. Deedrick of the Atlanta College of Art. Along with the Commission's task force members, they are working to develop a curriculum for a two- to three-day seminar for physical plant managers. Current plans are to develop the course in time to offer it in the spring of 1990. The Commission task force members are: Patti McClung, RLG; Joel Clemmer, Macalester College; and Don Kelsey, University of Minnesota.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 18 NEWSLETTER NOV. - DEC. 1989

NEW PAPER: "ON THE PRESERVATION OF BOOKS AND DOCUMENTS IN ORIGINAL FORM"

"On the Preservation of Books and Documents in Original Form" by Barclay Ogden (5 pages, October 1989) explores issues involved in preserving materials that have scholarly value as objects. The publication was developed with the recognition that the national preservation program can save the contents of millions of brittle books through mass microfilming, but that other library materials with value as artifacts also are in need of preservation.

"When the original form or format contributes to the scholarly value of the record, the record becomes an artifact," Ogden suggests. "From the perspective of making a preservation decision, should not we consider the original format to be 'information' of scholarly value comparable to the words and illustrations more typically thought of as information?" The paper examines possible preservation selection strategies based on the scholarly value of the materials and on urgency of need. However, the paper concludes, no matter which strategies are developed, they must include "a justification for resources, methodologies for selection, and a range of preservation technologies able to match problems with needs."

The success of any effort, Ogden cautions, will depend upon the involvement of scholars and librarians, not only in identifying books and documents that must be preserved in original format, "but in fully understanding the nature of the preservation problem to be solved and in developing a strategy for its solution."

"On the Preservation of Books and Documents in Original Form" has been distributed on a complimentary basis to the Commission's mailing lists. Additional copies are available upon written request from Pamela Block at the Commission.

REGIONAL COMMISSION MEETING ADDRESSES PRESERVATION STRATEGIES

Members of the Commission met on November 9 in Chicago with 22 sponsors and representatives of the Committee on Interinstitutional Cooperation (CIC). The day-long event was structured to enable open discussions of coordinated strategies for preservation efforts. A continuing theme throughout the discussions was interaction of national-level preservation activities with state, regional, corporate, and local institutional activities.

The agenda developed by CIC included such issues as bibliographic control for microform masters, mass deacidification, film and video preservation, non-humanities preservation, use-based selection, repair and conservation activities, centralized storage and retrieval service, formats other than microfilm for storage and retrieval, education and training, and international cooperation.

CIC has made a decision to take the lead in investigating deacidification as a mass preservation technique. A CIC Task Force is planning a project that will develop criteria and then evaluate mass deacidification processes. The CIC plan includes contracting with a testing laboratory and raising the necessary funds for the project from multiple sources.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

Preservation Librarians Look at Research Needs, Priorities

Several preservation librarians met with Commission staff on October 30 in response to a letter from Margaret Byrnes on behalf of the Preservation of Library Materials Section (PLMS), Association of Library Collections and Technical Services, American Library Association. The agenda covered a series of information needs, priorities and possible action plans for preservation research developed over a number of years by the PLMS Policy and Planning Committee and the Preservation Administrators Discussion Group.

A basic initial need, the group decided, is for a more complete shared knowledge of research — both under way and recently completed — with implications for current preservation needs and activities. Although a great deal of relevant research has been and is being conducted, the dissemination of findings tends to be uncoordinated and inadequate. In particular, there appears to be little cross-communication among three key communities: libraries, archives, and science.

To assist in exchanging research information among these groups, the Commission will develop an initial list of relevant preservation research projects for dissemination to the library and archival fields. The group plans to meet again in early 1990.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

Technology Assessment Advisory Committee Tackles Far-reaching, Complex Issues

Technological developments as they relate to preservation planning were reviewed in some depth by the Commission's Technology Assessment Advisory Committee (TAAC) at its October 2 meeting in Washington, DC. As the committee looked at the current technological environment in which it will be working, chairman Rowland Brown asked members to do so from the perspective of the practical issues facing librarians, preservationists, and conservators. The group paid particular attention to the role of microfilming and its relationship to developing digital formats.

The members concluded that a simple and clear taxonomy of the rather complex field of digitization and electronic encoding should be developed, to be used by the Commission and its constituents in understanding options, trade-offs, economics, and suitability of current technologies for preservation purposes. Along with this taxonomy, the committee will prepare a report on the implications for access arising from developments in the telecommunications field. The Commission expects to make both reports available later in 1990.

Given the current status of electronic alternatives, quality microfilming remains an appropriate method of preserving print images, committee members agreed. The archival quality of film has been well established, and the costs of storage of microfilm are attractive in comparison to other alternatives. Electronic versions of preserved materials, which would provide easier remote access and convenience, can be generated at a later time from film masters.

The committee reviewed a number of possible demonstration projects involving electronic digitization of and access to preserved materials, in preparation for assisting the Commission in their identification and implementation.

The committee also discussed the economics of current large-scale preservation activities and the need to begin assembling reliable economic statistics that could be applied in analyzing the costs and benefits of alternative approaches to be explored by the Commission.

In addition to chair Rowland Brown, committee members are: Adam Hodgkin, Director, Electronic Publishing, Oxford, England; Douglas van Houweling, Vice-Provost for Information Technologies, University of Michigan; Michael Lesk, Division Manager, Computer Sciences Research, Bellcore; M. Stuart Lynn, Vice President, Information Technologies, Cornell University; Robert Spinrad, Director, Corporate Technology, Xerox Corporation; and Robert L. Street, Vice President for Information Resources, Stanford University.

Preservation Developments on Fall Agenda of State Legislators

The problems facing states and their libraries as they attempt to preserve existing historical documents and the steps they can take to assure a longer life for documents printed in the future were discussed at the fall meeting of the National Conference of State Legislatures' Assembly on the Legislature held October 19 in Sante Fe, NM.

At the invitation of NCSL's Arts, Tourism and Cultural Resources Committee, Maxine Sitts provided approximately 30 state legislators and staff members with an overview of national preservation efforts and suggestions for statewide action in the coming months and years. The presentation included information from the National Conference on the Development of Statewide Programs held last March at the Library of Congress and from a report by Howard Lowell on "Preservation Needs in State Archives," available from the National Association of Government Archives and Records Administrators, Council of State Governments. The session also called attention to the increased efforts on the part of LSCA programs and the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation to provide funding to states for preservation planning.

Task Force on Environmental Conditions Developing Physical Plant Managers' Course

A joint task force of the Commission and the Association of Physical Plant Administrators (APPA) met December 5 at Commission headquarters to develop a workshop on environmental conditions for books and museums. APPA plans to offer the workshop to its members sometime during 1990, and will be publishing a complementary article on the subject in its quarterly magazine. The task force of librarians and plant managers will be developing the curriculum and deciding on instructors and printed resources over the next several months. Tentative general subject areas include: environmental requirements, communication and responsibilities, building maintenance, building security, and emergencies.

Further information is available from either Maxine Sitts at the Commission or Wayne Leroy, Associate Vice President, Association of Physical Plant Administrators, 1446 Duke Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-3492.

Task Force members from the Commission are: Patti McClung, RLG; Joel Clemmer, Macalester College; and Don Kelsey, University of Minnesota.

Test Project for Preservation Reprints Moves to Next Stage

Following an exploratory meeting held under the auspices of the Commission on October 11, representatives of three university libraries and a reprint publisher have decided to continue developing a demonstration preservation reprint project. The Commission sponsored the meeting of the ad hoc group to encourage the further development of choices of access and format for preserved materials. The meeting serves as an example of the Commission's facilitative role in bringing together representatives of varying constituencies to plan new joint programs.

The preservation reprint project seeks to provide libraries with inexpensive reprints — on acid-free paper in library standard binding — of materials identified during preservation screening as being prime candidates for quick return to the shelves for circulation in book form.

The libraries at the University of California at Berkeley, Columbia University, and Yale University will be building sample lists of potential titles for the project. Titles will be grouped around broad topics in the humanities and social sciences. The publisher is contacting about 75 libraries to determine the level of interest in purchasing the reprints, either by individual title or by subscription.

There is an intent to make microform master copies of all materials as well. More information is available from Maxine Sitts at the Commission or Leo Balk, Vice President, Garland Publishing Inc., 136 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10016.

The technology of recording human information is constantly changing, so we're never going to be done with the preservation challenge. I think our magnetic media — video and computer — are going to be the "brittle books" of the next fifty years. . . . We're always going to have to re-record the human word, just like the monks who had to copy over the classic texts. That's essentially what we're doing when we microfilm [brittle books].

—Carolyn Clark Morrow, Harvard University's first Malloy-Rabinowitz Preservation Librarian

"Slow Fires" Wins Again

"Slow Fires," the award-winning film/video portraying the slow destruction of a large part of our nation's intellectual heritage due to embrittled books printed on acid-based paper, has won yet another award. This time, it is the recipient of the Grand Prix, Science Section, at the Salerno Film Festival. A certificate and trophy were presented to Commission President Pat Battin at an International Awards Luncheon on December 1 in Washington. Loan copies of "Slow Fires" in video and film formats are available from the Commission at no charge for one-time, institutional viewings.

Commission Exhibit In Atlanta December 28-30

The Commission will be exhibiting at the Hyatt Regency Hotel, Atlanta, GA, December 28-30, during a meeting of the Eastern Division of the American Philosophical Association. The exhibit will feature examples of brittle philosophy books, testing pens used to determine the state of acid/alkaline paper, and other information of interest to philosophy scholars and faculty. Join us if you can!

Correction to Commission 1988-89 Annual Report

Please add the following two names to the National Advisory Council on Preservation (page 24):

Alan Calmes
National Archives and Records Administration

Leslie Kulp
National Agricultural Library

These two members temporarily disappeared during electronic typesetting, but they are now "preserved" for the future.

Two Months of News in One Issue

Please note that this newsletter issue covers two months — November and December 1989. Regular monthly mailings will resume in January 1990.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

Commission on Preservation and Access

Number 19

Newsletter

January 1990

National Advisory Council on Preservation Meeting Summary

The National Advisory Council on Preservation (NACP) reviewed four issues — technology, copyright, repair as an alternative to reformatting, and centralized storage and distribution services for preservation microfilms — during a meeting on November 13 in Washington, DC. The issues had been identified as high-priority interests by Council members in a written poll prior to the meeting. The 18 NACP members also heard reports from the Committee on Institutional Cooperation and the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation.

Commission consultant Rowland Brown, chair of the Technology Assessment Advisory Committee, led a discussion on the technologies being developed to provide wider access to preserved materials. The group discussed the viability of transferring information and images between microforms and other media, and agreed that the role of standards will become even more critical as innovations increase. Robert Oakley, who is preparing a paper on copyright implications for the Commission, presented a number of possible approaches for resolving copyright issues associated with the national plan to make and distribute multiple copies (in varying formats) of preserved materials. Most copyright concerns will involve those materials that are still within copyright — expected to be a small percentage of the books being microfilmed.

The group spent some time discussing the role of repair as a vital component of a preservation program. Repair traditionally has been seen as a local responsibility, and it may be a difficult activity to justify in terms of federal-level support. William Studer reported to the group on an initiative by the Committee on Institutional Cooperation (CIC) to conduct definitive testing of the validity of the five mass deacidification processes now being developed by vendors. The ultimate goal is the construction of a mass deacidification plant in the Chicago area for the use of CIC members and others. Representatives of the archives community at the meeting expressed interest in supporting the project and in incorporating the needs of archives materials into the testing process. It was agreed that archival concerns would be included in the CIC study.

continued on page 3

Research on Materials With Text and Images Supported by Getty Grant Program Award

The Getty Grant Program has awarded $254,000 to the Commission to support three interdependent activities:

A research project on the dark stability of color microfilm, to be conducted by the Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service, Lehigh University, Bethlehem, PA;

A demonstration project on the use of high resolution color microfilm, to be undertaken by the Image Permanence Institute of the Rochester (NY) Institute of Technology; and

The convening of a Joint Task Force to explore commonalities and differences in the preservation needs of the diverse groups that depend upon text-and-image for research and advancement of knowledge.

The Grant Program stated that the two-year project would provide "a unique opportunity to aid the field of art history by supporting the establishment of a comprehensive preservation program that will benefit the many organizations and institutions involved in preservation efforts." The Joint Task Force will draw together the interests of diverse constituencies including art librarians, museum administrators, architects, archaeologists, and art historians.

The request for funding was based upon the needs and priorities identified by a group of art historians, art librarians, technical specialists, and an academic press publisher of art books during a three-day seminar at Spring Hill, Wayzata, MN, in September-October 1988. A report from that seminar, funded by The Getty Grant Program, is available from the Commission under the title "Scholarly Resources in Art History: Issues in Preservation" ($5.00/prepayment required).

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

Education Initiative

Commission Awards Contract for Preservation Seminar for Library Educators

A Preservation Seminar for Library Educators that will bring together leaders in preservation, library educators, and university library directors is being planned for 1990, under terms of a contract awarded by the Commission to The Catholic University of America, School of Library and Information Science. Deanna Marcum, dean of the school and chair of the new Task Force on Preservation Education, will be organizing the seminar, which is seen as a first step toward introducing library educators to the progress being made in preservation and in integrating preservation into library schools. As now envisioned, the seminar will include a report from the Commission on the current state of preservation efforts from the national perspective, as well as a report from the task force on how preservation is currently being treated in library schools. Prior to the seminar, a background paper laying out key topics identified by the task force will be written.

Rather than develop any type of model curriculum, the participants will be expected to generate alternative ways of giving preservation its proper place in a library school curriculum, as well as to identify courses that would be likely candidates for a preservation component. A series of recommendations for further action is expected. A written transcript of the seminar will be distributed widely to library schools and collegiate and research libraries.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted: its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483- 6410.

New Task Force to Explore Curriculum Needs

Based upon recommendations of an October 1988 meeting of library administrators, preservation specialists, educators, and foundation representatives, the Commission has established a Task Force on Preservation Education. The new group, composed of six educators, will be exploring in some detail the current status of preservation education, the projected requirements for the next decade, and the ways in which existing programs can be strengthened and expanded to meet the new challenges. Among the suggested questions for task force investigation identified during the 1988 meeting:

> Can the substance of preservation be incorporated into all facets of the core professional education curriculum for librarians and archivists?
>
> What are the needs for specialized programs in preservation administration and in technical skills, taking into account current programs?
>
> What are the needs for technical education, and what options are there for training on a continuing basis?

In an October 1989 charge to task force members, Commission president Pat Battin listed the following issues:

> What are the educational requirements to enable librarians, in every aspect of their work, to ensure the preservation of knowledge?
>
> What kinds of analytical and intellectual skills will be needed by future leaders to be successful in their stewardship obligations?
>
> What are the specific implications for the professional education curriculum?

The group will be developing its own agenda and specific plan of work within the general charge, and will be meeting two to three times each year. The members are: David B. Gracy II, Professor, Graduate School of Library and Information Science, University of Texas at Austin; Beverly P. Lynch, Dean, Graduate School of Library and Information Science, University of California, Los Angeles; Sally Roggia, Adjunct Professor, School of Library and Information Science, University of Wisconsin-Madison; Sally Buchanan, Adjunct Professor, School of Library and Information Science, University of Pittsburgh; Carolyn Harris, Assistant Professor, School of Library Service, Columbia University; and Deanna B. Marcum (chair), Dean, School of Library and Information Science, Catholic University of America.

College and University Sponsors

Thirty colleges and universities have pledged financial support over the next three years to ensure the continuation of the Commission's efforts to facilitate nationwide — and international — plans for the preservation of our scholarly resources and written heritage. The support of the academic community is a vital component of the Commission's capacity to continue and expand its activities. In addition to academic sponsors, the Commission receives ongoing support from the Council on Library Resources and the Hewlett Foundation.

The college and university sponsors, as of December 1, 1989, are:

Amherst College
Brown University
Bryn Mawr College
University of California, Davis
University of California, Los Angeles
University of California, San Diego
University of California, Santa Barbara
Cornell University
Emory University
Franklin and Marshall College
Hamilton College
Harvard University
Haverford College
Johns Hopkins University
Indiana University
Massachusetts Institute of Technology
University of Michigan
University of Minnesota
Mount Holyoke College
Northwestern University
Ohio State University
University of Oregon
Princeton University
Smith College
University of Texas, Austin
Vassar College
University of Washington
Washington University
Wellesley College
Williams College

Summary Meeting

continued from page 1

In an update on efforts to explore centralized storage and distribution services for preservation microfilms, Pat Battin reported that the Commission is gathering data from a number of libraries on their number of master negatives, volume of use, and extent of access services. When all returns are received, the Commission will use that data to help prepare a request-for-proposal (RFP). The Commission would serve as a broker for a group contract that each library could join if it so desired. Economies of scale are expected from such an arrangement, although exact financial projections will not be known until the Commission receives responses to its RFP. It was pointed out that this type of service may be able to deal with copyright issues more easily than individual institutions.

The group also heard a report from George Farr, director of the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation. Approximately 167,000 volumes will be completed within its preservation microfilming grant program over the next three years, and the Office expects to meet its target goals as promised to Congress. The Office has been allotted $17,700,000 for FY-1990, which is $4,200,000 above the expected funding. The additional funds are earmarked for an initiative to preserve material culture collections and will not detract from existing programs. Farr also announced the initiation of two new grant categories: (1) for projects to plan statewide cooperative preservation programs and, (2) for preservation administrator training stipends.

Brief reports were provided on other Commission activities: the International Project, the building of a preservation research agenda in cooperation with preservation specialists, a workshop for members of the Association of Physical Plant Administrators on environmental conditions for books and museums, and a demonstration preservation reprint project. Each participant was provided with an opportunity to comment on the Commission's past year and future agenda, as well as to brief the group on activities of the institutions represented.

The NACP is composed of representatives from academic and professional associations involved in preservation. It promotes participation in nationwide preservation programs and advises the Commission in its work.

Preservation in Medieval Studies Topic of Upcoming Colloquium

The Commission is sponsoring a colloquium on preservation issues in medieval studies, in cooperation with the Medieval Academy of America and The Medieval Institute and College of Arts and Letters of the University of Notre Dame. The meeting, to be held March 25-26, 1990, at the University of Notre Dame, will raise and address strategic issues as prelude to a nationwide, systematic effort to preserve scholarly materials in medieval studies, much of which was published in the 19th century.

While the field of medieval studies shares the preservation concerns of other disciplines, it also has several particular problems. First, the field is completely dependent on primary sources printed during the period 1850-1940, which are unlikely to be reprinted within the next 50 years. Second, the field is represented by no particular library classification, so that its materials are not shelved together as a single collection. Third, the field is extremely diverse, covering even more disciplines than Classics, but having a less-defined sense of curricular paradigms, institutional identity, or settled canons.

The colloquium is modelled on the fall 1988 seminar at Spring Hill, Wayzata, Minnesota, at which a group of art historians, librarians, technology experts, and an academic publisher were convened by the Commission to explore options for the preservation of the intellectual content of brittle books. On the agenda of the upcoming colloquium are such questions as: "What is the actual dependence of research in medieval studies on acidified book materials? . . . and . . . What special preservation and access problems are there for medieval studies?" Dr. Mark Jordan of The Medieval Institute, who is chairing the colloquium, has invited 16 scholars from throughout the United States and Canada to participate.

Scholarly Advisory Committee on Art History Continues Exploration of Preservation Priorities

Effective strategies for selecting art history materials for preservation within the context of a national program were explored further by members of the Scholarly Advisory Committee on Art History during a meeting at the Commission in early November. The group of seven scholars has begun to examine options for locating and identifying materials that are at greatest risk, review periodicals lists, and investigate comprehensive collections, bibliographies, and other tools for setting priorities.

The committee also prepared for a special session on preservation at the 1990 annual meeting of the College Art Association (CAA). Committee chair Professor Larry Silver (Northwestern University) expects to present a report to the CAA membership, and the Commission plans to operate a preservation booth in the exhibit area.

Scholarly Advisory Committees, composed of scholars and librarians, are charged with considering preservation selection criteria in light of the needs of their academic disciplines and advising on priorities and program directions within each discipline. They also act as liaison groups with the academic disciplines. Members of the Art History committee are: Egbert Haverkamp-Begemann, New York University; Phyllis Pray Bober, Bryn Mawr College; Richard Brilliant, Columbia University; Lorenz Eitner, Stanford University Museum of Art; Alan Fern, National Portrait Gallery; Larry Silver, Northwestern University; and Deirdre C. Stam, Syracuse University.

International Project on The Move

During October and November, Commission consultant Hans Rütimann visited Horst Braun at the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft in Bonn and Hans-Albrecht Koch, General Secretary of LIBER (League of European Research Libraries) in Bremen. He also traveled to Paderborn to obtain information about "Project Corvey" from Klaus Barckow, Director of the University Library Paderborn. Corvey's unique collection of German, French, and English books from the 18th and 19th centuries is made available on microfiche. At a follow-up visit to the Bibliotheque Nationale in Paris, the discussion centered on the BN's plan to convert retrospectively its register of microform masters to machine-readable form.

During the latest trip abroad, it became evident that European colleagues are interested in new media in preservation and are particularly intrigued with the idea of scanning microforms to convert them to digitized form. Also, the initiative of the Commission of the European Communities (CEC) to create a European Register of Microform Masters (EROMM) is taken seriously by the CEC's member countries. Rütimann was invited to EROMM's first meeting (in Luxembourg in early December 1989), during which the feasibility study for such a register was reviewed.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 20 NEWSLETTER FEBRUARY 1990

MELLON FOUNDATION GRANT TO SUPPORT INTERNATIONAL COOPERATIVE PRESERVATION

The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation has announced a $1-million grant to the Commission to support international preservation initiatives that complement and strengthen similar activities in the U.S. and Canada. The award, to be used over a period of approximately three years, will support the development of an international database of bibliographic records for preserved library materials. The funds also will help facilitate cooperative preservation microfilming outside the U.S. that is linked to similar work in this country.

Under the terms of the grant, the Commission will assist in the development of a coordinated management capacity that will provide for a truly integrated cooperative infrastructure for worldwide preservation of and access to scholarly resources. Among the planned activities to be sponsored by the grant are a series of pilot projects in various European countries. Hans Rütimann, consultant for the Commission's International Project for the past year, will serve as project manager.

WORKING MEETING ON INTERNATIONAL REGISTER OF MICROFORM MASTERS

As part of the International Project supported by the Mellon Foundation, the Commission will hold a working meeting on the development of an international register of microform masters May 13-16, 1990, in Zurich, Switzerland. Fifteen representatives from national and major research libraries in Great Britain, France, Germany, Canada, and Venezuela have agreed to attend the session, where the Commission hopes to establish a series of basic agreements fundamental to the development of an integrated international database. Participants include individuals with responsibilities for planning and implementing bibliographic control for reformatted materials. At a later stage, recommendations from this group may be submitted to a conference of library directors and other chief administrators, but the Zurich meeting has been designed to grapple with the practical issues of international cooperation.

MODERN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE: NEW SCHOLARLY ADVISORY COMMITTEE

A Scholarly Advisory Committee on Modern Language and Literature has been appointed by the Commission to help develop a national strategic plan for the preservation of the scholarly record in this field. The nine-member committee will advise on how to select books and journals, along with other works, which must have the highest priority for preservation. Persons who have agreed to serve are acquainted with American, 18th century, Renaissance, medieval, and Victorian literature, as well as German, French, and Afro-American work. The first meeting of the group will be scheduled for early this year. The committee joins three other scholarly advisory committees in the disciplines of art history, philosophy, and history.

Members are: Emory Elliott, President's Chair of English, University of California, Riverside; John Fisher, Department of English, University of Tennessee, Knoxville; H.L. Gates, Jr., W.E.B. Dubois Professor of English, Cornell University; Elaine Marks, Department of French, University of Wisconsin-Madison; J. Hillis Miller (Chair), Department of English and Comparative Literature, University of California, Irvine; W.J.T. Mitchell, Department of English, University of Chicago; Rainer Nägele, Department of German, The Johns Hopkins University; Annabel Patterson, Department of English, Duke University; and Catharine R. Stimpson, Dean of the Graduate School-New Brunswick and Vice Provost for Graduate Education, Rutgers University.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

Nationwide Microfilming Program Featured in AIIM Magazine

Inform, the magazine of the Association for Information and Image Management (AIIM), includes a feature on the NEH-funded microfilming program in its November December issue (Vol. 3, Nos. 11 & 12), along with a sidebar article on the use of a step and repeat camera for preservation microfilming based on a report to the Commission from the Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service. For more information, contact: AIIM, 1100 Wayne Avenue, Suite 1100, Silver Spring, MD 20910.

Technical Issues on Decision Making for Mass Deacidification to be Addressed in Upcoming Report

The Commission has contracted with Peter Sparks, former Preservation Officer at the Library of Congress, to prepare a Commission report on the major technical elements involved in a library's decision to select a mass deacidification process for preservation. Although the report is expected to address the philosophy and reasoning behind the decision-making process, it will focus on the technical considerations and evaluation factors involved in selecting a vendor. An exact publication date has not been set.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483- 6410.

Illustration by Bill Megenhardt

Saint Alcuin: Forerunner of Preservation Movement?

Famed as an educator and a conserver and spreader of learning, Alcuin may be the saint that preservationists have been looking for to take a place along with library supporters Saints Jerome, Laurence, and Wiborada. Saint Alcuin stands out as one of the first school administrators in history to establish programs to preserve scholarly knowledge.

Born about 730 near York, England, Alcuin was educated at the cathedral school there and later became its head. An ordained deacon, he became known as a conserver and spreader of learning who attracted numerous students. As such, he was especially careful in the management of the library. Following a meeting in 781 with the Emperor Charlemagne in Pavia (Italy), Alcuin was persuaded to take up residence at the court of Charlemagne as the educational and ecclesiastical adviser. As the royal tutor, he established the royal school and library.

Alcuin was chiefly responsible for the preservation of the classical heritage of western civilization. . . . manuscripts of both pagan and Christian writings of antiquity were collated and copied.

In his direction of Charlemagne's Palace School at Achene, Alcuin was chiefly responsible for the preservation of the classical heritage of western civilization. He is considered the inspirer of the "Carolingian Renaissance." Schools were revived in cathedrals and monasteries, and manuscripts of both pagan and Christian writings of antiquity were collated and copied. It is said that Alcuin did more than anyone else to make the Frankish court a center of culture and to encourage Charlemagne's educational enterprises throughout the realm.

Additional College and University Sponsors

In addition to the 30 colleges and universities listed in the January 1990 newsletter, the following institutions have pledged financial support over the next three years to the Commission, as of January 1, 1990:

University of Chicago
New York State Library
Syracuse University

The support of the academic community is a vital component of the Commission's capacity to continue and expand its activities to facilitate national and international plans for the preservation of our scholarly resources and written heritage. In addition to academic sponsors, the Council on Library Resources and the William and Flora Hewlett Foundation have renewed their initial grants for general support of the Commission for another two years.

Second Regional Commission Meeting Scheduled for New York

The Commission scheduled its January 1990 quarterly meeting to be held at the New York Public Library so that sponsoring institutions in the Northeast-Middle Atlantic Region could meet with Commission members during the afternoon session. The first of this series of regional meetings was held in Chicago in November 1989.

Playing at Preservation and Access:

The Bodleian Game

At last dedicated librarians—especially those with a keen interest in the preservation of and access to materials—have available *The Bodleian Game*. Issued by the Bodleian Library, and available in the United States from the Pierpont Morgan Library (29 East 36th Street, New York, NY 10016) for $45.90 (including shipping and handling; item BLG-16; checks only), this is a complex board game for up to six "readers." The object is to find your way around the board and through the various parts of the Bodleian Library in a quest to compile a bibliography of fourteen books from one of six different research topics (e.g., Women and Society). The trick lies in understanding the arcane catalogues of the Bodleian Library and then tracking down the shelfmarks for the relevant books. Each of those books is represented by a 2" X 3 ½" card containing an illustration and appropriate information including, sometimes, a reference to another book on the subject. But as the rules of play indicate: *"It should be noted that some of the books you call will provide you with no references, or references you already have. Such is the nature of research!"*

The books may be listed in the pre-1920 catalogue, the interim catalogue, the post-1920 catalogue of the Bodleian itself, or the catalogues of one of eleven other libraries; and, of course, while the title and library location may be found in one of the three main catalogues, the shelfmark is not, so the faithful reader has to trek around the board from library to library seeking to locate and "read" the books needed to win the game before his/her fellow readers can do so. The game certainly demonstrates how complex research can be in the manual catalogues of non-automated libraries. As with many traditional board games, the reader is also subject to various penalties or rewards, represented by chance cards, that are drawn at appropriate points along the way.

The current international interest in preservation and conservation is represented in two of the chance cards. "Book out to Conservation—collect book next turn." "Caught eating and have your reader's ticket confiscated—go to Admissions [GO] to reclaim it." In addition, one of the several squares that any reader may land on along the way is marked "Fire Alarm Test;" when this square is landed upon, all players then in the Old Library must move out to an adjacent square.

Well made, and accompanied by a simple fact sheet on The Bodleian Library, this is far more complicated than most American board games but still great fun. It's a game not to be missed by the true devotees of preservation and access. Buy one now to practice for the challenge series that the Commission on Preservation and Access will be sponsoring, perhaps at a future ALA Conference.

[Review contributed by Norman D. Stevens, Library Director, University of Connecticut]

Time, Location Established for Environmental Conditions Course

A course to be offered by the Association of Physical Plant Administrators (APPA) in cooperation with the Commission has been scheduled for a two-day period sometime between February 15 and March 15, 1991, in the Washington, DC, area. As formulated in a December 1989 planning meeting hosted by the Commission, the goal of the course will be to foster more productive working relationships between librarians/archivists and plant administrators so as to improve environmental conditions of library and archives materials.

Participants will include librarians and archivists as well as plant administrators. Representative teams from single institutions will be encouraged to attend. Registration costs will be the same for all participants from APPA-member institutions. The tentative attendance limit is 150. As now envisioned, the course will be hosted by a two-person team consisting of a librarian or archivist and a physical plant administrator. Tours to sites of preservation work, such as the Smithsonian Institution, National Archives, and Library of Congress, may be planned as course supplements.

Further information is available from: Wayne Leroy, Associate Vice President, Association of Physical Plant Administrators of Universities and Colleges, 1446 Duke Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-3492.

Planning Task Force members from the Commission are: Patti McClung, RLG; Joel Clemmer, Macalester College; and Don Kelsey, University of Minnesota.

...Until the Course Comes Along: Tips for Low-Cost Environmental Control

Reprinted with permission from the Northeast Document Conservation Center, and based on guidelines being developed by William Lull, of Garrison/Lull, Allentown, NJ, for the New York State Library Division of Library Development.

*1. **Keep winter heat low.** If overheating occurs, don't allow windows to be opened—demand that the heat be turned down. Open windows and leaky doors allow outside air in, and allow desirable winter humidity to escape. Keep a few sweaters and blankets for staff or visitors who feel cold with the temperature around 65 degrees Fahrenheit, and explain why you're keeping things cool.*

*2. **Seal windows.** Use plastic sheets and tape to seal windows on the inside in winter. In storage areas, line windows with aluminum foil, and seal them more completely with gypsum wallboard and plastic. The foil will reflect sun away to reduce heat in summer, and will also keep light out of storage areas.*

*3. **Keep outside doors and windows closed; weatherstrip.** Weatherstrip doors, and make sure doors and windows stay closed to prevent exchange of unconditioned outside air. Test seals: if a strip of tissue paper waves in the breeze when it's held up to a crack, the seal isn't tight.*

*4. **Block radiant heat from radiators.** If you can't move collections well away from radiators in storage or exhibit spaces, cover wallboard with reflective foil and position this barrier between the radiators and collections to protect objects from "line-of-sight" heat transmission.*

*5. **Keep equipment at one level 24 hours a day.** Don't change settings on climate equipment for nights or weekends, since damaging humidity fluctuations usually result. This includes both heat and window air conditioners. Be sure humidifiers or dehumidifiers are on, and that they're always adequately filled (or emptied) to maintain steady conditions. Choose a lower constant humidifier setting to prevent it from running out of water, or raise the constant RH setting on your dehumidifier so it will not overflow or shut off from too much water. While improving the stability of conditions 24 hours a day usually requires little or no capital investment, using the equipment you have continuously almost always increases annual energy costs. **Keep in mind that some of the most acute short-term damage to collections is caused by discontinuous operation of climate-control equipment.***

*6. **Separate collections that need special conditions; use available spaces the best way.** Look at the available storage areas. Can you modify your use of space to suit the collections better? Are some spaces more stable, or more easily improved than others? Do some materials in your collections (like parchment or vellum) need different conditions from others? Can these be segregated into groups with similar needs? This may reduce the need for new or improved conservation environments.*

Permanent Paper Support Continues to Grow

—International Publishers Association

The International Publishers Association adopted a resolution in October calling for its members and affiliates to use acid-free papers whenever possible for uncoated stock, and to use alkaline pH for coated stock until standards are available. In addition, the association calls for a note in all such publications that acid-free paper is being used.

—Wilson Library Bulletin

Joining several other journals, the *Wilson Library Bulletin* will begin noting within its review columns when books are published on alkaline paper, by placing the infinity symbol at the end of the bibliographical information. The new practice began in the January 1990 issue, where Editor Mary Jo Godwin also discussed the procedures used by the *Bulletin* in the "This Month at WLB" section.

December Meeting Results:

College Libraries Committee Investigates Expanded Communications Role; Training for Part-Time Preservation Personnel

Communication and training needs were discussed by members of the College Libraries Committee during its third meeting, held December 6, 1989, at Commission headquarters. Michael Haeuser, Head Librarian, Gustavus Adolphus College, was welcomed as a new member, replacing David A. Kearley, Librarian, University of the South.

A sample column for possible publication in *College and Research Libraries News* met with unanimous support from the committee. If it is accepted, the column will be used to further spread knowledge about preservation activities to college and university library personnel beyond the immediate contacts of this committee. The committee continues to receive results from a survey of the Oberlin Group and others describing their endangered materials that may be candidates for preservation microfilming. A committee subgroup has encouraged college libraries to develop funding strategies for preserving these materials. When the new NEH guidelines are published, Will Bridegam, chair of the subgroup, will alert survey respondents to their availability.

A discussion on education and training for the part-time preservation librarian occupied the major portion of the meeting. Lisa Fox, Program Coordinator for SOLINET, led an extensive discussion on the assumptions, topics, schedule, and design for a possible new course for part-time preservation librarians. There was a consensus that any course that is developed be provided on an equitable basis, and that some scholarship assistance be provided to help achieve this goal. In addition, colleges and universities intending to send staff members would be expected to state their commitment to preservation. Recommendations regarding this course will be made by the committee to the Commission in advance of the next meeting, which was set for Monday, April 23.

Committee Members: Willis E. Bridegam, Librarian, Amherst College; Barbara J. Brown, University Librarian, Washington & Lee University; Joel Clemmer, Library Director, Macalester College; David Cohen, Director of Libraries, College of Charleston; Caroline M. Coughlin, Library Director, Drew University; Michael Haeuser, Head Librarian, Gustavus Adolphus College; Jacquelyn M. Morris, College Librarian, Occidental College; and Kathleen M. Spencer (chair), Library Director, Franklin & Marshall College.

American Philosophical Association Hosts Brittle Books Exhibit

The Commission premiered its new "giant brittle book" exhibit at a meeting of the Eastern Division of the American Philosophical Association in late December. The exhibit featured a one-of-a-kind, two- by three-foot brittle book bound in leather, created by Kent State University Audio Visual Services, University Libraries and Media Services. Examples of normal-sized brittle books from the New York Public Library were on display, along with testing pens from Abbey Publications for determining the level of acidity of the paper. Philosophers were particularly interested in how they could influence decisions at the campus and national levels to preserve materials of value to their research and teaching programs. The giant book travels next to the College Art Association conference February 15-17, 1990, in New York City.

A limited number of the "Going, Going, Gone" brochures developed by the Association for Library Collections & Technical Services, American Library Association, are available on a complimentary basis from the Commission, which helped sponsor a second printing. The six-panel brochure succinctly explains the problem of brittle books and then suggests some positive actions on the part of scholars, historians, researchers, writers, and students interested in helping save the books. The Commission will provide up to five free copies on a one-time basis, upon written request. Single and multiple copies are available from: ALA Graphics, American Library Association, 50 East Huron St., Chicago, IL. 60611. (Single copies 50 cents with SASE; request catalog for multiple copies.)

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 21 NEWSLETTER MARCH 1990

REGIONAL SERVICES FOR UNIVERSITY PRESERVATION TO BE EXPLORED UNDER COMMISSION CONTRACT

The Commission has contracted with the University of Pennsylvania and the Conservation Center for Art and Historic Artifacts (CCAHA) to generate guidelines and collect data applicable to other institutions as part of a larger project to develop a university preservation program that optimizes a library's capacity to use fluctuating resources and to concentrate costs on work products rather than overhead expense. The larger effort, funded by the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation and the university, will test and operate a management plan for a preservation program using regional preservation center support facilities and staff, thus reducing the need for a large institutional commitment to internal staff, equipment, and space.

The project will take a broad approach that considers a full range of treatment options, the implications and roles of regional and national programs, and technological trade-offs. The Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service (MAPS) will be involved in the project, as well as several other preservation service groups.

The Commission contract includes production of a final report based on the project's findings, which will be issued upon its completion in mid-1991.

REPORTS IN PROGRESS TO ADDRESS PRESERVATION RESEARCH NEEDS

As the result of an October 1989 meeting with seven preservation librarians and archivists concerning a cooperative preservation research agenda, the Commission has initiated work on a set of reports to help bridge the gap between the preservation and scientific research communities. During discussions among preservation specialists, it became apparent that much relevant research has been or is being conducted, but there is only spotty communication among major participants: librarians, archivists, and scientists. Preservation specialists also tend to frame their inquiries in terms of specific applications, consequently overlooking the relevant generic research reported in the scientific literature.

As a first step toward developing a coordinated background for assessing research needs, the Commission — with the cooperation of conservationists, scientists, and researchers — is preparing a compilation of selected bibliographic sources and brief descriptions of the current research and focus of several research laboratories.

The Commission also has contracted with Donald K. Sebera, a conservation scientist, to prepare a report on the isoperm method, which can be used to predict the relative permanence of paper-based library and archival collections stored at various temperature and relative humidity levels. Sebera's model allows managers to describe the effect that modifying the environment has on the anticipated longevity of collections.

The reports will be widely distributed when they are issued.

COMMUNICATIONS ASSISTANT JOINS COMMISSION STAFF

In view of expanded activities, the Commission has hired a new assistant to work on this newsletter and other communications projects. Patricia (Trish) Cece, a journalism graduate from the University of Maryland, came to the Commission after two years of public relations experience with the American Speech-Language-Hearing Association and Davis Memorial Goodwill Industries. She can be contacted for assistance with newsletter subscriptions, mailing list corrections, and distribution of Commission materials.

ART HISTORY COMMITTEE GAINS NEW MEMBER

Nancy S. Allen, Librarian at the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston, has accepted an invitation to join the Scholarly Advisory Committee on Art History. This group of scholars and librarians is one of several convened by the Commission to consider preservation selection criteria in light of the needs of the various academic disciplines.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

SPECIAL REPORT
BRITTLE BOOKS: LEGISLATIVE HISTORY, FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The following report by Patricia Battin was prepared for the Commission's National Advisory Council on Preservation to clarify the intent of the Brittle Book program legislation and to provide a useful background for developing additional funding support for related preservation needs.

The Report of the Committee on Preservation and Access, *Brittle Books*, published in 1986, stated that "one of the most persistent and complicated elements of the preservation problem concerns 'brittle books,' the shorthand term for past publications produced on acid paper and now so deteriorated that they must be reproduced in some form or eventually they will be lost." The Committee estimated, on the basis of a number of sampling studies, that approximately one-fourth of the volumes in our old, general research libraries are brittle and proposed a strategy for preserving a portion of these materials in such a way as to make them accessible to the nation. The enhanced access possible from the existence of a reformatted master copy was proposed as justification for federal support of considerable magnitude.

The Committee made the following general observations:

- Responsibility for preservation is inseparable from the work of building and maintaining research collections. Collaboration among libraries in assuring the availability of unmatched research resources, nationally, implies collaboration in their preservation as well.
- While preservation, per se, is a valid goal, it is the prospect of providing wider and more equitable access to a growing collection of preserved material that fully justifies the cost and effort.
- Although items in all categories of recorded information deteriorate with time, realistic priorities must be established. The brittle books problem, large though it is, is one that can be defined and addressed with reasonable precision.
- The preservation of archival materials is a coordinate matter that must be attended to. Unlike books published in editions of many copies, archival material is by definition unique, so the prospect for sharing responsibility among archives for preservation of essentially discrete collections is less promising than it is for libraries.

Based on these fundamental principles, the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation developed a program of which a major component is the implementation of a national initiative to reformat 3,000,000 volumes over a twenty-year period. Persuaded by testimony and supporting materials supplied by the Association of Research Libraries, the National Humanities Alliance, and the Commission on Preservation and Access, the Congress approved the NEH program in concept and funded the first year in 1988. The funding for the second year was recently approved.

As explicitly stated in *Brittle Books*, the strategy to rescue books crumbled beyond repair is but one component of a comprehensive preservation program that must include local maintenance and care of collections damaged for reasons other than brittle paper. These causes include heavy use, mishandling, water damage, and the like. In many instances, reformatting is not necessarily the remedy of choice, since the paper is not yet brittle.

As the new federal funding has stimulated increased preservation activity in research libraries across the nation, competing priorities in this complex undertaking have come to the fore. It is imperative that these concerns be carefully considered as additional components within the larger context in order to establish an orderly set of activities. Failure to do so could result in the diversion of funds for one specific initiative into a spectrum of needs, thus diluting the initial objective. Since there are insufficient funds in prospect in the NEH plan to preserve all the brittle books, diverting funds from the goal for which the rationale and funding were approved will reduce further our capacity to meet the program objectives.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant. Patricia Cece, Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483- 6410.

The rationale for federal support of a massive microfilm project for acidic materials was based on the enhanced access afforded by a human-readable format capable of quick and inexpensive reproduction; in essence, a master copy format capable of cost-effective storage and broad dissemination. Although the funds for reformatting would flow in large part to the older research libraries holding the deteriorated collections, the benefits would be shared by the entire community. Given the capability of emerging technologies, microfilm, in the judgment of the Commission's Technology Assessment Advisory Committee, represents the best and most cost-effective buffer technology with the flexibility of efficient conversion to digitized format when costs, standards, and retrieval software systems are stabilized and readily available.

The issue of repair as an alternative to microfilm was not considered as a federal responsibility in the initial legislation. The care and maintenance of a library collection has been traditionally viewed as a local responsibility, since damage to books can occur through heavy use, mishandling, flood, fire, and the like. Since repair of a damaged but not necessarily brittle volume does not provide expanded access and was not included in the initial program cost projections, a decision to include repair as a viable alternative supported by federal funds requires a definition of the "national interest" and a rationale for federal support of the repair of individual volumes in research libraries.

Mid-Sized Research Libraries Committee Issues Report on Programs of Interest; Ends Meetings as Separate Entity

The Mid-Sized Research Libraries Committee, which was charged in August 1988 with exploring a specific agenda for action within the context of the national preservation program, has decided that it would be more profitable to work with already-established groups than to operate as a separate entity. During their deliberations, committee members identified a number of issues of particular concern to their institutions. These included education and training, centralized full-service filming agencies, relationships with the National Endowment for the Humanities, special needs of archives and special collections, preservation of electronic formats and demonstration projects of new technologies, improvements in binding quality, institutionalization of preservation, and identification of organizations and consortia that could undertake coordinating roles.

Two major conclusions of the committee:

- Mid-sized research libraries share the same concerns, interests, and commitments with libraries of all sizes; and
- Members were impressed with the high level of activity of new and emerging programs on the national, regional, and local scenes.

On behalf of the Commission, we express our appreciation to the persons who served on this group: Paula Kaufman (chair), University of Tennessee; Sheila Creth, University of Iowa; Jan Merrill-Oldham, University of Connecticut; Marilyn Sharrow, University of California-Davis; Dale Canelas, University of Florida; Joan Gotwals, Emory University; Thomas Michalak, Carnegie-Mellon University; David Stam, Syracuse University; and C. Lee Jones, Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service.

Two Microfilm Research Projects Completed by MAPS

Two contract reports on research and demonstration projects to provide data and technical information on full-scale preservation microfilm production have been submitted to the Commission by the Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service (MAPS). A report on a project to develop specifications for a composing reducing camera (CRC) concludes that — at this time — costs are too high to be supportable. This specifications are for a special CRC capable of digitizing 35mm films, producing film in different formats (roll and fiche) copying film to paper, and creating CD-ROM products. Despite the current insupportable costs, the CRC concept remains viable, according to MAPS president, C. Lee Jones, with at least one company investigating the possibility of producing a unit at less cost.

A second R&D project involved a prototype "densities on the fly" unit. This unit collects density data as film exits a film processor, taking many readings from each frame to insure a high degree of accuracy. Production advantages are significant, both for cost reduction and improved film quality. At this project's conclusion, the unit is in a preliminary stage of operation, but more fine-tuning will be necessary before it is used in full-time production. Jones sees this prototype as a useful tool for micrographic film evaluation and duplication, anticipating that as many as 50 units might well be sold when it is refined.

Sponsoring Institutions Attend New York Regional Meeting

Representatives of 15 sponsoring institutions from the Northeast-Middle Atlantic Region were invited to a discussion with the Commission January 25, at a regional meeting at the New York Public Library. Issues covered during the afternoon session included new technologies, international activities, educational programs, and selection methodologies. Colleges and universities invited to attend were: Amherst College, Brown University, Bryn Mawr College, Cornell University, Franklin and Marshall College, Hamilton College, Haverford College, Johns Hopkins University, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, New York State Library, Mount Holyoke College, Princeton University, Smith College, Syracuse University, Vassar College, Wellesley College, and Williams College. This is the second time that the Commission has arranged to hold its quarterly meetings in regional locations; last fall's meeting was held in Chicago.

Micropublisher Survey Pretest Nears Completion

[Last summer, the Commission contracted with the Special Committee on the Preservation Needs of Law Libraries of the American Association of Law Libraries (AALL) to conduct a pretest of a survey of micropublishers concerning their filming standards. Under the contract's terms, two staff members from the Harvard Law Library Preservation Department were to conduct site visits to seven micropublishers to test a comprehensive survey covering microform production and quality control, storage of first-generation master negative film, storage containers and enclosures, and inspection of stored first-generation negatives. The following is a progress report on the project by Willis C. Meredith, Preservation Librarian, Harvard Law School Library.]

The project contracted by the Commission on Preservation and Access to pretest a form for surveying micropublishers and preservation microfilmers is well underway. Seven microform publishers representing eleven companies and subsidiaries have agreed to participate in the pretest which is being conducted in two phases. The first phase, to send the draft form to four publishers, compile their responses, and make necessary revisions has been completed. Responses from this initial pretest indicate that most of the form is readily understandable. However, there were a number of instances where questions were not clear, did not cover all possible variations, or were simply inappropriate. The structure of the form has also been revised to avoid difficulties encountered by those completing it.

The second phase of the pretest is now underway. All of the publishers in the pretest group will receive the revised form, comment on it, and discuss the form with a member of the pretest team during a site visit. The form includes questions on standards for the production and storage of microform master negatives and the existence of records for access.

The entire project, including site visits, will be completed by spring 1990, and the form ready for use in a world wide survey. At the end of the pretest, a report will be prepared on the process. The individual responses from the various companies gathered during the pretest itself will be kept confidential although initial findings indicate that participants would not be adverse to publication of the results.

Another Commission Sponsor

Joining the 33 sponsors of the Commission listed in the January and February 1990 newsletters is **New York Public Library**. The support of the academic and research library community is a vital component of the Commission's capacity to continue and expand its activities to facilitate national and international plans for the preservation of our scholarly resources and written heritage.

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 22 NEWSLETTER APRIL 1990

DIRECTORY OF INFORMATION ON SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH RELATED TO BOOKS, PAPER

As preservation administrators generate new approaches to saving the scholarly resources in the nation's academic and cultural institutions, they have called for the development of a directed, shared scientific research agenda. For example, at a Fall 1989 meeting sponsored by the Commission, preservation specialists working in library and archives environments identified common needs for verified documentation concerning the longevity and fragility of paper, adhesives, and other materials that are used in the production of books and other paper-based collections. To help develop a central resource for such information, the Commission contacted some of the major organizations and laboratories working in those specific areas.

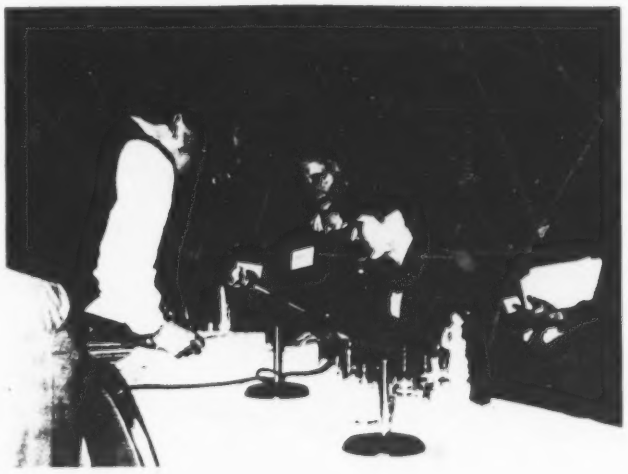
Based on information supplied by these organizations, *The Directory of Information Sources on Scientific Research Related to The Preservation of Books, Paper, and Adhesives* was compiled to be of use to preservation administrators in individual institutions, as well as to the preservation community as a whole. The selected directory includes the following sections: Introduction; Laboratories and Organizations; Indexes, Abstracts, and Databases; Publications and Newsletters; and a concluding section which has not previously been published, "Preservation Research at the Library of Congress—Recent Progress and Future Trends," by Chandru J. Shahani.

Complimentary copies of the 28-page publication have been sent to the several hundred preservationists, librarians, and archivists currently on the Commission's mailing lists. Additional copies are available at no cost while supplies last, and reproduction is encouraged.

Preservation, especially preservation of state archival records or the information they contain, should be one of our highest continuing nationwide priorities."

—NAGARA Government Records Issues Series, No. 2, State Government Records Programs: A Proposal National Agenda, November 1989.

COLLEGE ART ASSOCIATION MEMBERS ADDRESS BRITTLE BOOK AGENDA AT ANNUAL CONFERENCE



The College Art Association (CAA) helped support the Commission's "Giant Brittle Book" exhibit at its 1990 Annual Conference in New York City February 14-17 and also sponsored a session entitled: *Saving Brittle Books and Journals — An Update on the Preservation of and Access to Scholarly Resources in the History of Art.* Dr. Larry Silver from Northwestern University, chair of the Commission's Scholarly Advisory Committee on Art History, spoke on "The Problem That Will Not Go Away" to about 30 CAA members during the joint session, which was organized by CAA's Board and the Commission's Advisory Committee. The text of his talk, included in the insert to this newsletter, presents an art historian's unique perspective on preservation and access issues.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

News From The Hill

House Hearing Moves Forward National Policy on Permanent Paper

[The following is reprinted with permission from the February 27 *ALA Washington Newsletter.*]

The House Government Information, Justice, and Agriculture Subcommittee held a hearing February 21 on H.J. Res. 226, to establish a national policy on permanent paper. Witnesses included the bill's principal sponsor, Rep. Pat Williams (D-MT), Librarian of Congress James Billington, U.S. Archivist Don Wilson, and Lawrence Hughes, Chairman of the Association of American Publishers. All were supportive of the legislation, which now has 73 cosponsors. Chairman Bob Wise (D-WI) said the measure "is designed to heighten awareness of the problem and to generate reports from some of the federal agencies that are most affected." His questions to witnesses indicated a desire to limit the number of reports, a suggestion to which Rep. Williams agreed. Rep. Williams characterized H.J. Res. 226 as unique: "Many organizations support it; none oppose it. It costs nothing; and, in fact, will eventually save millions not only for the Federal Government, but also for State and local governments, colleges and universities, libraries and archives. A book published on permanent paper today does not have to be deacidified or microfilmed tomorrow."

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution is encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant, Patricia Cece, Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483- 6410.

OMB Makes Case for Preservation; NEH'S Cheney Praises Filming Effort

[The following two excerpts are reprinted with permission from the February 13, 1990 National Humanities Alliance Memorandum by John Hammer]

From news on the President's FY-1991 Budget Proposals:

. . . The lengthy essay by OMB Director Richard Darman that precedes the specific recommendations in *The Budget for Fiscal 1991* includes a four-page section (pp 165-68) entitled 'Preserving America's Heritage' that opens with the following paragraph:

> One might ask what "preserving America's cultural heritage" may have to do with investing in America's future. To many the connection is not obvious. But the connection is important nonetheless. To the extent that investing in the future tends to emphasize technological advances — as it should — there is a need to assure a counterbalancing attention to aesthetics values. To the extent that it implies a race through time, there is a need for a balancing appreciation of history. And to the extent that America's traditional cultural values have helped make America uniquely strong, it is important that these values be preserved — in order that they may be built upon as America continues to advance.

. . . A two paragraph section on NEH [National Endowment for the Humanities] specifically cites preservation activities mentioning both the brittle books filming initiative and the national heritage program to improve conservation in cultural collections and train conservators. . . .

From news of the February Meeting of the National Council on the Humanities:

. . . With reference to the Endowment's preservation activities, Mrs. [Lynne] Cheney said that brittle books and other cultural materials at risk is a world wide problem to which the U.S. response is extraordinary — the NEH supported preservation filming project is "the envy of the world."

The Problem That Will Not Go Away

By Dr. Larry Silver, Professor
Art History Department
Northwestern University

Presented February 16, 1990
Annual Conference of the College Art Association
New York City

It is difficult to convey the horror that one feels to pick up an important periodical from around 1890 or so, opening the large, well-bound, weighty tome to an important article about an artist then active or an archive transcribed then for the first and only time—only to have the page that one is examining so intently literally crumble into tiny, dusty fragments in one's hands. Knowing that you are the last person in that library ever to be able to consult that article. Knowing that in libraries in both Europe and America other readers are having the same frightening experience. Knowing that in a short time, all trace of that resource will be gone forever—unless something can be done to preserve it.

The problem is called "Brittle Books." Because so much of the publishing during the 19th and earlier 20th century was done on inexpensive, wood-pulp paper, it is filled with acid that literally causes it to self-destruct, like the tapes on the old television show, Mission Impossible. We have all seen the same phenomenon with old newspaper clippings, yellowing and tearing despite their undisturbed place in our albums. And we have seen the deterioration of artworks with such paper, from the drawings on cardboard of Toulouse-Lautrec to the newsprint collages of Braque and Picasso. Well, the same peril exists for the other cultural resources of the past couple of centuries on acid paper. Even where many libraries have stored their heritage of books with care, the very paper of those books remains the culprit.

Statistics tell a poor story, but they do suggest the breadth of the problem. About one fourth of the volumes in most libraries can already be described as brittle, that is in critical condition as patients, and three-quarters or more of the books in all libraries are on acid-based paper, eventually to become brittle with time. We are talking here about most of the books and journals that we all use—and we are talking about them as "endangered species"!

Fortunately, some awareness of this problem developed among leading librarians before we noticed it. A national task force, called the Committee on Preservation and Access, was formed. The Commission has already had some success as an advocacy organization. Among its recent achievements is a demand to publishers to print no more books on acid-based paper. Those of you who are authors of books or journal articles should do your best to insist that your immortal words are printed on acid-free paper; otherwise their shelf-life will be dated like the produce in supermarkets.

The Commission on Preservation and Access has also taken on the thankless and weighty task of long-range planning to deal concretely with the problem of Brittle Books. Based in Washington, the Commission has begun soliciting input from the users of books—including CAA members. A small Art History Advisory Committee has been formed, and it is matched by user groups from related humanities fields, such as History, Modern Languages, and Philosophy. Now, the art historians have tried to make the point that we have to worry about the entire visual patrimony from the past two centuries. Not just the scholarly monographs, catalogues, and journals, but also the innumerable publications with graphic art works, especially the classic publications, such as Charivari, The Yellow Book, or Simplicissimus. We try to serve as reminders that for architects or historians of the city, possibly every page of newsprint is a valuable document. However, not everything can be saved. And out of what can be saved, priorities must be set. It is like playing God, or at least Solomon.

8i

But a job has to be done, and you owe it to yourself and to those who will follow you with similar interests to stand up and let your interests be heard.

Are there any principles that can be followed in making these selections of priority preservation projects? Maybe. The Advisory Committee has set three criteria as paramount in the choice of a work to be preserved: first, its brittleness or danger of immediate loss; second its rarity, in terms of information contained nowhere else; third, its general "importance," however we want to define that term.

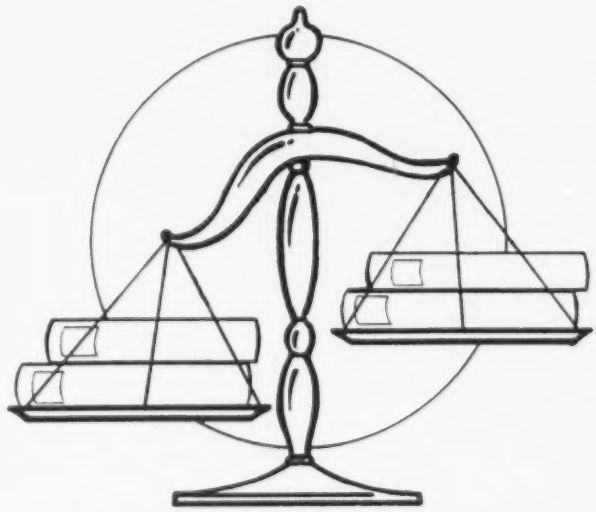
One issue that arises immediately is the question of what preservation means, and the Advisory Committee is particularly concerned about the poor quality of current microfilm technology for preserving visual information from even simple black-and-white images. The Commission has been sensitive to that question and is underwriting serious investigation into both photographic technology and digital storage of information in computerized form. For the photographic imagery, they are investigating both the fidelity of half-tone reproduction as well as the age and storage potential of film. There are distinctions that can be made here as well. Half-tone reproductions are rare before 1880, and the earliest reproductions—woodcuts or lithographs—do copy fairly well onto film; how they would scan into a computer is not yet clear but should be evident soon. Of course, another possibility always exists: conservation, by means of de-acidification or plastic wraps around brittle pages. But it is labor intensive and very expensive, and here the items would have to be picked most carefully. The key to future use will have to be preservation for the most part, saving the information and the imagery both through reproduction—on film or on computer disk.

One suggestion that has been raised in the interest of efficiency is to use central collections as starting points for reproducing important holdings in essential early fields of scholarship, such as archaeology. Another suggestion is that reproducing basic periodicals will serve the largest community, beyond the narrower interests of particular fields. Grants are already available for some projects; usually they are proposed by single libraries. And of course, some essential works have already been reproduced in the form of reprints during the 1960s and 70s—these can be easily crossed off the list, though we need to know what that list should be. And you are the ones who stand most to benefit—and to lose—according to how you respond to this crisis.

Think about it: what are the essential books, periodicals, original titles that you most consult? What foundational materials in your field of interest would it be most critical to lose? In America, even in Europe, what are the libraries that you would go to first to answer the questions you cannot answer at home? What works would you single out for conservation of the object, as opposed to preservation of the contents on film or on disk? The Advisory Committee is trying to plan a broad strategy for preservation, but it needs your help on both the broad scale and on the specifics of procedures.

Here is where we are right now. Microfilming is still the most practical and durable storage material, especially when it comes to the issue of flexibility of use (such as enlargement, reproduction, and distribution) as far as current technology is concerned. Microfilm can be used as film, used as printout, even used as the source for later storage on computer or unknown alternate technology.

Some of the problems with microfilm reproduction of half tones will be special to art history, and they are receiving attention. A new grant-sponsored Task Force will explore the problems of preservation of drawings, photographs, maps and other visual imagery in terms of the specific needs of art history types and other students of the visual. One possible solution is the use when necessary of a flexible Cibachrome technology used in Europe for color reproduction on microfilm, with extremely high resolution and subtlety of tones. Digitizing computer imagery is also currently being explored; however, despite the explosion of technology in this field, storage of visual data remains extremely inefficient, even for a single image.



There is good reason to hope for a central collection of preserved material, a new mega-library with wide accessibility. But the key is selection—and soon. If scholars and users of art historical material do not respond, then these difficult decisions will be made by others with different needs and different criteria. Future generations depend upon us today. Those of us connected on your behalf with the Commission on Preservation and Access eagerly solicit your questions and your suggestions.

New Preservation Concern: Video Recordings

by Alan Calmes, Preservation Officer, National Archives and Records Administration

[During the November 9, 1989 regional meeting of the Commission with sponsors and members of the Committee on Institutional Cooperation, participants raised concerns about the preservation of information on video tape. To address these concerns, the Commission asked Alan Calmes, a member of its Advisory Council, to prepare the following article.]

In every instance where motion picture film used to be the information carrier, video tape recordings are found now. The change has been sudden and the preservation consequences not yet appreciated. The survival of contemporary moving images will depend upon a systematic reaction to this new preservation concern.

The advantages of video tape recordings have forced producers to abandon the use of motion picture film for the instant playback capability, easy editing, and low-cost of video production. Users like other advantages: fast forward, stop, reverse, quick and easy to play, no need for screen and projector, compact, easy to mail, familiar TV format. However, there are long-term disadvantages that must be recognized. Video tape is not a long-lasting medium; each time it is played it loses some of the picture signal. Another major problem with the preservation of video recordings is not so much the life-expectancy of the tape but the obsolescence of the machinery necessary to read the tape. Once a format has been abandoned, machinery will rapidly become scarce and even spare parts will become difficult to find after a few years.

A particular video tape format requires a particular machine for playing. Since 1956 over 30 different formats have been used, each requiring a special machine. Most of these have been professional, educational, and industrial formats. There are only 3 consumer formats: Beta (tm), VHS (tm), and 8 mm. The manufacturer will not stockpile spare parts for old machines; those out in service have a meantime to failure of only about 2000 hours of playing time. Beta (tm) spare parts, for example, are already scarce.

Standards will not prevent the proliferation of incompatible formats. The many formats created during the past 30 years were produced according to standards. The new digital formats, however, may provide for re-copying of images without degradation of image quality, since the information will always be in some kind of digital code rather than in an analog signal as has been the case until today. Each time an analog recording is copied there is an increase in ratio of noise to signal.

In the near future, preservation of digital video pictures will become an activity closely associated with the more complex world of computer data preservation, the use of computer storage devices, and constantly changing software. New tape formulations with unknown aging characteristics, such as metal particle tape, are likely to replace the more familiar magnetic tape, and new formats for high definition television will further complicate matters.

As it is known today, magnetic video tape for analog video recordings consists of a base of polyethylene terephthalate, commonly called "polyester," and a recording layer of polyester polyurethane, referred to here to avoid confusion as "polyurethane." Some tapes are also back-coated. Polyester is dimensionally stable, which is important for consistent tracking, strong, and long-lasting. Polyurethane is durable, which is important for resisting wear by contact with the video-machine reading head. The polyurethane layer is called the "binder" for it binds in place the ferromagnetic particles which hold the signal which is the source of information to the machine for generating a picture. Lubricants also are placed in the binder to prevent friction. The back-coating, usually of polyurethane, prevents static. The chemical formulations for each layer vary from one manufacturer to the next; they are industrial secrets. It is a challenge to the professional and consumer alike to judge which tape is best.

The U.S. *Consumer Reports* have evaluated tapes for dropouts, noise, dynamic range, and bandwidth, but not for durability and longevity. There are differences in the performance of tapes and certainly there are differences in longevity. Higher quality tape may give better performance but not necessarily better life-expectancy. During the tape manufacturing process, despite industrial quality control

procedures, some tapes will be flawed. Flaws can lead to difficulties, such as drop-outs. Some off-brand tapes may be manufactured with recycled polyester; some even may be reused tapes.

Accelerated aging of tape samples have been carried out by the U.S. National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST, formerly National Bureau of Standards) for the National Archives. NIST estimates the useful lifetime of digital computer tapes to be about 20 years when maintained in ambient environmental conditions. (Currently, video tapes and computer tapes are similar magnetic tapes.)

Considering the system as a whole—machine and medium—professionally produced video magnetic tape recordings may have a life-expectancy of 15-30 years under controlled storage conditions, careful handling, infrequent playback, and maintenance of a serviceable machine. The tape should be re-tensioned before playback and re-wound evenly. The tape head and tape must be clean. The distance between the video head of the player/recorder and the tape itself is only about .02 mils. A fingerprint can leave as much as a .6 mils film on the tape, which can push the read/write head away from the tape, resulting in a loss of signal. Dust particles are huge in comparison with the reading gap and may gouge into the surface of the tape; this is called a "head crash."

Normal library environment is likely to have high and fluctuating relative humidity, which is detrimental to tape, resulting in embrittlement of the tape. If care is not taken to wind the tape evenly, to keep the reading head clean and to wipe away residues from tape surfaces, the tape will become damaged and the system as a whole will become degraded: a damaged tape will damage the machine and a damaged machine in turn will damage tapes.

With consumer video products, it is difficult to control the tape guide, speed, and tension. A professional recorder/player, on the other hand, is designed specifically to provide for control over these variables. A professional video recorder, however, costs about 100 times more than a consumer VCR.

With present technology, the only way to guarantee the long term (100+ years) preservation of video images is to copy them to black and white motion picture film and store the film in a cool, dry pollutant free environment. One can copy the video images to color film for medium-term (50+ years) preservation. In cold storage (0.0 degrees C) color images can survive long term. A future method of preserving video recordings may be to copy analog video to digital video and thereafter copy the digital tape periodically to keep up with changing technology and to avoid being left with a tape that can not be read by existing machines.

Tips on Extending the Life of Video Recordings

Use professional 1"C format to generate a preservation master.

Use commercial VCR for user reference copy. Do not use high compaction systems, because hardware precision increases with compaction, as the tape tracks are very close together. Only use brand-name tapes. Avoid extended play, thin tapes. Always use a new tape. Use a tape-certifying machine to weed out flawed tapes. Record at standard speed or fastest speed available. Rewind at slow speed before storage and before playing. Rewind in the same environment as the storage environment before storage and same environment as operating equipment before recording or playing. Tension must not be too loose nor too tight.

Monitor the condition of tapes: look for edge damage and residues on surface. Recopy when deterioration is noted and/or when the format is obsolete. Differentiate between the master copy and use/distribution copies. Produce the master copy under controlled operations and environment. Designate a repository to be responsible for the preservation of the master copy. Only use the master to make distribution copies; ideally, this should be done rarely. Rewind the master on slow speed every few years. A special re-wind machine should be used.

Most importantly, relative humidity should be kept stable and low, the lower the better, but not below 30% relative humidity (RH), and never above 55% RH. Once a relative humidity level has been chosen, say 40% RH, then it should not vary more than an average of plus/minus 5% RH during a 24 hour period. Tapes may be conditioned to 40% RH at storage temperature and sealed in foil-lined bags, in which case only the temperature need be maintained exactly. Temperature is equally important and should be stable and as low as possible, but not below freezing and never above 23 degrees C (73 degrees F). Minor fluctuations such as an average plus/minus 2.8 degrees C (5 degrees F) are permitted during a 24 hour period.

The tape and the machine should be conditioned to the same environment. The air must be clean and free of pollutant gases, especially those from oil-based paints, insecticides, perfumes, cigarettes, and chemical cleaners. There should be no dust or smoke present in the storage or operating environment. Even short term inappropriate environmental conditions can contribute to the degradation of the tape and its magnetic signal.

One must avoid subjecting tapes to shocks of rapid and extreme temperature/relative humidity changes, especially upon reading the tape on a reader. Before using tapes that have been shipped, re-equilibrate them 24-48 hours in the same environment as the video machine.

Recent Additions to Complimentary Materials Available From The Commission

The following have been added to the Commission's supply of materials available at no cost upon written request to Trish Cece, Communications Assistant. Please let us know what use you are making of these materials when you send your request.

Reprint from *The Bottom Line*, Volume 3, Number 4, "Fiscal Currents: Preserving Our Crumbling Collections - An Interview with Patricia Battin," by Betty J. Turlock. Published by Neal-Schuman Publishers, New York City. A two-page interview on the scope and costs of the brittle books agenda.

Reprint from *Research Update*, Winter 1990, "Preserving Our Intellectual Record: An Exercise in Mutability," by Tina L. Creguer. Published by University Microfilms International, Ann Arbor, MI. An eight- page overview of progress and techniques for preservation.

Especially for publishers, provided to the Commission by the National Information Standards Organization: Camera-ready copies — in various sizes — of the "infinity" symbol used to designate use of permanent paper and copies of the ANSI standard for permanence of paper for printed library materials, which provides guidance on how publishers can comply with the standard and how they can place the statement and infinity symbol in their publications.

These are not books, lumps of lifeless paper, but minds alive on the shelves. From each of them goes out its own voice...and just as the touch of a button on our set will fill the room with music, so by taking down one of these volumes and opening it, one can call into range the voice of a man far distant in time and space, and hear him speaking to us, mind to mind, heart to heart."

—By Gilbert Highet, from Advertising and Marketing News

Another Commission Sponsor

Wesleyan University has joined with 34 other academic institutions to help sponsor the Commission's activities. The support of the higher education and research library community is a vital component of the Commission's capacity to facilitate national and international initiatives for the preservation of our scholarly resources and written heritage.

ARL to Develop Descriptive Preservation Models

The Association of Research Libraries (ARL) will be developing descriptive models of preservation programs in academic libraries, under a grant award from the H.W. Wilson Foundation. The project will make available descriptive and quantitative information about preservation staffing, program components, and expenditures in ARL libraries. As designed by the ARL Committee on Preservation of Research Libraries Materials, the project is expected to allow a thorough analysis of the various preservation activities needed to confront the challenge of preserving research resources. In addition, ARL expects to develop benchmarks and statistical profiles for differing levels of preservation program development.

Working with ARL staff are Jan Merrill-Oldham, Preservation Librarian, University of Connecticut; Carolyn Clark Morrow, Preservation Librarian, Harvard University; and Mark Russo, Preservation Librarian, University of Delaware. Also participating as the project's advisory committee are three members of ARL's standing committee on preservation: Scott Bennett, Director of Libraries at Johns Hopkins University; Carole Moore, Chief Librarian at University of Toronto Libraries; and William Studer, Director of Libraries at Ohio State University. Patricia McClung, Associate Director for Programs, Research Libraries Group, is serving as a liaison. ARL plans to publish the project's results in Fall 1990.

U.C. Berkeley Site of Third Regional Meeting

The Commission will be holding its third regional meeting with sponsors and other interested institutions — this time on the West Coast. The July 9 meeting will be held at the University of California at Berkeley. Previous regional meetings have been held in Chicago and New York City.

Subscription Reminder

A primary purpose of the Commission is to establish a two-way communication link with university administrators, scholars, government officials, library directors, and key library staff members to help shape national preservation initiatives. With that goal in mind, this newsletter is produced and funded to provide a direct, regular information flow among individuals actively concerned with preservation issues. To keep our costs at a reasonable level, the circulation is controlled to reflect the above primary audiences. We are not able to provide complimentary copies to Serials Departments for processing. Directors of libraries that are members of the Association of Research Libraries and the Oberlin Group receive TWO copies of this newsletter, sent separately by non-profit bulk-mail rate. A copy can be distributed within your institution to staff members, college/university administrators, and others who are interested in national and international preservation efforts. The newsletter is not copyrighted and may be freely reproduced. To help us control our mailing costs, **please send address corrections to: Trish Cece, Communications Assistant.**

Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Number 23 **Newsletter** May 1990

Scholars Discuss Preservation Issues in Medieval Studies

On March 25 and 26 the Commission cosponsored a colloquium at the University of Notre Dame on preservation issues in medieval studies. The colloquium brought together some 15 scholars who specialize in studies of the Middle Ages for two days of intensive discussion of this many-faceted field. Medievalists from Canada as well as the United States attended, and observers from the Commission, The Research Libraries Group and the National Endowment for the Humanities also were present.

Although the primary materials of medieval studies are often on linen, parchment or similar durable materials, the vast body of medieval studies scholarship flowered in the 19th century, virtually coinciding with the era of acid paper. Accordingly, not only are great works of interpretive scholarship at risk of embrittlement, but so too are essential research tools such as indices, monumenta, manuscript catalogues and series of special editions. Much of the scholarly work produced in Europe during the last half of the 19th century was printed on highly acid paper.

Furthermore, Medieval Studies is an interdisciplinary (or multi-disciplinary) field in the sense that the primary works were produced before contemporary disciplinary boundaries had been developed. Medieval Studies, as a field, encompasses history, literature, philosophy, theology, art, medicine, science, linguistics and economics, among other disciplines. Both the primary materials and the secondary work can be classified in any one of several modern disciplinary categories and hence the materials of interest to medieval scholars can be spread widely over almost the entire library. There are also interdisciplinary publication patterns, with the result that only parts of long serial runs may be of interest to medievalists, and journal titles as such are not good indicators of scholarly relevance. This dispersion of materials across a very wide spectrum of classifications in most libraries presents certain special problems of bibliographic control as well as strategic issues in the logistics of preservation.

On the other hand, there are not very many large collections of medieval materials and the colloquium participants readily agreed that a good start on the preservation problem might be made by filming large parts of certain outstanding collections. This approach only underscores the importance of bibliographic control of the preserved materials for the purposes of subsequently filling gaps in the initial pass through the stacks.

The Medieval Institute and the College of Arts and Letters of the University of Notre Dame and The Medieval Academy of America were cosponsors of the colloquium. Dr. Mark Jordan of The Medieval Institute served as its chair.

February 28 - March 1, 1991, Date For Environmental Conditions Course

The Association of Physical Plant Administrators of Universities and Colleges (APPA) has announced the exact date of February 28-March 1, 1991, for the upcoming course on environmental conditions for libraries and archives. The 1 ½-day event, being developed in cooperation with the Commission, will be held at the Holiday Inn, Capital Hill, in Washington, DC. Participation is limited to 150, with the course designed for teams of librarians/archivists and plant managers from an institution, as well as individuals. A major goal is to foster more productive working relationships between librarians/archivists and plant administrators, so as to improve environmental conditions of library and archival materials.

In addition to working sessions on such topics as standards implementation and maintenance issues, APPA expects to arrange tours to sites of preservation work, such as the Smithsonian Institution. For further information on course content and registration, contact Kathy Smith, Director of Educational Programs, APPA, 1446 Duke Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-3492.

Planning Task Force members from the Commission are: Patti McClung, Research Libraries Group; Joel Clemmer, Macalester College; and Don Kelsey, University of Minnesota. Assisting from APPA are Michael League (Director, Office of Plant Service), William W. Moss (Director of Archives), Richard L. Siegle (Director of Facilities), and Nancy Gwinn (Assistant Director, Collections Management)—all of the Smithsonian Institution.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

Focus on Archives

The archival community now faces unprecedented and overwhelming challenges in their efforts to develop affordable strategies to preserve the "articulate audible voice of the Past." Although there are many similarities in preservation policies and practices for library and archival collections, the enormity of the impact of acid paper on our literary, historical, and governmental archives far exceeds the dimensions of the brittle books challenge and will require unprecedented cooperation and coordination among traditionally autonomous organizations and agencies. This special section highlights some of the current efforts to integrate archives into the nationally coordinated preservation agenda—a major initiative for the Commission during 1990-1991.

Preservation Planning Underway by Society of American Archivists

A one-day meeting of the Society of American Archivists' (SAA) Task Force on Preservation was hosted by the Commission on March 28. After reviewing the planning document, "Preserving History's Future" (published in the January *1990 SAA Newsletter*), the task force turned its attention to examining specific initiatives and identifying projects for immediate action from each of the seven objective areas: (1) Increase public commitment to preserve and use the historical record; (2) Support comprehensive education and training programs; (3) Support the development of comprehensive preservation management programs and activities; (4) Identify and promote the use of systematic selection procedures for appropriate preservation strategies; (5) Encourage the development and dissemination of technical standards for preservation processes; (6) Facilitate access to preserved collections; and (7) Support research and dissemination of research findings on archival preservation and related topics.

The task force expects to draft a three-year plan by the SAA annual meeting in August. The task force consists of seven members: Christine Ward, New York State Archives and Records Administration, co-chair; Howard Lowell, Delaware State Archives, co-chair; Margaret Child, consultant; Anne R. Kenney, Cornell University Library; Paul McCarthy, University of Alaska, Fairbanks Libraries; Lisa Fox, Southeast Library Network (SOLINET); Paul Conway, National Archives and Records Administration; and Karen Garlick, Chair, SAA Preservation Section (ex-officio).

A full report of this initial meeting of the Task Force will appear in the July issue of the *SAA Newsletter*. Comments or questions about SAA's preservation planning initiatives can be addressed to any of the above.

Archivists, State Library Agencies to Receive Newsletter

In response to a request from The Council of State Governments, the members of the National Association of Government Archives and Records Administrators (NAGARA) and the Chief Officers of State Library Agencies (COSLA) are being added to this newsletter's mailing list. According to the Council office, NAGARA and COSLA members are "deeply involved on a daily basis with preservation issues at the state level."

Special Issue of *American Archivist* to Address Preservation Issues

The summer 1990 issue of American Archivist will be a special one devoted entirely to the subject of preservation in an archival setting. Articles will examine such issues as the national preservation context, international initiatives, research and development, planning, preservation of non-textual records, and lessons from library preservation programs. Contributors include archivists, librarians, conservators, and representatives from organizations devoted to the preservation of research materials. Anne R. Kenney, Cornell University, will serve as the guest editor of this issue.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

RLG TO FILM 25 ARCHIVAL COLLECTIONS UNDER NEW NEH GRANT

Twenty-five endangered archival collections important to research in American history will be filmed and made widely available by The Research Libraries Group (RLG) under a $724,814 grant from the National Endowment for the Humanities. According to RLG, the three-year Archives Preservation Microfilming Project is the first of its kind. Thirteen RLG members in nine states will preserve brittle or badly deteriorated materials from collections that are significant both regionally and nationally. Participants are committed to making the resulting two million frames of microfilm available through duplication or interlibrary loan. Records for the filmed materials will be entered into RLIN, allowing researchers expanded access to them.

Project participants are: Brigham Young University; Brown University; Cornell University; Emory University; Stanford University-Hoover Institution on War, Revolution and Peace; The New York Historical Society; The New York Public Library; New York University; the University of Florida; the University of Michigan (Bentley Historical Library); the University of Minnesota; and Yale University.

NAGARA 1990 WORK PLAN INCLUDES PRESERVATION OF STATE ARCHIVAL HOLDINGS

A nine-point 1990 work plan of the National Association of Government Archives and Records Administrators (NAGARA) published in the Winter 1990 issue of the NAGARA Clearinghouse includes a provision for promoting the improved preservation of state archival holdings. As part of the plan, all states will receive a self-study manual that provides a framework for assessing archival preservation needs and developing plans to meet those needs. The self-study also is expected to be partially applicable to non-government archival settings. The manual has been developed at the Georgia Department of Archives and History. NAGARA also will be cooperating with other archives organizations on preservation issues, including encouraging the use of non-acid paper for government records.

FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY HOLDS PERMANENT PAPER SYMPOSIUM

Millionen Bücher versauern in Archiven
Neues Papier soll Säurefraß stoppen
Neues Papier soll den „Säurefraß" stoppen
Papier für die Ewigkeit
Papier mit Gütesiegel gegen Säuretod
Kampf dem „Säurefraß"
Auch Papier ist sterblich
Im Zeichen der fliegenden Achte
Neues Papier soll Säurefraß von Büchern stoppen
Säurefraß wird gestoppt

The symposium received a large amount of press coverage by newspapers throughout the country.

International Project Program Officer Hans Rütimann recently was invited to attend a symposium on permanent paper held by the Deutsche Bibliothek and its "Gesellschaft für das Buch" (Association for the Book). The February 14 symposium included more than 40 participants—librarians, archivists, publishers, paper manufacturers, booksellers, printers and government officials. All were there to discuss strategies for the improvement of paper in the Federal Republic of Germany. The following excerpts from Rütimann's report to the Commission seem of particular interest to this newsletter's readership.

• • •

The purpose of the symposium was stated as follows:

Recently, awareness of the threat of deterioration of acid-containing publications and thus the necessity to find solutions to this problem has increased worldwide. In the libraries of the Federal Republic of Germany alone, approximately 26% of the book collections, i.e., 40 million volumes, must immediately undergo treatment for preservation. The Deutsche Bibliothek commissioned the Battelle Institute to conduct a survey of existing mass deacidification procedures, the results of which are now available [Ed. Note: See the Commission on Preservation and Access publication: "Mass Deacidification Proce-

dures for Libraries and Archives: State of Development and Perspectives for Implementation in the Federal Republic of Germany," by Peter Schwerdt, September 1989.]

In view of the extremely high costs for mass preservation, this can, however, not remain the long-term procedure for safeguarding the cultural heritage. It is now urgently necessary to think about future use of acid-free, age-resistant paper and to support initiatives in that direction. Thus, it ought to be determined whether and under what conditions German publishers, writers, and organizations can follow the example of publishers and writers in the United States and commit themselves to print in the future at least part of the publications on acid-free, age-resistant paper and to mark it accordingly. . . .

. . . [T]he cost of treatment per book is expected to be DM 10-15 and therefore some DM 100 million will have to be allocated over the next 20 years. There will be no shortage of books to be treated: Even though the Deutsche Bibliothek, founded in the late 40s, estimates that only about 3% of its books need treatment, most other West German libraries report a figure closer to 30%. . . .

Among the recommendations formulated by the participants and presented in a public setting following the symposium:

• Books are carriers of the cultural heritage and therefore, of the utmost importance. For this reason, the symposium participants strongly support the long-term safeguarding of the printed word.

• The participants believe that age-resistant books can be produced by means of modern technology—but only if a book is considered the sum of its parts, from the manufacture of paper to the printing process to storage.

We owe it to ourselves to produce better paper, not only for the good of our culture but also to honor our craft."

—a self-identified "paper man" and conference participant

• Since the acidic manufacture of paper and the use of wood pulp considerably hasten the paper's deterioration, the conference participants requested a marking system for paper used in book printing. The mark would identify for printers, publishers, and book buyers the paper's qualities—e.g., whether or not it contained wood pulp. It was suggested that following the American example, the mathematical symbol of infinity could be used, if there were no legal restrictions.

• The participants agreed that in view of the endangered age resistance of paper, quality specifications are necessary for book printing. According to current knowledge, the following should be required:
— 100% bleached cellulose without pulp fibers;
— a pH-value of 7.5 to 9 (7 being the neutral condition);
— a calcium carbonate buffer of at least 3% as an additional protection against damaging environmental influences.

• When a book fulfills the above requirements, and the marking system is used, the Deutsche Bibliothek will so state in its bibliographic records, thereby giving book dealers, libraries, and book buyers a clear indication of quality. The participants agreed that future European Community regulations should reflect this policy.

• The participants agreed that further research is necessary concerning the age resistance of papers and their specifications. They urged responsible governmental agencies to initiate and support appropriate research.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Number 24 Newsletter June 1990

Preservation Seminar for Library Educators

Library directors, preservation specialists, and library educators will exchange perspectives regarding ways to integrate preservation into library school education during the Preservation Seminar for Library Educators to be held August 2-4, 1990 at Wye Plantation, MD. (See January 1990 newsletter for background information.)

Among the questions to be discussed over the three days are: What do library directors want library school graduates to know when they come to work in a research library? . . . What does the future hold for preservation specialists? . . . What do educators need to make it possible to include preservation in general courses? The seminar will serve as a forum to develop recommendations for further Commission action. In addition, a report will be prepared for wide distribution.

In addition to members of the Commission's Task Force on Preservation Education, those invited to attend the seminar are:

Library Directors: Kathleen Moretto Spencer, Franklin and Marshall College; James Govan, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill; Joseph Rosenthal, University of California, Berkeley; Joanne Euster, Rutgers University; and Michele Cloonan (for Merrily Taylor), Brown University.

Library Educators: Josephine Fang, Simmons College; Judith Serebnick, Indiana University; Lois Upham, University of South Carolina.

Archivists: Brenda Banks, Georgia State Archives; Nicholas Burckel, Washington University.

Networks/Consortia: Bonnie Jurgens, AMIGOS; Lisa Fox, SOLINET.

Patricia Battin will represent the Commission at the event, which is being developed under a Commission contract with the Catholic University School of Library and Information Science, with assistance from the Task Force on Preservation Education.

Preservation Education Task Force members are: David B. Gracy II, Professor, Graduate School of Library and Information Science, University of Texas at Austin; Beverly P. Lynch, Dean, Graduate School of Library and Information Science, University of California, Los Angeles; Sally Roggia, Adjunct Professor, School of Library and Information Science, University of Wisconsin- Madison; Sally Buchanan, Adjunct Professor, School of Library and Information Science, University of Pittsburgh; Carolyn Harris, Assistant Professor, School of Library Service, Columbia University; and Deanna B. Marcum (chair), Dean, School of Library and Information Science, Catholic University of America.

To serve as the new electronic infrastructure of the university, the library must reevaluate its most traditional assumptions and become part of a seamless web of information providers. . . .

Article by Patricia Battin, "The Real Electronic Library," in *Information Technology Quarterly* (Spring 1990, pp. 4-8), published by Harvard University, Office for Information Technology, 50 Church Street, Cambridge, MA 02138.

Commission Publishes Updated Informational Brochure

The Commission has just published an updated brochure that describes the Commission's purpose and initiatives for 1990-91. The brochure calls attention to: the Brittle Books program; selection of materials for preservation; research and projects in technology; improvement of the quality of materials being produced now and in the future; collaboration with existing groups—including archives—to accomplish the preservation agenda; establishment of an international database of preservation records; integration of preservation into libraries, archives and library school education; and expansion of the public's access to preserved materials.

The brochure also lists the Commission's sponsors, members, committees and task forces. It is available upon written request to Trish Cece, Communications Assistant. If you're requesting multiple copies, please let us know how you plan to use them.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

Working Meeting on International Register of Microform Masters

As part of the International Project supported by The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, the Commission held a working meeting on the development of an international register of microform masters May 13-16, in Zurich, Switzerland. (See February 1990 newsletter for background information.) Participants were those individuals with national responsibilities for planning and implementing bibliographic control for reformatted materials.

The institutions and representatives expected at the event included:

Jean-Marie Arnoult, Director of Preservation, Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, France
Peter Baader, Director of User Services, Deutsche Bibliothek, Frankfurt am Main
David Clements, Director of Preservation Services, British Library, London, England
Tom Delsey, Director, Acquisitions and Bibliographic Services Branch, National Library of Canada, Ottawa, Canada
Guadalupe López, Director, Technical and Bibliographical Services, Biblioteca Nacional, Caracas, Venezuela
Ulrich Montag, Director of User Services, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Munich, Federal Republic of Germany
Monika Richter, Coordinator of the German Microfilm Project, Stadt- und Universitätsbibliothek, Frankfurt am Main, Federal Republic of Germany
Heiner Schnelling, Director of the Universitätsbibliothek, Justus-Liebig-Universität, Giessen, Federal Republic of Germany
Reinhard Spiller, Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut, Berlin, Federal Republic of Germany
Wolfgang Wächter, Director of Conservation, Deutsche Bücherei, Leipzig, German Democratic Republic
——Österreichische Nationalbibliothek, Vienna, Austria

With a basic objective of developing an international online compatible database of bibliographic records of preserved items, the meeting participants first looked at the status and numbers of records available and projects in progress. They also analyzed obstacles to creating such a shared database and examined possible specifications and standards for its operation. Possibilities for database coordination and management, economics, and other operational mechanics also were discussed. It is hoped that the group will develop a set of recommendations to the Commission regarding general problem areas and specific projects for future action.

Our books and journals are designed not just for data retrieval, but for browsing, thinking, reading, and connections between people and ideas. . . .Access means more than mere physical location. It means the connection of ideas to people.

Patricia Glass Schuman, "Reclaiming Our Technological Future," Library Journal, March 1, 1990; pages 37-38.

Canadian Broadcasting Corporation Airs "Turning to Dust"

On March 14 the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation aired "Turning to Dust," a program about the preservation of brittle books, as part of the series, "The Nature of Things." The Commission's consultant for the International Project, Hans Rütimann, was featured in the documentary, and several United States preservation organizations including the Commission were cited in the closing credits as contributors. The 60-minute program is available on VHS, Beta or ¾-inch format. It also is expected to be shown on cable channels in this country. For ordering information, contact CBC Enterprises, Educational Sales, Box 500, Station A, Toronto, Ontario, Canada, M5W 1E6; (416) 975-3505.

Commission Member Named College Librarian

Richard De Gennaro, director of New York Public Library, has been named the Roy E. Larsen Librarian of Harvard College, effective June 1. De Gennaro, who is a member of the Commission, has been with New York Public Library since 1987, and before that time was director of libraries at the University of Pennsylvania for 16 years. His new position will entail the management of more than 7.5 million volumes, 67 individual libraries, and a staff of 400.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

Preservation Microfilming Services Expand

Three preservation microfilming organizations have announced expanded services over the past several months, in support of nationwide initiatives to step up efforts to capture, store, and provide access to the embrittled materials in libraries and archives. On March 1, 1990, the Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service (MAPS) in Bethlehem, PA, moved into a new micrographics laboratory that includes 26 cameras, two high-volume film processors, and separate duplication facilities for silver and diazo films. MAPS also added a specially designed vault for storage of up to 400,000 printing masters. (Archives masters will not be accepted for permanent storage.)

Earlier this year, University Microfilms International (UMI) in Ann Arbor, MI, announced the creation of a new Preservation Division to serve the needs of librarians and other institutions working to preserve brittle books and newspapers. The division is dedicated to microfilming material in danger of irreparable damage due to brittleness.

Research Publications (RP) in Woodbridge, CT, also has moved into the field of custom preservation microfilming, with its announcement of a "full range of...services." RP is providing physical and editorial preparation services, as well as duplication and distribution of reader copies and cataloging records.

Retrospective Preservation Microfilm Records Being Made Available on RLIN Database

Locating records of preservation microfilm created between 1965 and 1983 and obtaining copies of them will become much easier over the next several months, as the Research Libraries Information Network (RLIN) adds records from the National Register of Microform Masters (NRMM) to its online database. A hefty 15 percent of the 400,000 NRMM records have been added to the network and are now available for searching. The loaded records include all main entries beginning with the letters "A" and "B," through "Beal." As records are added to the database, they receive new information that enables searchers to determine which institution holds the master negative, so that they can be contacted for a copy of the film.

Libraries currently doing preservation microfilming will benefit from the new online capability, since the time required to search through listings of available microfilms in order to avoid duplicate filming is expected to be reduced by more than 50 percent. The 400,000 NRMM records will join another 370,000 records for microfilm master negatives already in the RLIN system. These include records from RLG members, other RLIN users, OCLC, the British Library, University Microfilms International, and the American Theological Library Association.

Nature and books belong to the eyes that see them.

—Ralph Waldo Emerson
Essays: Second Series

College Libraries Committee Supports Centralized Microform Storage and Access

The College Libraries Committee expressed strong support for centralized microform storage and access services during its fourth meeting on April 23. Since college libraries are expected to be among the primary users of preservation microfilm, they would prefer to deal with as few sources as possible when purchasing materials, according to the committee, which urged the Commission to move forward with explorations of such services.

The committee also declared its support for the environmental conditions course for librarians/archivists and plant managers, to be held by the Association of Physical Plant Administrators (APPA), February 28-March 1, 1991, in Washington, DC. The course is being developed in cooperation with the Commission.

Louise Sutherland from the Office of Library Programs of the U.S. Department of Education met with the committee to discuss Title IIC preservation grant possibilities. In an effort to encourage a higher number of preservation-related applications for this program, she explained eligibility requirements and the process of grant selection. A 1986 amendment makes it possible for libraries that do not qualify as a "major research library" to be eligible based on special collections in their holdings.

In other developments, the committee is publishing a regular column in *College and Research Libraries News* to further spread knowledge about preservation activities to college and university library personnel beyond its immediate contacts. The committee also is developing a workshop for college librarians with part-time responsibilities for preservation in a joint effort with SOLINET. As it now stands, the workshop is planned for seven days in July 1991 in Atlanta. Although the exact cost has not been set, it is expected to be about $1200. The next College Libraries Committee meeting is scheduled for Monday, December 3, 1990.

Members of the College Libraries Committee are: Willis E. Bridegam, Librarian, Amherst College; Barbara J. Brown, University Libranan, Washington & Lee University; Joel Clemmer, Library Director, Macalester College; David Cohen, Director of Libraries, College of Charleston; Caroline M. Coughlin, Library Director, Drew University; Michael Haeuser, Director of Learning Resources and Head Librarian, Gustavus Adolphus College; Jacquelyn M. Morris, College Librarian, Occidental College; and Kathleen M. Spencer (chair), Library Director, Franklin & Marshall College.

Panelists Review Proposal on Mass Deacidification for Library of Congress

The Library of Congress (LC) recently convened ten preservation professionals to review a request for proposal (RFP) for mass deacidification of its paper-based book and document collections. The panelists, who included Patricia Battin, were asked to comment on the technical performance requirements and to suggest improvements. LC's efforts in saving brittle paper are three-fold, according to a recent statement: encouraging the manufacture and use of permanent paper, microfilming, and in the future, mass deacidification.

Medline and *Index Medicus* Identify Permanent Paper

In January 1990 the National Library of Medicine began to identify journals indexed in MEDLINE and *Index Medicus* that are printed on alkaline paper. The notation "ACID-FREE" appears after the ISSN of the journal. The announcement was reported in the January-February 1990 issue of the *National Library of Medicine News*.

Giant Brittle Book Exhibit Hits the Road

The Giant Brittle Book exhibit was featured at the grand opening of the Washington Research Library Consortium (WRLC) on March 31 in Lanham, Maryland. "Slow Fires: On the Preservation of the Human Record" also was shown at the event. University officials, library directors and federal, state and county politicians were among those present. WRLC is an inter-university collaborative effort that supports the acquisition, organization, access, and dissemination of information and library resources and services. Its mission includes planning and implementing a program of preservation and conservation of informational materials.

Last month the exhibit traveled to Atlanta, Georgia, at Southeastern Library Network's (SOLINET) Annual Membership Meeting on May 3 and 4. The meeting focused on "Libraries and Networks: Threshold of a New Decade." The brittle book exhibit also headed north to the Mid-Atlantic Regional Archives Conference (MARAC) on May 18 in New Brunswick, New Jersey. The theme of the meeting was "Preservation in the Nineties." Maxine Sitts chaired a discussion panel on "Cooperative Preservation Initiatives" during the conference.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

THE COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 25 NEWSLETTER JULY 1990

NEW REPORT AVAILABLE ON CHOOSING MASS DEACIDIFICATION PROCESSES

Technical and scientific information to support decision making by libraries and archives investigating mass deacidification as a preservation alternative is provided in a May 1990 publication from the Commission. *Technical Considerations in Choosing Mass Deacidification Processes* takes a scientific stance, advocating the most conservative path to making decisions and giving the safety of the collections the highest priority. A basic assumption is that no existing or future mass process will be perfect. Among the paper's conclusions: If decision makers assemble a useful body of data and test results and then follow a logical evaluation procedure, they will be able to identify a choice — or as is most likely — several choices.

The paper first presents some basic background about mass deacidification processes, focusing on reasons for their development and what is known about them from a scientific perspective. There also are discussions of the differences between mass deacidification and single-item treatment, and the particular challenges in choosing mass processes.

The paper's most significant section analyzes six technical evaluation factors — the effectiveness of deacidification procedures, unwanted changes in materials, process engineering, extra benefits from specific processes, toxicity, and environmental impact. A subsequent section covers related evaluation issues: unit treatment costs, book and document security, logistical considerations, long-term vendor performance and contracting, observation of facility operation, and liability. Organizational and planning considerations are included in an appendix. Dr. Peter G. Sparks, a physical chemist who served as Director for Preservation at the Library of Congress for eight years, prepared the report.

Complimentary copies of *Technical Considerations in Choosing Mass Deacidification Processes* (22 pages, May 1990) have been mailed to individuals and institutions on the Commission's mailing lists. Additional copies are available for $5.00 from: The Commission on Preservation and Access, 1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW, Suite 313, Washington, DC 20036. Orders must be prepaid, with checks (no cash) made payable to "The Commission on Preservation and Access." Payment must be in U.S. funds.

In addition to the generally available published literature, other resources about mass deacidification include:

1) Karen Turko, Head of Preservation Services at the University of Toronto Library, has written an as yet untitled paper that discusses the management decisions that have to be taken in terms of collection evaluation, selection of materials, materials handling, and financial issues. It will be published this month by the Association of Research Libraries (ARL). For more information contact ARL at 1527 New Hampshire Avenue, NW, Washington, D.C. 20036; (202) 232-2466.

2) *Feasibility Study for a Mass Deacidification Centre for Libraries and Archives in Metropolitan Toronto*, June 1989; prepared by Lord Cultural Resources Planning & Management Inc. in association with Murray Frost: Cultural Building Consulting Inc., available for $25 (Canadian) from the Preservation Services Department, University of Toronto Library, 130 St. George Street, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M5S 1A5.

This 143-page study was cofunded by the Ministry of Culture and Communications and the City of Toronto, and the study process was directed by a Steering Committee made up of the major libraries in Toronto. The study demonstrates that there are a number of promising technologies, and a real market for mass deacidification, so that in the near future library decision-makers will be able to make an informed choice as to which system will best meet their needs. The paper discusses the following topics: needs analysis and market projections, comparative assessment of deacidification technologies, analysis of operational requirements, operational model, financial analysis, and implementation plan.

3) *Paper Preservation Services*, October 1989; a marketing kit distributed by Union Carbide Corporation, Corporate Communications Department, 39 Old Ridgebury Road, Danbury, CT 06817-0001; (203) 794-7027 or (203) 794-2535; available at no cost from Union Carbide Corporation. This marketing kit contains the following:

a) press release entitled "Union Carbide Signs Exclusive Paper Preservation Agreement with Wei T'o Associates"

b) background information about Union Carbide's Paper Preservation Services

c) "Toward Environmental Excellence: A Progress Report"

d) the following factsheets: "Our Heritage Preserved," "How the Chemistry Works," "Four Steps to Effective Mass Deacidification," and "Flow Diagram of Union Carbide Mass Deacidification System."

e) "Mass Deacidification: Operational Experience at The National Archives and The National Library of Canada," by Geoffrey Morrow (Reprinted by permission of the Institute of Paper Conservation from the Proceedings of its 10th Anniversary Conference "New Directions in Paper Conservation," Oxford University, 14-18 April, 1986, as published in the Paper Conservator.)

4) *Evaluation Strategy, Paper Preservation Systems*, February 1990; Lithium Division, FMC Corporation, 449 North Cox Road, P.O. Box 3925, Gastonia, NC 28053; (704) 868-5300; free copies are available from the FMC Corporation upon request.

This 96-page report was developed by the FMC Corporation to help focus and facilitate discussion of criteria of mass deacidification by the conservation community. It includes an evaluation strategy model and sections on the following topics: criteria for mass preservation, standard test materials, positive enhancement, chemical effects, physical effects, accelerated aging, chemical effects post accelerated aging, physical effects post accelerated aging, and non-detrimental effects.

Meeting on International Database of Bibliographic Records for Preserved Items: May 13-16, 1990, Zürich, Switzerland

Representatives from the United States, Canada, Venezuela, United Kingdom, France, West Germany, East Germany, and Switzerland met in Zurich May 13-16 to develop cooperative strategies for the preservation of deteriorating books printed on acid paper. The group was convened by the Commission and represented the initial pilot countries of its International Project.

The final list of participants attending the meeting is as follows: Jean-Marie Arnoult, Director of Technology, Bibliothèque Nationale, France; Peter Baader, Director of User Services, Deutsche Bibliothek, Federal Republic of Germany (FRG); Lourdes Blanco, Director of Preservation, Biblioteca Nacional, Venezuela; David W.G. Clements, Director of Preservation Services, The British Library; Thomas Delsey, Director of Acquisitions and Bibliographic Services, National Library of Canada; Ulrich Montag, Director of User Services, Bavarian State Library; Monika Richter, Coordinator of the German Microform Project, University Library of Frankfurt, FRG; Heiner Schnelling, Director of the University Library of Giessen, FRG; Wolfgang Wächter, Director of Preservation, Deutsche Bücherei Leipzig, German Democratic Republic (GDR).

The U.S. contingent consisted of Patricia Battin, President; Pamela Block, Administrative Assistant; and Hans Rütimann, Program Officer for the International Project — all of the Commission; George F. Farr, Jr., Director of the Office of Preservation, National Endowment for the Humanities; and James M. Morris, Secretary of The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation.

In addition, invitations were extended to representatives of the German Library Institute, Berlin, and the Austrian National Library, Vienna. The invitations were accepted, but because of last-minute commitments, these two representatives were not able to join the group. Hermann Kostler, Director of the Zentralbibliothek Zürich, and his colleagues from the library of the Swiss Federal Institute of Technology (Ulrich Bangerter and Karl Böhler) represented the local library community.

The primary focus of the meeting was the development of guidelines for the creation of a machine-readable internationally-compatible database of bibliographic records to enable the efficient and timely exchange of information on preservation microfilming. The group also considered a range of other issues related to preservation.

Meeting participants endorsed a series of recommendations for action by the Commission to encourage and coordinate mutually beneficial activities in countries around the world. These include the dissemination of guidelines for the exchange of machine-readable bibliographic records, a world-wide survey of preservation filming projects, and a study to identify the costs and management requirements of centralized and decentralized database models.

—Hans Rütimann

Library Intern Gains Preservation Experience

For the month spanning mid-May through mid-June, the Commission hosted an intern. Michael Miller, from the Rutgers School of Communication, Information and Library Studies, chose to come to the Commission to earn credit for Field Experience in the school's MLS program. While at the Commission, Michael consulted with a number of library professionals to aid in two assigned projects. The first project was a reorganization of the preservation vertical files used for public information purposes. The second was the generation of a fundraising information resource that will be made available through the Commission.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

SPECIAL REPORT:
THE CONCEPT OF A CENTRAL COLLECTION OF PRESERVATION MICROFILMS

The following report is based on an informal survey conducted by the Commission to gather data on the concept of a central collection of preservation microfilms. The report was discussed at the recent ARL membership meeting in May.

The National Endowment for the Humanities' preservation filming program projects a total of 3,000,000 volumes filmed over the next twenty years by the nation's libraries in a distributed environment. Traditionally, each institution has been responsible for the storage of the master negatives and printing masters, bibliographic control of preserved items, and the provision of access to service copies. Uneven bibliographic control practices have often hindered convenient access to preserved items. Costs for storage, bibliographic control, and dissemination through loan or purchase have been borne by the owning institution with no useful mechanism to encourage rapid and convenient document delivery and equitable sharing of costs throughout the scholarly community.

The National Endowment for the Humanities' program to reformat 3,000,000 volumes over the next twenty years with federal funds carries with it the obligation to provide cost-effective, rapid bibliographic and textual access to preserved materials as well as separate storage of master negatives and printing masters. New computer and communication technologies offer exciting opportunities for rapid delivery in a variety of media formats, including film, paper, magnetic tape, and optical disk. The potential size of this body of microfilms, the cost of the new technological capacities, anticipated economies of scale in managing a distribution operation, and the obligation to provide cost-effective convenient access to the user argue for the establishment of a centralized collection of printing masters. Initially, this collection would take the form of a centralized depository of microfilms with access through on-line bibliographic services and efficient twenty-four-hour delivery mechanisms with the expectation that storage, access, and service enhancements will evolve with the increasing use of technology by scholars and expanded availability of network capabilities to the research community.

An informal survey of thirteen institutions presently engaged in preservation microfilming with NEH support produced the following statistics describing the current status. Owing to both the small size of the sample and the lack of consistency in definition and record-keeping, the data should be viewed as descriptive rather than definitive. "Master negative" is variously defined by different institutions. Some respondents indicated reels, others titles. "Reels" were converted to titles, using an average of four titles per reel.

By 1992, the thirteen institutions project a total collection of 492,000 titles. The three national libraries will hold 403,398 titles of which 138,000 are newspapers. These holdings, added to the substantial collection of the Center for Research Libraries, indicate that there will be well over a million master negatives available by 1992.

Very few of the institutions were able to provide use statistics, but the overall impression is one of low usage. The wide range of costs, timeliness in responding to requests, lack of machine-readable bibliographic records, and random selection practices probably explains the low use. Although all institutions reported their intent to enter either full or minimal-level records of items filmed under the NEH project in either OCLC or RLIN, it is not clear that all older records have been converted to machine-readable form. Until the National Microform Master Register is converted, bibliographic access continues to be uneven.

The current status of access to the preserved items is as follows:

Loans:	Costs for interlibrary loan range from $0 to $15.
Purchase:	Costs for purchase of films range from $9 to $40 or variable charges per foot plus service fees.
Paper:	Costs range from ten cents to twenty-five cents per page plus service charges in some instances ranging from $2 to $15.
Microfiche:	Costs range from $0 to $1.25 per fiche plus a $6 service charge.

Response time for access to a service copy on interlibrary loan was reported to be 2-3 days. Response times for either film or paper products ranged from 1 to 4 weeks.

There is considerable variation among the institutions in the interpretation of the copyright law.

In all instances where the printing masters were stored at the institution, storage costs were considered "free," because films were stored in available library space.

Library costs to provide interlibrary loan services range from complete subsidy to partial subsidy to full recovery.

Library costs to provide purchase of film, fiche, or paper range from partial subsidy to full recovery. For institutions reporting fees based on full recovery, it is unclear whether staff time, institutional overhead, and space costs are included.

By most accounts, the present system is unfriendly to the user and while currently manageable, generally occupies second-class status in the institution's hierarchy of public services. It is unlikely that under the present system, costs will decrease and services improve as the volume of filming increases. Given the conditions of NEH filming grants requiring the separate housing for master negatives and printing masters and the provision of cost-effective, equitable document access, a centralized distribution service managed by a third party on behalf of the nation's libraries could provide swift and convenient service either to individuals or libraries, relieve individual institutions of storage and service burdens, and facilitate an equitable distribution of costs throughout the entire user community.

ARL Town Meeting Addresses Research Library Preservation Concerns

Directors of university and research libraries in the U.S. and Canada explored preservation issues at an open town meeting held during the Spring Membership Meeting of the Association of Research Libraries (ARL) in New Orleans. On hand to lead the discussions were members of ARL's Committee on the Preservation of Research Library Materials: Carole Moore (chair), University of Toronto; William Studer, Ohio State University; Joseph Rosenthal, University of California at Berkeley; and Scott Bennett, Johns Hopkins University.

■ **Mass Deacidification.** Noting that an estimated 60 percent of the collections in research libraries are not yet brittle but on acidic paper, Studer said that "we must assume that at least one mass deacidification process will become viable," but that librarians cannot take too seriously the costs now being quoted of $3 to $10 per item for treatment. If research libraries don't do something about mass deacidification, they will be assigning a large portion of their books to eventual brittle status, he cautioned.

■ **Access to Printing Masters.** [See the accompanying report on the Commission's informal survey.] Concerning a central service for storage of and access to preservation printing masters, Moore listed several questions raised by the committee, including: Will such a service solve current problems (e.g., lack of uniform, timely access to preservation microfilms)? Will such a service receive a high enough volume of use to be able to provide low prices? Will such a service to able to interface with international preservation microfilm programs? A lack of data and an absence of models are hampering the development of committee recommendations, Moore stated.

■ **The Evolving North American Preservation Program.** Rosenthal approached this topic from the perspective of a quiz and a request for advice: (1) Are resources adequate — Funds, personnel, know-how, training, research, facilities? (2) Are ARL libraries addressing the full scope of collections, regardless of the cause of the need for preservation: Brittleness, use, theft, disaster, and so forth. Are they addressing materials of whatever kind, not just paper? (3) Is there a balance of technology — microfilming, photocopying, repair, restoration, mass deacidification, digitization? (4) What about the decision-making process regarding policy making and allocation of resources? His challenge was for ARL libraries to achieve a preservation equilibrium by the year 2000.

■ **The Role of ARL in Statewide Preservation Planning.** Bennett explored possible ways that ARL and its members could be involved in statewide programs: Statewide preservation planning could be included in the model now under development by ARL (see April 1990 Commission Newsletter), or ARL could provide a program that would assist its members in contributing to state initiatives.

Preservation Microfilming Guidelines to be Revised

The Research Libraries Group, Inc. (RLG) has undertaken a project to revise its guidelines and specifications for the creation of preservation microfilm. The project brings together a broad-based group of experts, including commercial micropublishers, preservation film bureaus, and librarians from both RLG-member and non-RLG member institutions.

The current set of technical and procedural guidelines was originally developed in 1983 to support RLG's cooperative preservation filming projects and was updated most recently in 1986. Since then, the field of preservation microfilming has expanded and the available expertise has increased, making this an appropriate time to take a fresh look at the guidelines and revise them to reflect the current consensus on recommended practices for creating stable, high-quality preservation microfilm. The new sets of guidelines will be published and made widely available in the fall of 1990.

In a separate action, RLG has developed an informational brochure ("Preservation Program," April 1990) that describes its preservation activities, funded projects, and initiatives in the 1990s. Copies are available from: RLG, Inc., 1200 Villa Street, Mountain View, CA. 94041-1100.

Capitol Hill Testimony in Support of Preservation

The following comments are excerpts from the published statements of Vartan Gregorian, President of Brown University and a member of the Commission, and Lynne Cheney, Chairperson of the National Endowment for the Humanities and Chairperson of the National Council on the Humanities, in support of the National Endowment for the Humanities before the Senate Subcommittee on Education, Arts, and Humanities, April 5, 1990.

Vartan Gregorian:

". . . The NEH has played a crucial and commendable national role in the realm of preservation. In saving our nation's and humanity's heritage from the ravages of acid paper and time, the NEH is not only rescuing that heritage but also is democratizing that heritage and making it accessible to scholars and the general public throughout the nation and the rest of the world. . ."

Lynne V. Cheney:

"Serious, thoughtful scholarship is the foundation on which humanities education rests, and thus we have devoted a significant portion of our resources to projects that expand knowledge and understanding. . . .

We have also greatly expanded our efforts to preserve humanities research resources. The Endowment is providing leadership and support to institutions and organizations that are attempting to deal with the problems posed by the deterioration of materials in America's libraries, archives, museums, and other repositories. Recent estimates suggest that 80 million volumes comprising 25 to 30 percent of the holdings in the country's research facilities are disintegrating, primarily because of the acid content of their paper. . .

In April 1988, the Endowment presented to Congress, at the request of the House Appropriations Subcommittee on the Department of the Interior and Related Agencies, a multi-year plan for accelerating our efforts to combat these and other preservation problems. **The centerpiece of the plan is enhanced support for projects to microfilm brittle books.** The remainder of the effort is devoted to collateral activities such as education and training projects and research and development projects to improve preservation methods and technology. Now in its second year of operation, the NEH plan has already helped to quicken the pace of the preservation effort throughout the nation: Major projects have been organized in seventeen U.S. research libraries that when completed will have microfilmed over 167,000 brittle books and serials. Training programs are underway to increase the number and expertise of preservation professionals. . .

The following comments are excerpts from the published statement of James Govan, a member of the Commission, and University Librarian, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, speaking on behalf of the Association of Research Libraries, the Commission, and the National Humanities Alliance, on the Fiscal Year 1991 Appropriation for the National Endowment for the Humanities before the Subcommittee on the Interior and Related Agencies, Committee on Appropriations, U.S. House of Representatives, May 3, 1990.

Role of the National Endowment for the Humanities

". . . NEH's leadership in establishing an Office of Preservation in 1985 and the substantial expansion of that program with the support of the Appropriations Subcommittee in 1988 has generated a momentum in this country that has stimulated similar activities around the world. . .

In this regard, the NEH has done far more than provide funds for preserving brittle books. It has served as a forum for discussing, developing, and evaluating strategies and collaborative mechanisms for a decentralized program activity; it has stimulated the creation of new education and training programs; it has encouraged the formulation and maintenance of standards; and it has provided the necessary impetus for institutionalizing preservation operations in local institutions. . .

Accomplishments to Date

The deterioration of printed materials is one of the most serious crises confronting research libraries. The NEH initiative to preserve embrittled books has forged a new and dynamic partnership between the nation's major research libraries, the federal government, and the scholars and others who use them. The projects funded during the past two years illustrate the rich diversity and broad subject scope of the collections that have been targeted for preservation microfilming. . .

Participating libraries report that the availability of NEH funding has stimulated the systematic assessment of preservation needs, aided in establishing a university-wide process for identifying materials with national intellectual significance and at highest risk, and resulted in the development of new and more sophisticated long-range plans for comprehensive preservation activity. In addition, because of resulting coverage by local and national news media, the NEH grant funding has enabled the library community to attract the attention of university administrators, scholars, and the general public to the severity of the preservation issues. . .

****

99

Future Challenges

The reformatting of brittle books is but one, if the most urgent, segment of a comprehensive preservation program. The emerging effectiveness of the NEH brittle books program now enables us to move on to developing a companion strategy for addressing the overwhelming preservation problems faced by the nation's archives. Although there are many similarities in preservation policies and practices for library and archival collections, the enormous impact of the use of acidic paper on our literary, historical and governmental archives must be confronted...

Conclusion

The National Endowment for the Humanities has led the initiative to preserve knowledge on an international scale. The concerned action of the American government to insure unimpeded access to our intellectual heritage has stimulated a remarkable range of activities and renewed interest in cooperative efforts in countries around the world. In a recent letter to the Commission on Preservation and Access, a librarian at the Deutsche Bucherei in Leipzig, East Germany, asked for a copy of the film, SLOW FIRES, produced in 1986 with the support of the National Endowment for the Humanities. The librarian wrote that "the destruction of our national heritage was a tabu topic within the last 40 years. ... This ought to change now and we want to do something to make the state of our library materials known to everybody. Hoping for your help." Unfettered access to information, and particularly to the history of our civilization, is a hallmark of the free society.

****

Copies of the complete testimonies of Vartan Gregorian, Lynne Cheney and James Govan are available upon request from the Commission.

Preservation Management Seminar Under Collaborative Development

Following a recommendation from the College Libraries Committee, the Commission has approved a collaborative project with SOLINET to design and conduct a preservation management seminar for librarians with part-time preservation responsibility. The seminar will help attendees develop the management skills and implement the activities that contribute to successful preservation programs.

In recommending such a seminar, the College Libraries Committee recognized that the maturing field of preservation is moving beyond its earlier focus on techniques to a more conscious attention to strategies. The training event is being designed to help participants implement local preservation efforts that are coherent and appropriate to their size, needs, and resources and that take advantage of regional, state, and national preservation initiatives.

The articulation of goals and development of curriculum has been a cooperative effort among Commission staff, its College Libraries Committee, and the SOLINET Preservation Program. The Commission and SOLINET are sharing costs of design and first-time operation, with the expectation that the seminar may be repeated in the future if it proves useful.

Current plans call for the seminar to be held for one week during the summer of 1991 in Atlanta. Attendance will be open to librarians throughout the nation on an application basis. The committee also has recommended that institutions intending to send staff members to the seminar be required to demonstrate their commitment to preservation. Upon the advice of the College Libraries Committee, one scholarship will be provided for attendance.

Details about the curriculum, exact dates, and application procedures will be available beginning in January 1991 from: SOLINET Preservation Program, 400 Colony Square, Plaza level, Atlanta, GA 30361-6301.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

THE COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 26

NEWSLETTER

Summertime Good News Edition

AUGUST 1990

JOINT TASK FORCE ON TEXT AND IMAGE PRESERVATION MEMBERSHIP ANNOUNCED: FIRST MEETING SCHEDULED

Thirteen specialists in art, architecture, archaeology, geology and geography, history, and medicine have accepted membership on the Joint Task Force on Text and Image Preservation. In developing the task force, the Commission is aiming to assemble a range of professional talent and scholarly interests that would facilitate the discovery of commonalities as well as differences in the preservation needs of disciplines that depend upon both image and text for their intellectual work. The group's first meeting will be held September 14-15 in New York City.

The decision to assemble a broad range of specialists at the beginning of the Joint Task Force was taken deliberately in the hope that the group might more easily come to grips with diversity while still being able to perceive commonality. It is the Commission's intention to expand beyond the current disciplinary areas, either by adding members to the task force or by inviting specialists to attend meetings, prepare papers or offer critical comment on a consultancy basis. How such expansion should take place and in what directions will be heavily determined by the deliberations and the findings of the current membership.

A Getty Grant Program award is supporting the task force in connection with two other interdependent activities: A demonstration project on high resolution color microfilm by the Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service, Bethlehem, PA, and a research project on color microfilm being conducted by Image Permanence Institute, Rochester (NY) institute of Technology. [See related article — "Expanded Research Scope" in this issue.]

Joint Task Force Membership as of June 30: Nancy Allen, Library, Museum of Fine Arts, Boston; Thomas Battle, Moorland-Spingarn Research Center Library, Howard University, Washington, DC; Robert Brentano, Department of History, University of California, Berkeley; Richard Brilliant, Department of Art History,(Chairman), Columbia University; David Brownlee, Department of History of Art, University of Pennsylvania; Janet Buerger, International Museum of Photography, Rochester; Angela Giral, Avery Architectural and Fine Arts Library, Columbia University; Anne Kenney, Library, Cornell University; Susan Klimley, Lamont-Doherty Geoscience Library, Lamont-Doherty Geological Observatory of Columbia University; Katherine Martinez, Library, Henry Francis du Pont Winterthur Museum; James McCredie, Institute of Fine Arts, New York University; Robert Neiley, Robert Neiley Architects, Boston; John Parascandola, History of Medicine Division, National Library of Medicine.

RESEARCH SCOPE EXPANDED FOR TEXT-AND-IMAGE PRESERVATION MICROFILMING

Research regarding the use of color microfilm for the preservation of publications containing text and images will be expanded based on new findings reported by the Image Permanence Institute (IPI), Rochester, NY. Originally, a January 1990 Commission agreement with IPI called for a study of the dark stability properties of color microfilm. However, examination of Cibachrome film on polyester base has indicated that the dyes are more stable than the base after accelerated aging for extended time periods.

Based on these findings, IPI will be expanding their research to compare Cibachrome and chromogenic microfilm. In addition to measuring the dye fading and stain growth, researchers will evaluate the base properties determined by tensile strength and acidity measurements. The new research will not alter the basic time frame or financial arrangements of the original agreement. IPI's research is one of three interdependent activities funded by a $254,000 award to the Commission from The Getty Grant Program.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

In keeping with a tradition begun in August of last year, this Newsletter highlights good news from a variety of organizations.

* * *

Publication of an archives preservation planning document, resource guide, and computer diskette products is being supported by a supplemental grant of $24,388 to the National Association of Government Archives and Records Administrators (NAGARA), Albany, NY, from the National Historical Publications and Records Commission (NHPRC). NHPRC has previously funded development of the product, titled "Preservation Planning for Archives: A Self-Study Approach."

* * *

A coordinated approach to dealing with the critical problem of decaying books in Canada's libraries will be launched with a grant of $875,000 (US) to the National Library of Canada (NLC) by The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation. NLC will coordinate a three-year project with the research libraries of McGill University, Universite Laval, the University of Alberta, the University of British Columbia, and the University of Toronto. Key objectives are to promote a coordinated national approach to the conservation effort and to avoid duplication of work and expense in the production of microforms to replace books too brittle to be handled. The project will enable Canada to play a more important role in the international effort to preserve the world's intellectual heritage.

* * *

Regional cooperative preservation programs, microfilming of manuscripts and printed materials, professional conservation treatment of research materials, and general preservation surveys are some of the activities being supported by the New York State Discretionary Grant Program for the Conservation and Preservation of Library Research Materials during 1990-91. Thirty-eight institutions received funding ranging from $1200 to $25,000. The Discretionary Grant Program provides modest financial support to libraries, archives, historical societies, and similar agencies within the state in order to encourage the proper care and accessibility of research materials, promote the use and development of guidelines and technical standards, and support local and cooperative activities within the context of emerging national preservation activities.

* * *

Five cooperative preservation projects by comprehensive research libraries in New York State have been funded by the state's Program for the Conservation and Preservation of Library Research Materials. (1) New York University, Syracuse University, and New York Public Library will be cooperating with the preservation of historical photographic materials. (2) New York University, New York Public Library, Julliard School, and Mannes College of Music will collaborate with preservation photocopying of music research collections. (3) Syracuse University, University of Rochester, New York Public Library, New York University, and Syracuse University will work together on the preservation of acetate-based audio materials. (4) Cornell University and New York State University will join together to preserve the heritage of the state's agricultural and rural economy. (5) State University of New York (SUNY), Stony Brook; Cornell University; New York Public Library; New York State Library; SUNY Binghamton; Syracuse University; and University of Rochester will be working jointly on phase III of a state Cartographic Materials Preservation Project. The grants range from $22,383 to $118,977.

* * *

Preservation expenditures during 1988-89 for 107 members of the Association of Research Libraries (ARL) increased 23.6 percent over the previous year, according to *ARL Preservation Statistics 1988-89.* The recently-released compilation reports that funds from external sources are increasingly augmenting institutional resources, with a significant portion of preservation budgets coming from grants. The 107 reporting institutions spent $60-million for preservation in 1988-89; total preservation staff in the 107 libraries was 1620, an increase of 12.5 percent over 1987-88. *ARL Preservation Statistics* is published annually and is available for $20 to ARL members and $60 to nonmembers from: ARL, 1527 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, DC 20036.

* * *

Guidelines for recording preservation data in either the Cataloging or Union List Subsystems of the OCLC Online

(continued on page 4)

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

Exploring the Promises of Technology

Cornell, Xerox, and The Commission Join in Book Preservation Project

Cornell University, Xerox Corporation and the Commission are collaborating in a pilot project to test an advanced technology for recording deteriorating books as digital images and producing, on demand, multiple high-quality copies. The 18-month research and development study with potential benefits for libraries worldwide will include scanning 1,000 volumes in Cornell's Olin Library into a digital image storage system. The test is being funded partially by the Commission.

Xerox, based in Stamford, CT, is providing the technology and extensive staff support. Both the Library and Information Technologies units at Cornell University are involved in the study. Participants expect the combined value of funding, equipment and personnel to bring the project's total cost to several million dollars.

The project will explore the technical feasibility and cost-effectiveness of the process; the criteria for selecting materials to be preserved; and methods of cataloging, searching and retrieving the stored materials. "This is tremendously exciting," said Alain Seznec, the Carl A. Kroch University Librarian and former dean of Cornell's College of Arts and Sciences. "Many scholars in the humanities are fully aware of the deterioration of library collections, but they are reluctant to let go of real, paper books. This technology offers a way to have our cake and eat it, too."

"Although microfilming does allow copying for distribution, many patrons don't like it for access," said M. Stuart Lynn, Cornell's vice president for information technologies. Lynn also is a member of the Commission's Technology Assessment Advisory Committee (TAAC), which is tracking on this program and other digital technology developments. According to Lynn, digital image scanning can be highly efficient for access because multiple copies can be made quite readily at any time after the document is digitized. Digitizing also enables material to be transmitted across the nation's computer data networks. High-quality copies that are created are stored as a scanned digitized image for distribution and reproduction as needed, rather than in alphanumeric form, as numbers and letters. Although a computer could not be used to search such digitized images for certain passages or to index them, the scanned documents could be converted into alphanumeric form at some later time.

The Cornell-Xerox project will explore the potential capabilities of digital image technology to combine the storage and duplication characteristics of microfilm and the usability of paper reproductions with transmission and

(continued on page 4)

Committee Report on Image Formats

Applications of digital technology to preservation and access needs are explored in a new report to the Commission from the Technology Assessment Advisory Committee (TAAC). The 10-page report is one of a number expected from the TAAC — a group of seven individuals from industry, publishing, and academia that advises the Commission on possible new technologies for dealing with endangered materials. This first report, *Image Formats for Preservation and Access* (July 1990), compares digital and microfilm imagery and concludes that making either kind of copy is preferable to leaving acidic paper to decay.

The report looks at image formats as they relate to preservation, storage, conversion, and transmission. A basic assumption is that the primary expense of salvaging a book is in the selection process and initial handling, while the cost of later conversion from one modern medium to another is comparatively small.

Digital imagery offers libraries substantial long-term promise, according to the report's principal author, Michael Lesk: "Digital imagery, where books are scanned into computer storage, is a promising alternative process. Storing page images of books permits rapid transfer of books from library to library (much simpler and faster than copying microfilm). . . At present the handling of these images still requires special skills and equipment few libraries possess, but there is rapid technological progress in the design of disk drives, displays, and printing devices. Imaging technology will be within the reach of most libraries within a decade."

However, the report also stresses the need to continue with current preservation methods: "Because microfilm to digital image conversion is going to be relatively straightforward, and the primary cost of either microfilming or digital scanning is in selecting the book, handling it, and turning the pages, librarians should use either method as they can manage, expecting to convert to digital form over the next decade. Postponing microfilming because digital is coming is only likely to be frustrating and allow further deterioration of important books."

To help stimulate further discussions on this subject, the Commission has distributed copies free of charge to all those on its mailing list. Additional complimentary copies are available while supplies last.

The report represents the views of all TAAC members — (Chair) Rowland C. W. Brown, President, OCLC (retired); Adam Hodgkin, Managing Director, Cherwell Scientific Publishing Limited; Douglas van Houweling, Vice Provost for Information Technologies, University of Michigan; Michael Lesk, Division Manager, Computer Science Research, Bellcore; M. Stuart Lynn, Vice President, Information Technologies, Cornell University; Robert Spinrad, Director, Corporate Technology, Xerox Corporation; and Robert L. Street, Vice President for Information Resources, Stanford University.

(continued from page 2)

Union Catalog (OLUC) have been developed, based on recommendations of the OCLC Preservation Task Force, a group of 10 preservation officers and librarians from OCLC-member and Research Libraries Group (RLG)-member libraries. Many preservation projects are funded by National Endowment for the Humanities (NEH) grants, whose rules stipulate that librarians should communicate information about items planned for preservation to avoid duplication of effort. The OCLC database provides a way to communicate such information to libraries. OCLC is a nonprofit computer library service and research organization whose computer network and products link more than 10,000 libraries in 39 countries.

• • •

A sizable study of preservation needs expected to benefit thousands of academic, public, special and school libraries throughout the U.S. and 38 other countries is being initiated by OCLC. The study will include a survey of library needs and the development of a model program to meet those needs. OCLC's RONDAC (Regional OCLC Network Directors Advisory Committee) Ad Hoc Committee on Preservation has selected Dr. Margaret Child as its consultant for the study, which will be conducted in conjunction with planning for the RONDAC Preservation Program. The goals of the RONDAC project are to identify existing programmatic preservation services within regions; suggest new and expanded services; and coordinate strategies with existing national efforts such as those sponsored by the National Endowment for Humanities (NEH), the Commission, the Research Libraries Group, and the Library of Congress.

Another Commission Sponsor

Swarthmore College has joined with 35 other academic institutions to help sponsor the Commission's activities. The support of the higher education and research library community is a vital component of the Commission's capacity to facilitate national and international initiatives for the preservation of our scholarly resources and written heritage.

(continued from page 3)

distribution capabilities not available with film and paper. Lynn noted that although several libraries have developed customized systems for similar purposes, the project is the first to work toward providing higher-quality images and a standardized system that ultimately can be used by any library.

Xerox's vice president of worldwide marketing and customer relations, Charles E. Buchheit, said, "Through joint projects like this, Xerox gains a better understanding of the requirements of document users. The Cornell project is an example of Xerox employing its capabilities to provide solutions to document problems that cannot be solved using existing methods. And while many technologies are limited to preservation, this solution also provides access to stored materials." Further information is available from Sam Siegal, Cornell University News Service (607) 255-5678, or Bob Wagner, Xerox Corporation, (716) 423-1320.

The Commission's involvement in the project is made possible by a general program grant from the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation.

Task Force on Preservation Education Gains New Member

Robert D. Stueart, Dean of the Graduate School of Library and Information Science at Simmons College in Boston, recently joined the Task Force on Preservation Education. This group of educators is exploring the current status of preservation education, the projected requirements for the next decade, and ways in which existing programs can be strengthened and expanded to meet the new challenges.

A TIMELESS QUOTE FROM THE PAST: "Our nation can ill afford the price we will pay for limiting our access to information."

—Senator Daniel P. Moynihan (D-NY), in introducing a bill to exempt the Library of Congress and other major research libraries from the Gramm-Rudman automatic budget cuts. (1986).

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

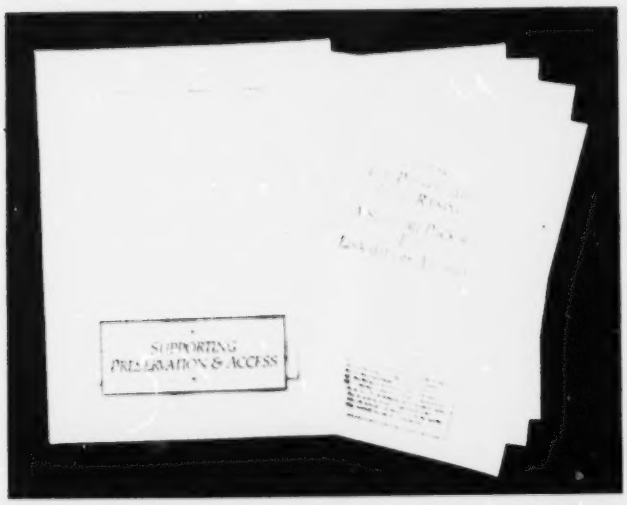
ISSN 1045-1919

THE COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 27 NEWSLETTER SEPTEMBER 1990

FUND RAISING SUPPORT PACKAGE DEVELOPED FOR COMMISSION SPONSORS

In response to requests from its sponsoring institutions, the Commission has published a support package for libraries and archives titled "Ideas for Preservation Fund Raising." The development of local support and funding is essential to a successful preservation program, and the new package provides suggestions and alternatives for colleges and universities seeking to build a base of support for ongoing preservation activities.



A library school intern and several universities worked with the Commission to write and assemble the package, which includes an overview from the national perspective, articles judged helpful for making a case for local preservation support, and examples of institutional fund-raising initiatives. A flexible format is provided so that the information may be transferred or shared, and other materials may be added for use in individual and cooperative efforts.

The introduction to the support package notes:
Each library and archive has a vital role to play in saving collections that are unique. Libraries and archives now need resources and assistance for these efforts from all concerned individuals and organizations. Only with resources and efforts beyond that of standard operations can our precious heritage be saved. These efforts need help because no preservation program can be truly successful in seclusion.

Complimentary copies of the fund raising support package were mailed to the Commission's sponsors. Additional packages are available free, while supplies last, to the Commission's sponsors. The package is available to other institutions for $10.00 from: The Commission on Preservation and Access, 1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW, Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036. Orders must be prepaid, with checks (no cash) made payable to "The Commission on Preservation and Access." Payment must be in U.S. funds.

COMMISSION-TAAC RETREAT WIDENS INQUIRIES INTO ELECTRONIC TECHNOLOGIES

A three-day meeting of members of the Commission's Technology Assessment Advisory Committee (TAAC) with university librarians in late July has been judged "most productive" by committee members, who had requested the opportunity to discuss a broad technological agenda with their constituents. The meeting, structured as a retreat at Coolfont Conference Center, Berkeley Springs, WV, marked the beginning of a projected continuing dialogue between TAAC and the academic and research library community, in order to explore the impact of the changing technological environment on scholarly communication, research, publication, and librarianship. The group's discussions were designed to cover a broad range of issues with probable significant importance for preservation and access strategies.

Outcomes of the meeting will be evident in several reports expected over the next year, according to TAAC chairman Rowland Brown. In addition to Brown, participants were: Richard DeGennaro, Harvard College Library; Penny Abell, Yale University Library; James Govan, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill Library; Paula Kaufman, University of Tennessee Library; Pat Battin, Commission President; and the following members of TAAC: Douglas van Houweling, Vice Provost for Information Technologies, University of Michigan; Michael Lesk, Division Manager, Computer Science Research, Bellcore; and M. Stuart Lynn, Vice President, Information Technologies, Cornell University.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

Organization and Staffing of Preservation in Transition, According to ARL Survey

Changes in organization and staffing of preservation programs operated by major research libraries in the U.S. and Canada are described in a new publication from the Association of Research Libraries (ARL). SPEC Kit #160, "Preservation Organization and Staffing" (January 1990), is based upon responses of 109 ARL libraries to preservation surveys conducted by ARL over the past two years. In addition, 21 ARL libraries that have established major preservation programs were contacted in early 1990.

Survey responses of 18 of the libraries indicate several trends: institutionalization of preservation activities; significant growth in the size of preservation programs; growing emphasis on broad administrative and managerial responsibilities; and increased specialization in preservation positions. According to ARL, "These trends underscore that today's preservation programs operate in a dynamic, changing environment and that the organization of preservation activities is still in a state of flux."

The kit includes selected ARL preservation statistics, organization charts from six universities, position descriptions from ten institutions and planning documents from seven institutions.

The kit is available for $30.00 ($20.00 for ARL members), with prepayment required, from: SPEC, Office of Management Services, 1527 New Hampshire Avenue, NW, Washington, D.C. 20036 ($5.00 additional for first-class postage and handling within the U.S.). For all orders to Canada, add $5.00 for postage and handling; for all orders to other countries outside the U.S., add $8.50 for postage and handling. Kits are shipped via library rate unless otherwise specified; allow four to six weeks for delivery.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

Third Regional Meeting Held in Berkeley, CA

The Commission held its third regional meeting with sponsors and other interested institutions on July 9 at the University of California at Berkeley. West Coast colleges, universities and other institutions invited to attend were: University of Arizona; University of California, Berkeley; University of California, Davis; University of California, Irvine; University of California, Los Angeles; University of California, Riverside; University of California, San Diego; University of California, San Francisco; University of California, Santa Barbara; University of California, Santa Cruz; University of Oregon; Research Libraries Group; Stanford University; and University of Washington.

The group discussed the expansion of Commission priorities including deacidification, professional education, and physical plant concerns; the selection of materials for preservation; and the importance of regional differences and supporting a range of preservation programs and approaches. Participants also reiterated the need for improving and expanding professional education opportunities for managers of preservation programs and requested assistance on ways to strengthen funding sources at the state level.

Previous regional meetings have been held in Chicago (November 1989) and New York City (January 1990).

Joint Task Force on Text and Image Preservation Gains New Member

Nicholas Olsberg of the Canadian Centre for Architecture recently joined the newly formed Joint Task Force on Text and Image Preservation. This group of specialists will investigate commonalities as well as differences in the preservation needs of disciplines that depend upon both image and text for their intellectual work (see August newsletter for more details about the Joint Task Force).

Preservation of Library and Archival Materials

February 28 – March 1, 1991

Washington, DC

Exciting new program to explore the specialized facilities needs of libraries and archival materials storage. This program seeks to improve communication and understanding between facility users and facility managers by increasing awareness of needs and priorities. Faculty members include higher education administrators, library directors, facilities administrators and other specialists who manage library/archival materials.

Program Outline

I. Problem Identification and Evaluation

Focus on the standards and needs of the facility user. Examine the importance of research collections, threats to collection preservation, environmental standards, and the consequences of below standard environmental conditions.

Facilities administrators examine implementation of standards. How to meet environmental and preservation needs with limited resources, how to work specialized needs of these facilities into the priorities of the physical plant.

II. Maintaining the Best Environment

Review the elements of successful communication and examine how work flow and reporting structures can increase communication between facility users and managers.

Examine the maintenance issues involved in maintaining specialized facilities including mechanical/electrical, custodial, security, fire and safety, and disaster planning.

Case study presentation prepared by the Smithsonian Institution will focus on problem solving.

Brochure and registration information will be available in early Fall.
For more information, contact:

The Association of Physical Plant Administrators
of Universities and Colleges
1446 Duke Street
Alexandria, Virginia 22314-3492

Program Offered in Cooperation with the Commission on Preservation and Access

Two New Viewing/Listening Resources — & One Old Favorite

1) "Turning to Dust," a program about the preservation of brittle books, aired March 14, 1990 as part of the series, "The Nature of Things," by the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation; 60 minutes; VHS format. For ordering information, contact CBC Enterprises, Educational Sales, Box 500, Station A, Toronto, Ontario, Canada, M5W 1E6; (416) 975-3505.

2) "Acid-Free Paper," a 7-minute segment that aired March 1, 1990 on the Morning Edition of National Public Radio; features an interview with author Barbara Goldsmith. For ordering information contact National Public Radio, Custom Tape Service, Audience Services, 2025 M Street, NW, Washington, D.C. 20036; (202) 822-2323.

3) "Slow Fires," the award-winning film/video portraying the slow destruction of a large part of our nation's intellectual heritage due to embrittled books printed on acid-based paper; 30-minute or 60- minute version; VHS, 3/4-inch cassette or 16 mm film. Available for loan from the Commission. Copies may be purchased from the American Film Foundation, P.O. Box 2000, Santa Monica, CA 90406; (213) 459- 2116 or (213) 394-5689.

ALSO OF INTEREST:

A well-researched article on brittle books by Robert Wernick (popular writer for the *Smithsonian Magazine*) was published in recent *Reader's Digest* international editions (in French, *Selection*, and in German, *Das Beste*) with a combined circulation in the millions.

At the request of editor Charles Lowry, Norman Stevens, Director of University Libraries at the University of Connecticut, contributed an editorial, "Preservation — a Concern of Every Library and Every Librarian," that appeared in the Summer 1990 issue of *Library Administration & Management* (Library Administration and Management Association, 50 E. Huron St., Chicago, IL 60611).

"Decaying Books, Decaying Culture," was written by James Edwards for the July/August 1990 issue of *The National Book Collector* (National Book Collectors Society, 65 High Ridge Road, Suite 349, Stamford, CT 06905). An excerpt:

What does [acidic paper] mean to lovers of books? Basically, it means that we have a serious problem on our hands, and one that we must attempt to tackle not only as book collectors, but as custodians of cultural artifacts. Because, quite clearly, many of the books that become lost to the ravages of time will become lost forever. There is an attitude of something approaching intellectual smugness that sometimes makes people unable to accept this fact. Books cannot be "lost" in the true sense of the word, the thinking goes. Your copy many crumble to dust; hundreds of others exist elsewhere. This is simply untrue. There are hundreds if not thousands of books from the latter half of the nineteenth century which are virtually impossible to locate anywhere. . .

National Register of Preservation Microfilm Masters Moves Forward With Collaborative Efforts

The National Register of Microform Masters (NRMM) Retrospective Conversion Project, considered a significant step in building the infrastructure for national preservation programs, is moving forward through cooperative efforts of the Association of Research Libraries (ARL), the Library of Congress (LC), and the OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc. Under an agreement signed this summer, ARL, in partnership with LC, selected OCLC as the contractor for continuation of the NRMM. Published by LC from 1965 through 1983, the NRMM is a printed book catalog that includes catalog records for microform masters. The goal of this phase is the conversion into machine-readable records of the 400,000 monographic reports in the NRMM Master File that remain to be converted. The NRMM Project is made possible with funds from the National Endowment for the Humanities and the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation.

The current phase will create machine-readable records that meet acceptable standards for record consistency and fullness, thus enhancing access to preservation microform masters. The project also will help facilitate the searching that at present is an expensive step in the nationwide preservation microfilming program.

During the next 15 months, OCLC will convert about 258,000 bibliographic records, 30% of them not previously in machine-readable form. On behalf of research libraries, OCLC is making an $0.80 in-kind contribution to the price of each processed record. LC staff will conduct quality reviews to ensure that records conform to specifications established by ARL and LC. As the project proceeds, LC's Cataloging Distribution Service will distribute tapes containing the converted records on a subscription basis. OCLC's production schedule anticipates completing this phase by fall 1991.

NYS Support For Preservation Slated For Three-Year Increase

Legislation signed by New York State Governor Mario M. Cuomo on July 31 increases aid for preservation and conservation of endangered research materials in the state's 11 comprehensive research libraries from the current $90,000 per year to $102,000 in 1991-92, $115,000 in 1992-93, and $126,000 in 1993-94. Total preservation/conservation expenditures, now at $1.8 million, will grow to $2 million, $2.1 million, and $2.2 million over the next three years. The legislation brings total library aid in that state to $85-million over the three-year period. The legislation will become effective April 1, 1991. Funds for the increases will need to be included in the state's 1991-92 appropriations. According to State Librarian Joseph F. Schubert, the bill was sponsored by leaders of both houses of the legislature.

GPO Report Finds Alkaline Paper Prices to be Competitive

In April, the Government Printing Office (GPO) issued a report and plan, "Use of Alkaline Paper in Government Printing," prepared at the direction of the House Appropriations Committee. In the Executive Summary, the report states: "Fiscal year 1989 data shows that approximately 57 percent of the book-publishing and related papers purchased by GPO for in-house use and supplied to Federal agencies was produced by paper mills using alkaline production processes. This paper was purchased at prices that were competitive with acid paper, since GPO's paper procurement system is designed to purchase paper which is the least expensive grade available that meets the Government's needs. Approximately 40 percent of the total volume of paper used to produce contract printing for GPO is estimated to be alkaline."

The report also states that the implementation in 1989 of the Environmental Protection Agency guidelines on paper containing recovered materials does not appear to have adversely affected GPO's ability to obtain adequate supplies of alkaline paper.

A free copy of the report may be obtained by contacting: GPO Office of Public Affairs, STOP:PA, North Capitol and H Sts., NW, Washington, DC 20401, (202) 275-3541.

ALANET Users: Join Commission Distribution List

The Commission maintains a distribution list on ALANET, which it uses to communicate with libraries and editors/publishers. If you would like to be included on this distribution list, send your complete ALANET subscriber codes (both numeric and alphabetical) or your FAX number, as well as your name, mailing address, and phone number to Maxine Sitts. We will add you to the list to receive announcements such as advance press releases and notices of upcoming newsletters. The Commission's ALANET codes are: ALA2624 CPA.SITTS.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Number 28 **Newsletter** October 1990

TAAC Report: Preservation Technology Glossary

A structured glossary of technical terms describing the relationship between digital and other media conversion processes has been issued by the Commission. The glossary is one of a number of reports from the Commission's Technology Assessment Advisory Committee (TAAC) contributing to a common understanding of how preservation and access needs can be addressed by emerging technologies. M. Stuart Lynn, Vice President for Information Technologies, Cornell University, served as principal author, with assistance from TAAC members and others from the information technology and library professions.

Preservation and Access Technology. The Relationship Between Digital and Other Media Conversion Processes: A Structured Glossary of Technical Terms (August 1990, 68 pages) contains terms associated with the technologies of document *preservation*, with particular emphasis on document *media conversion* technologies (often called "reformatting technologies"), and even more particularly on the use of *digital computer* technologies.

Implications for the use of digital technologies that extend beyond the boundaries of preservation of and access to preserved materials are discussed in the introduction and again throughout the glossary.

As the Preface explains:

The glossary is not intended to be so comprehensive as to satisfy the technologist only concerned with technologies, or the librarian exclusively concerned with librarianship and preservation. It is intended to satisfy the intersection of their concerns. On the other hand, issues of preservation and access raise concepts that have implications for librarianship as a whole, so that, in that sense, this glossary has consequences that are not limited to the preservation arena alone.

Following an introduction that discusses the impact of digital technologies on the library profession, the glossary is divided into three main sections: The Original Document, the Selection Process, and the Preserved Copy. The latter is dealt with in the most detail. It, in turn, includes a number of subsections: The first defines the actual preservation or media conversion technologies that may be employed, and the remaining subsections are devoted to the various technologies employed in the different stages of preservation and access — capture, storage, access, distribution, and presentation. There also is a list of information sources and an index.

. . . *continued on page 3*

Institute Urges Stepped-up Pace for Preservation Education Activities

The Commission's Task Force on Preservation Education should pick up its work pace and begin a number of activities immediately to strengthen preservation education, according to the final report of the Preservation Education Institute held August 2-4, 1990, at Wye Plantation, Queenstown, MD (See June 1990 Newsletter). Library administrators, educators, archivists, network staff, and preservation specialists were invited to the institute to explore the possibilities of placing preservation in a more central position in library school curricula. Among the recommendations evolving from the 2-½ days of presentations and discussion sessions:

• A strong statement supporting the inclusion of preservation in the new standards should be sent to the Committee on Accreditation.

• The Dean's Council of ALISE (Association for Library and Information Science Education) should encourage the cause of preservation education.

• An action plan for preservation education should be developed by the Task Force on Preservation Education and widely disseminated to the professional community.

A sampling of ideas from the institute follows:

— **Preservation must become a state of mind**, a way of treating collections so they will survive to serve their intended purposes. Our greatest challenge, in practical terms, is to define preservation in clear and commonly agreed-upon language. Since public libraries and historical societies house important research materials, it is inadequate to define preservation in terms of research libraries.

—David B. Gracy II, Professor, Graduate School of Library and Information Science, University of Texas at Austin

. . . *continued on page 4*

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

Getting on With The Work of Preservation

Recent news reflects a growing number of operational collaborative preservation activities. From the national perspective, it appears that the broadened preservation agenda has moved from a period of generating interest and support, planning, and research, into a time of solidifying positions, building foundations, and "getting on with the work." The following developments are cases in point for an increasing cooperative capacity to manage preservation challenges.

The Medieval Academy of America

The Medieval Academy of America has formed a Library Preservation Committee to initiate and coordinate projects to preserve the contents of embrittled scholarly publications important to the future of medieval studies. The committee, composed of eight scholars and librarians, holds its first meeting October 19 and 20 in Washington, DC.

The activation of such a committee was a major point of agreement during a colloquium on preservation issues in medieval studies, held March 25 and 26, 1990, at the University of Notre Dame (See May 1990 Newsletter). At that time, 15 scholars from the United States and Canada concluded that a coordinated preservation effort for medieval studies should be "urgently undertaken," and that it should be helped along by a committee of The Medieval Academy.

Recommendations from the March colloquium included the following:

The committee's first task will be to identify concentrated and accessible collections in the various areas of medieval studies . . . in cooperation with the Research Libraries Group and with the aid of its Conspectus. It might also be wise to survey the Academy's membership to gain a concrete sense of which materials and collections have been most used by medievalists.

. . . The preservation of collections is the business of the institutions that own them. These institutions will need to seek funds from public and private sources in order to carry out preservation projects. The committee will work with the institutions to construct complementary preservation programs and to resist the diffusion of efforts. . . . The committee must ensure that the projects' bibliographic records and the reformatted works themselves are made available promptly for wide scholarly use.

The March colloquium was cosponsored by The Medieval Institute and College of Arts and Letters of the University of Notre Dame, The Medieval Academy of America, and the Commission. Members of the new committee are: Mark Jordan (Chair), University of Notre Dame; Steven Horwitz, University of California, Berkeley; Christopher Kleinhenz, University of Wisconsin; Lillian Randall, Walters Art Museum; Fred Robinson, Yale University; Susanne Roberts, Yale University; and Jan Ziolkowski, Harvard University.

The American Theological Library Association

— by Albert E. Hurd, Executive Director

The Preservation Programs of the American Theological Library Association (ATLA) emphasize preservation in microformat of serials and nineteenth century monographs. Any library (ATLA member or non-member) may participate through the Preservation Filming in Religion (PREFIR) Membership and Subscription Program.

ATLA has been engaged in preservation filming of serial and monographic literature in Religion and Theology for 35 years. For more than 20 years the program concentrated on the filming of serials on 35 mm roll microfilm. In the 1970s it began to experiment with the preservation of monographs in microfiche format. In 1978 ATLA established an Ad-Hoc Committee for the Preservation of Theological Materials to study and determine the size of theological subject collections, published between the years

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

1850 and 1929, within ATLA member libraries. This study, completed in 1981, indicated that more than 258,000 volumes were at risk and in need of preservation due to acidic paper. These results were used to plan and implement ATLA's Nineteenth Century Monograph Preservation Program in 1985.

The ATLA Monographic Preservation Program uses 48x microfiche for monographs. In using 48x microfiche, the program aims to make titles readily available at reasonable costs to both scholars and libraries. The monographic part of the program has cataloged and filmed more than 14,000 monograph titles on 48x microfiche during the past five years. Titles filmed are from an annual subject bibliography developed by the project bibliographer and provided to the program from a number of cooperating and participating libraries.

The ATLA Serials Program makes available in microformat both embrittled nineteenth century serials and current serials. Currently we make available more than 1,000 serials on 35 mm microfilm. Together, the literature filmed to date by the Monograph Preservation Program and the Serials Program documents nearly every major denomination in the United States, Canada, and Great Britain.

The program stresses the dissemination of its materials by providing access through a printed catalog, National Register of Microform Masters, and the major online catalogs: OCLC, RLIN, Utlas, and the National Union Catalog. A majority of the ATLA Preservation Program costs are supported through subscription sales. In addition, funding from the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation and private foundations has helped sustain the annual filming schedule.

For more information, contact Albert Hurd, ATLA, 820 Church St., 3rd Floor, Evanston, IL 60201.

The University of Pennsylvania

The University of Pennsylvania has begun the first phase of its new preservation planning project by assembling a broad range of information about its collections and the spaces housing the collections. Much of this information-gathering is being done with the cooperation and support of local regional preservation organizations. (See March 1990 Newsletter.)

Condition surveys in many of the university's 26 rare and special collections are being carried out by staff members from the Conservation Center for Art and Historic Artifacts, while staff from the Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service have reviewed Penn's microform collections to develop recommendations for their long-term preservation. In addition, books at Van Pelt Library, departmental libraries, and the storage collection are undergoing a statistical condition survey by library staff members H. Carton Rogers, Director of Technical Services; Bernard Ford, Assistant Director, Collection Management;, and Consultant Peter Sparks.

Penn's preservation project, funded by the Commission and the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, has two major goals. The first is the formulation of a plan for the preservation of the university's collections using a broad, strategic approach that considers not only local needs, but also regional and national programs, and that explores the full range of currently available preservation technologies and how their technical trade-offs can affect long-term preservation decisions. The second goal is the articulation of a management strategy in which a small internal staff works in concert with regional preservation service organizations, which in turn develop service programs to supply resources needed by the university to operate its preservation program.

The State of Colorado

Librarians, archivists, curators, genealogists, records managers, public officials, a others interested in the preservation of cultural and historical resources of Colorado were invited to the first annual meeting of the Colorado Preservation Alliance on September 10. Bylaws for the alliance were presented for approval at the meeting, which was held at the Aurora Public Library. Nancy Bolt, state librarian, presented a certificate of appreciation to State Senator Harold McCormick for his work to require the use of acid-free paper for legislative publications. Other scheduled topics: practical paper conservation and a review of activities for Archives Day, September 21.

TAAC Report *continued from page 1*

As with other Commission reports, the glossary is intended as a conceptual document to promote further discussion and research. The Introduction suggests that "one measure of success for the glossary will be the extent to which it stimulates additional work in the field, including refinements of the glossary itself."

Complimentary copies have been mailed to the Commission's entire mailing list. Additional copies are available at no cost to Commission sponsors and for $5.00 to others. (Prepayment via check — U.S. funds only — to "Commission on Preservation and Access.")

Preservation Education *continued from page 1*

— All library schools will need to have a preservation component in the curriculum, but it may vary depending upon the emphasis. Some 500 to 700 large libraries are likely to have a conservation/preservation unit in the future, and several thousand smaller libraries should have at least some capability of dealing with preservation. Library schools should think of imaginative continuing education courses, short courses, and work-study opportunities in addition to established courses.

—Joseph Rosenthal, Library Director, University of California at Berkeley

— Within college libraries, preservation librarians should know about organizational structure. They should be able to create their own support systems, serve as change agents, and perform a number of different functions. There also is a need to raise consciousness among college libraries that they have important collections.

—Michele Cloonan, Preservation Libranan, Brown University; and Kathleen Moretto-Spencer, Library Director, Franklin & Marshall College

The Preservation Education Institute was conducted by The Catholic University of America's School of Library and Information Science, under contract with the Commission. Its agenda was built on previous nationwide explorations of preservation education, including an October 1988 meeting sponsored by the Commission and a series of issues raised by the Preservation Education Task Force during its first two meetings earlier this year. A report from the institute is being distributed to all those on the Commission's mailing list.

Preservation Environment Featured in *Facilities Manager*

The Association of Physical Plant Administrators of Universities and Colleges (APPA) is publishing an article, "The Library Environment and the Preservation of Library Materials," by Carolyn L. Harris and Paul N. Banks, in the Fall 1990 issue of its quarterly professional magazine, *Facilities Manager*, mailed to APPA members early this month. The article is one of two cooperative activities of APPA and the Commission to increase communication among physical plant and library/archives staffs regarding environmental conditions for housing of library and archival materials. The second undertaking is a "Preservation of Library and Archival Materials" workshop February 28-March 1, 1991, in Washington, DC.

Copies of the magazine are available for $5.00 (enclose check or purchase order) from: APPA, Attn. Publications, 1446 Duke St., Alexandria, VA 22314-3492. Workshop brochures also are available from APPA. The Commission can provide reprints of the article at no cost.

Newsletter Distribution Update

Beginning in November 1990, this newsletter's distribution will change slightly. **Commission sponsors will receive an advance copy of the newsletter, mailed first-class.** In addition, all addresses on the current mailing list will receive ONE copy of the newsletter, mailed via bulk rate. In the past, library directors had been receiving two copies to be shared among staff. However, in response to numerous requests, the subscription base has been expanded to include multiple addresses within institutions.

You can help reduce the Commission's mailing costs by notifying us of unwanted subscriptions and by sending address corrections and changes to Trish Cece, Communications Assistant. Please include your old address label with your request.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

THE COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NUMBER 29 NEWSLETTER NOV-DEC 1990

AALL COMPLETES MICROPUBLISHER SURVEY PRETEST

Included as an insert to this newsletter is the final report from the American Association of Law Libraries (AALL), with which the Commission contracted in summer 1989 to pretest a form for surveying companies, agencies, and libraries that produce and store first-generation master negatives. The survey covers microform production and quality control, storage of first-generation master negative film, storage containers and enclosures, and inspection of stored first-generation negatives. (For more information, see the August 1989 and March 1990 Commission newsletters.)

According to Willis C. Meredith and Naomi Ronen of the Harvard Law Library, who conducted site visits to seven micropublishers representing 12 different companies:

The opportunity to have face-to-face discussions with production personnel at a variety of companies allowed us to improve the survey form. The information gathered by this form will be essential to future preservation planning on a national level.

The pretest demonstrated the need for a comprehensive survey. The answers that we received from the companies in the pretest and our discussions with production personnel show that there can be major differences between the standards used for the production and storage of master negatives for commercial purposes and for preservation. It must be a priority to determine what these differences are.

All the publishers that we talked with were eager to discuss these differences as well as the ways that they can work with preservation librarians. Given the importance of this discussion for preservation, we suggest the immediate investigation of how to continue and expand the sharing of ideas and concerns started by the pretest.

The Commission has distributed advance copies of the report and draft survey form to nearly 100 persons on its mailing list.

SCANNING & AUTOMATIC FORMAT RECOGNITION NOT YET VIABLE

A research project conducted under a Commission contract to the Research Libraries Group, Inc., (RLG) has concluded that the tested scanning and automatic format recognition (AFR) technology cannot be considered at this time as a viable mechanism for converting printed bibliographic records into machine-readable MARC format. By establishing as fact what can and cannot be accomplished currently, the project results represent a significant contribution to our knowledge of available technological options for the conversion of preservation search tools. Tests were conducted with Optiram Automation Ltd., London, the only company currently identified with a system that might be capable of dealing with the complexities of library catalog records. For the tests:

Optiram was supplied with photocopies — one card per page — of 300 cards, 50 from each of six RLG-member libraries. The quality of the source data varied widely, from clean, well-typed cards with consistent layout, to manuscript cards. Many had smudges and erasures, handwritten annotations in any available space, and words or numbers written across the hole. Some appeared to be on buff or blue stock, so that photocopying only exacerbated their native illegibility. In short, they were normal cards to be found in any library catalog more than 25 years old (and some much younger).

RLG concluded that content designation problems were not solved for the test, and that the premise that Optiram's combination of scanning and AFR might provide a straightforward means of creating directly usable MARC records from printed source material was not validated. RLG plans to pursue investigation of a centrally managed mass reconversion program that would combine scanning and AFR capabilities with vendor-supplied post-processing and authority work.

Copies of the two-page project report are available from Trish Cece, Communications Assistant.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036 • (202) 483-7474

New Report on Copyright and Preservation

The copyright implications of large-scale preservation and access programs are explored in a paper prepared for the Commission by Robert L. Oakley, Director of the Law Library and Professor of Law at the Georgetown University Law Center in Washington, D.C. *Copyright and Preservation: A Serious Problem in Need of a Thoughtful Solution* addresses the specific concerns and issues of copyright compliance arising from the unprecedented massive reformatting of deteriorating books and journals printed on acid paper.

Oakley reviews the sections of the copyright law covering the copying of printed materials for preservation purposes and emphasizes the fact that the current copyright law does not include provisions for the distribution of information in electronic format. In addition to a comprehensive review of the copyright law and subsequent judicial interpretations, Oakley proposes a number of alternative means to protect intellectual rights while providing, at the same time, expanded access to preserved materials.

According to Oakley, congressional revision of the current law is unlikely without a consensus among the library and publishing communities on the importance of the problem and the appropriateness of the proposed changes to the Copyright Act. The 65-page paper has been distributed to the Commission's U.S. mailing list. Additional copies are available for $15.00. Orders must be prepaid, with checks (no cash) made payable to "The Commission on Preservation and Access." Payment must be in U.S. funds.

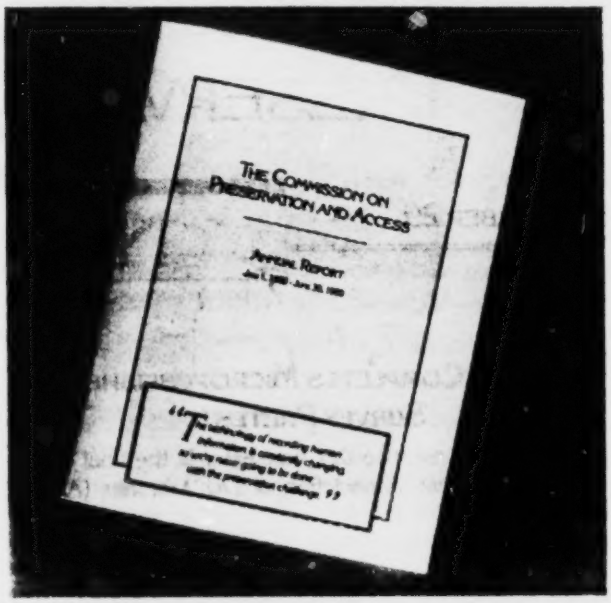
The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via ALANET (ALA2624) and BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

Annual Report Distributed



The 1989-90 Annual Report of the Commission has been distributed to all those on its mailing list. The 49-page report describes the work of the Commission from July 1, 1989, through June 30, 1990, and features a special section on progress being made with the technical assessment agenda. The support of the Commission's expanded base of 36 sponsors is acknowledged in the report, which is dedicated to the many activists and funding agencies, both public and private, whose sustained efforts remain essential to the collaborative successes of the preservation and access movement. Additional copies are available at no cost while supplies last from Trish Cece, Communications Assistant.

Mass Deacidification in Research Libraries

Mass Deacidification Systems: Planning and Managerial Decision Making — a 24-page report by Karen Turko, Head of Preservation Service, University of Toronto — is now available from the Association of Research Libraries (ARL). The preface states: "Only a few ARL libraries have embarked on a planning process for the deacidification of their collections on a large scale. While the challenges facing libraries are substantial, limited progress has been made in resolving basic managerial and operational issues. During this critical transition period, it is important to identify and examine these issues and to analyze different available options. This report is intended to aid in that process by looking at mass deacidification from a management perspective. It explores issues such as selection of material for treatment, collection management, and financial considerations." Copies are available for $15.00 (prepaid) from: ARL, 1527 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, DC 20036.

A RESEARCH REVIEW:

PAPER STRENGTHENING AT THE BRITISH LIBRARY

The following research review was prepared at the Commission's request by Peter G. Sparks as one follow-up to the *Directory of Information Sources on Scientific Research*, March 1990.

"Paper Strengthening at the British Library: Recent Developments in the Graft Copolymerization Technique," by C.E. Butler, D.W.G. Clements and C.A. Millington, in *Preservation and Technology: Proceedings of a Seminar at York University, 20-21 July, 1988*, pp. 65-74, (National Preservation Office Seminar Papers, 3) ISBN 0 7123 01720.

This report should be definite reading for preservation officers and librarians interested in following technical developments in the use of multiple treatment processes for the strengthening of paper bound in books. The authors present a review of the theoretical approach, early laboratory and pilot plant studies, library requirements, and key results and conclusions to date, all of which raise several questions and whet the appetite for more information, which is promised in the future.

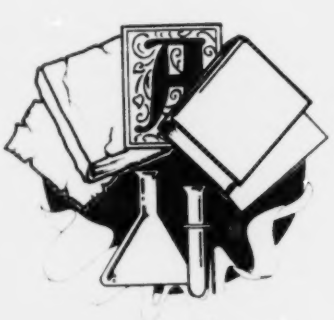
After a brief historical introduction the paper moves into an explanation of how the process works. Every page in the book needs to be impregnated with a mixture of two different liquid chemicals (monomers) which are then polymerized, using gamma radiation, to a solid copolymer which is claimed to be chemically bonded (grafted) to the cellulose molecules of the paper. This combination of a significant level of solid copolymer in the paper (15 to 20% by weight) and the bonding of the copolymer to the cellulose lends strength to the weakened paper. Later in the paper, under conclusions, the authors note that adequate impregnation time is needed to get a good distribution of the liquids in the pages and that it is essential for all volumes to receive the same gamma radiation dose in order to get a good result. These two requirements should generate some interesting trade-offs in solubility effects of the monomers on inks and adhesives and should make also for some special book handling procedures. Some ongoing work with book handling is mentioned, and the presence of solvent effects is acknowledged as manageable. A passing reference is made to the possibility of combining deacidification into the process but this notion is not elaborated upon as part of the active experimental program.

It is clear from the data presented that the process can achieve an adequate level and a uniform distribution of polymer within a book, and also show reproducible polymer loading between similar or different books in a pilot plant trial. Polymer loading accounts for a 15 to 20% increase in the book's weight. These positive results are very important because the process could not be seriously considered for further development without them.

The paper strengthening data are worth careful study. These data are from early studies and show fold strength enhancement for a variety of papers in the range of 5 to 10 times. The interesting observation is that none of the paper samples went into the treatment in a truly brittle condition, i.e., with an MIT fold equal to or less than 1. The lowest initial fold values were 8 and 9, and the highest 295. Conclusion five notes that good increases were observed in most papers but that results were variable when the paper's initial fold value was less than ten.

One is led by this to ask the question of just how effective will this process, or for that matter will any strengthening process, be in adding flexural strength to really brittle papers? Maybe what we are really talking about is strengthening just the weak-to-moderate-strength papers that are not yet brittle. The latter is a very important task that will keep the already enormous mound of brittle books from getting larger; however, strengthening may not be able to delay significantly the need to transfer information on existing brittle papers to another preservation format. The library preservation field could use some more data and discussion on this point in order to clarify the issue.

The paper does mention that some further studies are being done at a testing laboratory to observe the effects of the treatment on the long-term aging characteristics of treated papers, and that initial results are encouraging. All in all the paper does a good job at showing the nature and the complexity of the effort needed to iron out the details of establishing a workable mass treatment process. The authors should be encouraged to keep publishing the scientific results of this important project so the library preservation field can continue to benefit from their future work.



—Paper Progress—

House Passes H.J. Res. 226 on Permanent Paper

H.J. Res. 226, establishing a national policy on permanent paper, was passed by the House by voice vote on September 17. The Senate approved the House amendment on September 26. The bill is being sent to the President for his signature.

Rep. Pat Williams (D-MT) introduced H.J. Res. 226, which is the House version of S.J. Res. 57 passed by the Senate in July 1989. S.J. Res. 57 was introduced by Sen. Claiborne Pell (D-RI). Both of these resolutions promote and encourage the printing of books of enduring value on alkaline paper.

Comments From the Paper Industry

On August 1 and 2, the House Administration Subcommittee on Procurement and Printing, chaired by Rep. Jim Bates (D-CA), held hearings on HR 4523, the Congressional Recycling Act of 1990, to require Congress to purchase recycled paper products to the greatest extent practicable. One of the witnesses, Thomas Norris of P.H. Glatfelter Co., representing the American Paper Institute, noted that acid-free recycled paper was available and that the requirements for the use of recycled and permanent paper could be accommodated without conflict.

> —from *ALA Washington Newsletter*, August 15, 1990, page 2 (published by the American Library Association's Washington, DC, office)

Recently, there's been a lot of discussion about the growth of acid-free papermaking in the United States. Many paper manufacturers have already converted to this process; more are planning to do so in the near future. In fact, many industry experts predict that almost half our paper capacity will be alkaline by the end of 1990. . . . [A]rchival quality has long been important to book publishers, libraries, governments and others interested in materials that withstand the ravages of time. However, this permanence factor is now becoming important in other areas as well. Increased litigation and continued regulation of many industries mandate efficient records management. More permanent documents can be important in legal and financial matters. . . .

> — From *Alkaline Papermaking · The Wave of the Future*, Brochure (1990, 10 pp.) from Hammermill Papers, 6400 Poplar Avenue, Memphis, TN 38197-7000

Without giving it a second thought, ten generations of Americans lost a basic freedom which has yet to be totally regained. When paper went acid, written records and images became destined for eventual destruction. The further our societies advanced, the more we destroyed the evidence of our progress. From the viewpoint of history, volumes of knowledge, wisdom and creativity may as well have never been recorded. . . .

. . . . As both a high-performance industry and a group of concerned citizens, the paper industry should lead the permanence issue and define it by matching customer needs and wants and setting new standards for quality, performance, and the environment. . . . The industry can provide the leadership to step out in front on the issue. Time is of the essence.

> —Martin Koepenick, Innova International (a company providing public affairs counsel on global market issues and having extensive dealings in the pulp and paper industry), "Permanent paper: The freedom to choose," in *PIMA* (Paper Industry Management Association), January 1990, pp.21-24.

ARL Publishes Updated Alkaline Briefing Package

The Association of Research Libraries (ARL) has published a revised and updated version of the 1988 ARL Briefing Package entitled *Preserving Knowledge: The Case for Alkaline Paper*. The publication was produced collaboratively with the support of the Commission, the American Library Association and the National Humanities Alliance. The paperbound book includes the following sections: Overview and Background, Paper Industry Developments, Library Community Initiatives, Author and Publisher Support, Federal and State Government Responses, Standards, and Fact Sheets. Complimentary copies were mailed to the Commission's sponsors. Copies are being sold by ARL, 1527 New Hampshire Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20036.

NEWSLETTER INSERT

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF LAW LIBRARIES/ RESEARCH LIBRARIES GROUP MICROFORM MASTER SURVEY:

REPORT ON THE SURVEY FORM PRETEST TO THE COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

Submitted by

Willis C. Meredith
and
Naomi Ronen

September 11, 1990

REPORT TO THE COMMISSION

In the spring of 1989, the Commission on Preservation and Access contracted with the American Association of Law Libraries (AALL) to pretest a survey form that will be used in a worldwide survey of companies, agencies and libraries that produce and store first generation master negatives. In the pretest process, draft survey forms were to be mailed to 7 publishers representing approximately 12 different companies, and site visits were to be made to 7 different production facilities. The information and suggestions gathered by this process were to be used to evaluate the effectiveness of the form and to determine if changes were needed.

The pretest is complete.

The survey form was developed by the Preservation Committee of the Research Libraries Group and the Special Committee on the Preservation Needs of Law Libraries of the American Association of Law Libraries. In the first step of the pretest process, forms were sent out to four publishers who had agreed to participate. They were asked to fill out the form and add their comments, suggestions and criticisms. This information was used to redraft the form. The form was then sent out again to the original four participants and three additional companies, and site visits were scheduled to each company. The site visits allowed face to face discussions of the form with production personnel and first hand observation of the production processes. After the site visits were completed, the form was revised a final time. The form has been sent to the Research Libraries Group.

The purpose of the pretest was to improve the form, insure that it would gather the information needed and eliminate as many instances of ambiguous and poor wording as possible. Companies completed forms with the understanding that company-specific information would not be published as part of the pretest report. This condition facilitated the sharing of ideas and information. As it turned out, most of the companies involved felt that the information gathered did not reflect poorly on their companies. In any case, only summaries of responses are given. In addition, the sample was not selected randomly and the results of the pretest cannot be used to determine the percentage of microfilmers using any particular production method or standard. A goal of the full survey will be to gather the information needed to make this assessment.

It should also be stated at the outset that commercial micropublishers do not necessarily see themselves as being in the preservation business. They are in business to produce a quality product for sale. They also have a self interest in producing a quality master negative since the master negative is the principal asset of the company.

The pretest and the discussions with company personnel did demonstrate several facts about the survey process, and suggested topics that should be discussed in the context of national preservation efforts.

First, the results of the pretest suggest that there are many variations on a theme in the world of commercial micropublication. Practices on almost every aspect of production, storage and access can vary from company to company. The complexity of the applicable standards and the economics of publication and distribution almost guarantee that there will be permutations. The commercial publishers surveyed in the pretest stated that they <u>are</u> concerned with standards for production and storage, but that they also have to be concerned with the economics of production and sales.

This means that while a publisher may follow industry standards, the company probably does not follow preservation standards for the production and storage of master negatives. The purpose of the survey will be to determine the differences between industry and preservation standards, if any.

Second, we can only rely on the information gathered by the survey form to a certain extent. The survey form was only partially successful in pinpointing the areas of difference and providing a complete picture of company policy and production procedures. Information gathered by the form will paint a broad picture. A form of any reasonable length cannot, however, follow the step by step production process in the detail necessary to understand important differences. This was confirmed repeatedly by the site visits. Therefore, the results from the full survey will be indicative rather than definitive.

Third, compliance with standards can be dependent on the degree to which others in the chain comply: filmers are dependent on film and chemical manufacturers, publishers on storage firms, and librarians on filmers, for example. In other words the survey collects information from the libraries, publishers and other companies that produce microfilm. We did not visit storage facilities that are run as independent companies to see that the standards are being met or that measurements are being taken accurately. Another example is testing for residual thiosulfate done by independent laboratories. All of these are outside the scope of this survey, but should be concerns for the future.

Fourth, the information gathered in this pretest and in any future larger scale surveys should be considered the **starting point** for commercial publisher/preservation administrator/library community discussions on these and other issues. Scholarly micropublication should be a component in the effort to reformat brittle materials for preservation, but there are important concerns for libraries and for micropublishers that must be addressed. Most importantly, there is a need for better communication and understanding.

Many publishers are aware of the preservation efforts going on in this country and around the world. Some, in fact, are now offering contract preservation microfilming services. On the other hand, some publishers are not fully informed about the issues and concerns of the library community for the security of and access to master negatives. Two publishers stated that the survey form brought home to them for the first time the nature of the preservation problem and the national responsibility of the company for the security of master negatives. Another publisher was aware of the issues but could not afford to store master negatives under secure conditions. That publisher was very interested in discussions of possible central storage for master negatives.

Other publishers expressed concern about possible misunderstanding of their business practices. They stated that they produce a quality product that in their opinion meets standards in all important instances, and that they could insure this with less testing than is called for in the standards.

As we try to resolve important issues of standards for preservation microfilm and the relation of scholarly micropublication to preservation, we need to know what the differences are. The survey will provide a broad picture of what is done by all parties concerned. The pretest sug-

gests that the full survey will find that there are similarities between the production of microfilm for scholarly publication and for preservation, but there are differences as well arising from differing needs and concerns. The publishers contacted are eager to talk about their business and work with the library community. If nothing else, the survey will raise the level of understanding on the part of publishers and of librarians alike of what the other is doing and why.

The original intent of this project was to pretest a form. During that process, however, we talked with corporate officers, production managers and plant personnel at seven companies. For us, this has been an educational experience as well, and many of the people we talked with felt the same. The process was also congenial. One early concern was that the survey might be seen as a library preservation versus commercial publisher enterprise. This was not so. Publishers were eager and proud rather than defensive about demonstrating their procedures and products. They were also very interested in a continuing dialog about preservation concerns.

We strongly suggest that an appropriate and pressing next step is to explore ways to continue and to expand the dialog and sharing of concerns started by the pretest.

The remainder of the report deals with specific recommendations for the survey process.

—Collaborative Preservation Projects—

NEH Support for Statewide, Institutional Collaboration

Several of the grants announced recently by the National Endowment for the Humanities are supporting collaborative efforts to preserve the knowledge in deteriorating library and archival materials. All together, NEH's Office of Preservation announced more than $7.2 million in new grants involving projects at 23 institutions located in 15 states, the District of Columbia, and the U.S. Virgin Islands.

The first grants in a new category that supports the development of comprehensive statewide preservation plans were awarded to the Massachusetts Board of Library Commissioners, the Nebraska Library Commission, and the North Carolina Preservation Consortium.

Thirteen museums and libraries nationwide are participating in a collaborative project of the Research Libraries Group, Inc. NEH funding will support the microfilming of 2,000 volumes of late 19th-century and early 20th-century art periodicals important to research in the history of art and architecture.

The Southeastern Library Network, Inc., received a grant of over $1.25 million to microfilm over 18,000 brittle books and serials held by 12 institutions in six southeastern states.

Five projects receiving grants are part of the Endowment's longstanding United States Newspaper Program, a coordinated effort to locate, preserve on microfilm, and catalog in a national database the 250,000 newspapers published in this country since 1690. Organized on a state-by-state basis, the program benefits from the cooperation of the Library of Congress and the Online Computer Library Center. Four grants enable continued participation in Iowa, Maryland, Missouri, and New York. The fifth grant will enable Oklahoma to begin participating.

Pennsylvania Consortium Develops Preservation Guide

The Oakland Library Consortium, composed of The Carnegie Library of Pittsburgh, the University of Pittsburgh Library System, and the Carnegie Mellon University Libraries, has published a basic introduction to preservation entitled *Preserving Library Resources: A Guide for Staff*. Prepared by the Consortium's Standing Committee on Preservation, the booklet is geared for staff who may not otherwise receive training in preservation. Full and part-time staff in departments such as circulation, reference, periodicals and stack maintenance can benefit from the guide, according to the consortium. Copies can be purchased from the Oakland Library Consortium at Hunt Library, Room 302, Carnegie Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA 15213-3890. Quantity discounts are available.

Southwest Preservation Capacity Grows

AMIGOS Bibliographic Council, Inc., has begun developing a preservation service that will provide information, training, and consultation to libraries and archives in Arizona, Arkansas, New Mexico, Oklahoma, and Texas, using a $160,000 grant from the National Endowment for the Humanities. AMIGOS' new preservation service is expected to serve as a catalyst to subregional and state-based preservation planning initiatives in the southwest.

Newsletter Distribution Update

Beginning this month, this newsletter's distribution changes slightly. **Commission sponsors are receiving an advance copy of the newsletter, mailed first-class.** All addresses on the current mailing list (including sponsors) are receiving one copy of the newsletter, mailed nonprofit rate.

You can help reduce the Commission's mailing costs by notifying us of unwanted subscriptions and by sending address corrections and changes to Trish Cece, Communications Assistant. Please include your old address label with your request.

122

PRESERVATION IN THE MEDIA

As preservation continues to capture the attention of more segments of society, it has become the subject of a growing number of articles and videos produced by the business community. In many cases, these productions can be used to help inform others about preservation and access issues. For example, available at no (or low) cost are:

— In *The Electric Library* (OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.) Benjamin Franklin visits a library of today. He finds remarkable similarities and differences when he compares libraries from 1731 to the libraries of 1990. Electronic possibilities for preservation and access are considered. Contact Tom Clareson at OCLC (1-614-764-6000) to obtain a free copy.

— In *Providing a Future for the Past*, University Microfilms International describes how books, newspapers, and archives printed on acid paper are prone to decay and offers a look at preservation microfilming as a cost-effective solution to a growing problem. Contact Tina Creuguer at UMI (1-800-521-0600, ext. 805) to obtain a free copy. (In Canada, 1-800-343-5299.)

— In "On the Edge of the Digital Decade" (Fall 1990 *Benchmark*, a quarterly magazine for Xerox customers), a full-page sidebar "A Marriage of the Digital and Paper Worlds," describes the newly instituted demonstration project sponsored jointly by the Commission, Xerox Corporation, and Cornell University (see August 1990 Commission newsletter). Contact *Benchmark*'s editor, at Xerox Corporation, 101 Continental Blvd., ESC1-502, El Segundo, CA 90245-4899 to obtain a copy.

We have this highly sophisticated maneuver where for $20 or whatever you can go out and buy this thing that looks like a tile. You open it up and see black on white. It makes no sound, but you have this weird communion with it, and the marks make a noise in the brain. And you stage in your mind's eye a whole psychodrama for hours and hours. Isn't that weird?

—Author Paul West, as quoted in *The Washington Post*'s Book Review Section.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Providing Access To The Accumulated Human Record As Far Into The Future As Possible

Number 30

Newsletter

January 1991

Pioneering Preservation Supporter Warren J. Haas Retires

Warren J. Haas, who retired as President of the Council on Library Resources (CLR) at the end of last year, was honored by the Commission's Board at its October meeting for his crucial and instrumental role in conceptualizing, founding, and persistently supporting and advocating the cause of the Commission. Under Haas' leadership, CLR became a pivotal force behind the evolution of a nationwide (and international) preservation agenda. He began his association with CLR in 1974, when he was elected to the Board of Directors. He was named president of CLR in 1978, coming to the Council from Columbia University, where he had served as university librarian and vice president for information services.

Haas was instrumental in facilitating the efforts of the higher education community as it lay the groundwork for a national preservation agenda. The blueprint for much of today's preservation activity at the national level is found in the document *Brittle Books*, which was the culmination of 18 months of committee work sponsored by CLR under Haas' direction. In a festschrift, *Influencing Change in Research Librarianship* (Washington, DC: Council on Library Resources, Inc., 1988), Haas is credited with an array of preservation accomplishments, among them:

- *Successful solicitation of more than a million dollars in funding commitments for the work of the Commission from a variety of important universities and foundations;*
- *CLR support for an international conference of library directors in Vienna on the subject of preservation, under the auspices of the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions;*
- *Creation, from concept to national broadcast on public television, of the award-winning "Slow Fires" preservation film, and its wide distribution and use in both film and videocassette formats;*
- *Involvement with Congress in a process that led first to subcommittee hearings and finally, in September 1988, to approval by Congress of a bill nearly tripling funding of the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation.*

The chapter's conclusion sums up his contributions well: "Thus, of the many things that Jim Haas has done during nearly forty years in his chosen profession, preservation must rank as one of his greatest and hardest-won successes. . . . The end result of his efforts in preservation and access will have fundamental and far-reaching effects on the way research libraries work for both librarian and user."

TAAC Report: Technology Assessments, Demonstration Projects Move Ahead

The Technology Assessment Advisory Committee (TAAC) continues to progress with its two main goals: the development of analytic and conceptual papers, and the identification and support of research and demonstration projects related to preservation and access technologies. At a November 2 meeting, TAAC welcomed as a new member, Peter Lyman, Executive Director of The Center for Scholarly Technology, Edward L. Doheny Memorial Library, University of Southern California. The committee also reviewed an early draft of a committee report that will address telecommunications technologies and networks for improving access to digitally stored materials.

In another technology initiative, the Commission contracted with Yale University in November 1990 for a three-month study to explore the feasibility of a major, multi-year project to convert microfilmed texts to digital images and to provide access to the converted information. The contract calls for the initial study to analyze requirements and costs of the larger project and prepare a detailed plan of work. The multi-year project would provide both intra- and inter-institutional access to the stored images, and also would consider the broader implications for enhanced intellectual access to digitized scholarly materials. The initial three-month study is being directed by Dr. Donald Waters, Head of the Systems Office at Yale University Library.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117 • (202) 483-7474

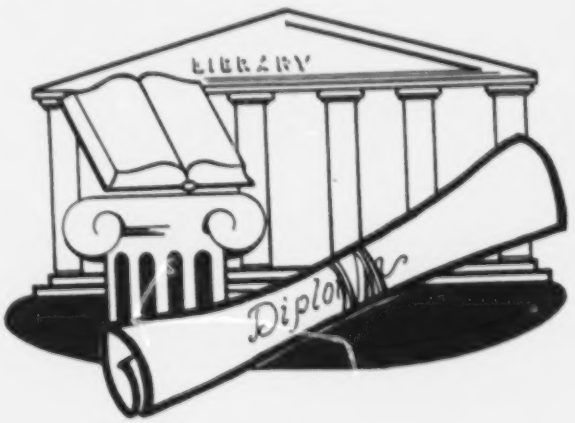
March 15 Deadline set for Applications to Preservation Training Seminar for College Librarians

The date and location for the Preservation Training Seminar for College Librarians, developed collaboratively by the SOLINET Preservation Program and the Commission's College Libraries Committee, have been announced. The event will be held July 20 - July 27, 1991, at Washington & Lee University, Lexington, VA.

Attendance is limited, with registrants to be selected by the College Libraries Committee on an application basis. The deadline for applications is March 15, 1991, with notification to successful applicants no later than April 15, 1991. The Commission will award one scholarship to a qualified attendee. Costs for tuition, room, and board are expected to be $1,200. Application information is available from: SOLINET Preservation Program, 400 Colony Square, Plaza Level, Atlanta, GA 30361-6301. (800)999-8558.

The eight-day seminar is a comprehensive training program for college librarians with part-time preservation responsibility. The program's design and content have been developed jointly by SOLINET trainers and the College Libraries Committee over the past 15 months. One of the major goals of the seminar is to prepare staff to enable college libraries to plan and implement coherent and effective preservation programs appropriate to their needs and resources. The seminar includes modules on: Introduction to Preservation Management, Nature of Library Materials, Environment, Disaster Preparedness, Security, Care and Handling of Library Materials, Library Binding, Physical Treatments, Reformatting, Treatment Decision-Making, and Planning a Preservation Program.

College Libraries Committee members are the following library directors: Willis E. Bridegam, Amherst College; Barbara J. Brown, Washington & Lee University; Joel Clemmer, Macalester College; David Cohen, College of Charleston; Caroline M. Coughlin, Drew University; Michael Haeuser, Gustavus Adolphus College; Jacquelyn M. Morris, Occidental College; and Kathleen Moretto Spencer, Franklin & Marshall College (chair).



The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) electronic mail systems, and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

Task Force on Preservation Education Developing Final Report

The Task Force on Preservation Education used its November 12, 1990, meeting to advance its final report, which will take into account the recommendations from the Preservation Education Institute held August 2-4, 1990, at Wye Center, Queenstown, MD. Activities already underway either by private consultants or sections of the American Library Association were noted, and the task force concluded that information already being collected should be used whenever possible, rather than trying to undertake independent efforts.

Among other considerations, the task force will be addressing possibilities for curriculum offerings, continuing education, a preservation research base, and the development of faculty to teach preservation. The final report will be drafted in March and then submitted to the Commission. Task Force members are deans and faculty of library schools: Deanna Marcum (chair), Catholic University of America; Sally Buchanan, University of Pittsburgh; David Gracy II, University of Texas at Austin; Carolyn Harris, Columbia University; Beverly Lynch, University of California, Los Angeles; and Robert Stueart, Simmons College.

Giant Brittle Book Exhibit Travels to Chicago

The Commission's Giant Brittle Book exhibit travelled to Chicago at the Linguistic Society of America's annual meeting, January 3-6, 1991. The Linguistic Society provided a complimentary booth for the exhibit because of its interest in the preservation of scholarly materials. The Linguistic Society of America was founded for the advancement of the scientific study of language. The Society has nearly 7,000 individual and institutional members.

"Turning to Dust" Available in PAL Format

In the June and September 1990 newsletters, the Commission reported on "Turning to Dust," a video presentation about the preservation of brittle books. The Commission has learned that the 60-minute program is now available in PAL format for use outside the United States. In addition, Filmmakers Library has offered to give a discounted price to persons who tell them that they read about the video in the Commission's newsletter. The Canadian Broadcasting Corporation (CBC) first aired the program on March 14, 1990, as part of the series, "The Nature of Things."

Persons ordering from the United States can contact: Linda Gottesnan, Filmmakers Library, 124 East 40th Street, New York, New York 10016; (212) 808-4980.

Persons ordering from abroad can contact the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation (CBC) Enterprises, who will refer you to a distributor in your country, if there's one available. Contact CBC Enterprises at: Educational Sales, Box 500, Station A, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M5W 1E6; (416) 975-3505.

National Advisory Council on Preservation Explores Copyright, Mass Deacidification

Thirteen members of the National Advisory Council on Preservation (NACP) met with Commission staff members on November 12, 1990, to review activities over the past year and explore cooperative actions regarding copyright and mass deacidification. Robert Oakley, author of the Commission report *Copyright and Preservation: A Serious Problem in Need of a Thoughtful Solution*,* reviewed the current legislation and provided a series of possible library/archive community actions that could proactively resolve potential copyright difficulties. In a discussion of mass deacidification, the Council agreed that decisions regarding use of the process are made at the local level, but noted that there are cooperative concerns as well. The NACP is composed of representatives from 22 library, academic, governmental, and scholarly organizations concerned with preservation and access issues. [*Available for $15.00 prepayment.]

Hemisphere-wide Planning for Latin American Preservation

With the interest and cooperation of several nations, the Commission has launched a study to help coordinate the preservation filming of Latin American materials. In November 1990, the Commission awarded a contract to Dan C. Hazen, Selector for Latin America, Spain, and Portugal at Harvard College Library, to conduct a study on the status of the production and bibliographic control of Latin American microfilms in the United States.

The National Libraries of Venezuela and Brazil, the University of Puerto Rico, and a number of Central Bank Libraries are internationally known. In particular, Venezuela's National Library has been designated Latin America's "Preservation and Conservation Core Program." Lourdes Blanco, Director, Conservacion, Biblioteca National Centro De Conservacion, Caracas, has recently requested information on Latin American microfilming activity within the United States. The study's immediate purpose is to minimize inadvertent duplication of filming by the involved nations, and over a longer term, to help inform a hemisphere-wide preservation strategy. The final report, expected by April 1991, will be widely distributed.

Deadline Nears for Environmental Conditions Seminar

The Association of Physical Plant Administrators (APPA) Seminar, "Preservation of Library & Archival Materials," which is being developed in cooperation with the Commission, is approaching a February 1, 1991, deadline for reduced early registration fees. The seminar will be held in Washington, DC, Thursday, February 28 - Friday, March 1, 1991. Designed to help physical plant managers deal with the particular needs of libraries and archives, the seminar will include sessions on standards, maintaining the facility for a reliable environment, and planning and designing for the library's requirements.

Speakers include Billy E. Frye, Vice President for Academic Affairs and Provost, Emory University (and Chairman of the Commission Board); Donald G. Kelsey, Library Facilities Planning Officer, University of Minnesota; Maureen Sullivan, Director of Personnel, Yale University Library; and the following Smithsonian Institution physical plant and library staff: Robert Burke, Charles Dunn, Nancy Gwinn, Michael League, Lawrence Stuebing, J. Andrew Wilson, and Howard Wink.

For registration details, contact APPA headquarters, 1446 Duke Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-3492, Phone (703) 684-1446; FAX (703) 549-2772.

—NEW YEAR NEWS—

INSTITUTIONAL

PRESERVATION MICROFILMING. The Mid-Atlantic Preservation Service (MAPS) and the Online Computer Library Center (OCLC) have concluded an agreement that transfers control of MAPS, a nonprofit organization, to OCLC, also a nonprofit organization. According to MAPS and OCLC, the move assures the continued operation and future development of MAPS and enhances OCLC's commitment to preservation activities.

NEW CLR LEADERSHIP. The Council on Library Resources (CLR) has named W. David Penniman as its fourth president. Penniman, who assumes his new post this month, was most recently the director of the Information Services Group at AT&T Bell Laboratories, where he previously served as Director of Libraries and Information Systems. Before moving to Bell Laboratories in 1984, Penniman served in research and development posts at OCLC, finally as Vice President of Planning and Research.

NATIONAL

NEH OFFICE OF PRESERVATION 1991 FUNDING INCREASE. The final fiscal year-1991 appropriations of $22.581 million for the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation include a significant increase for the brittle books initiative, which will receive $9.9 million — up from $8.1 million in 1990.

REVISED PERMANENT PAPER STANDARDS. A second revision of the American National Standard for permanent paper for library and archival use (Z39.48-199X), is available for comment through February 28, 1991, from the National Information Standards Organization, P.O. Box 1056, Bethesda, MD 20827 ($30.00). The revision is based on current information on the permanence of paper - both coated and uncoated. It is expected to be useful to publishers, printers, librarians, and paper manufacturers, and to help to encourage the use of permanent paper.

PERMANENT PAPER POLICY SIGNED INTO LAW. S.J. Res. 57, establishing a national policy on permanent paper, was signed into law by President Bush on October 12, 1990. The resolution, which promotes and encourages the printing of books of enduring value on alkaline paper, was assigned Public Law No. 101-423.

STATEWIDE AND REGIONAL

- Nearly 40 representatives of state and regional preservation programs were in Washington, D.C., last month for an informal two-day "COOPERATIVE PROGRAMS GROUP" meeting. Participants heard talks on legislative strategies and statewide planning and management and discussed possibilities for future cooperative purchasing and information exchange.
- A REPORT OF THE "NATIONAL CONFERENCE on the Development of Statewide Preservation Programs" held March 1-3, 1989, at the Library of Congress will be published and distributed by the Commission early this year. Like the conference itself, the report is a cooperative effort of several institutions, including the National Endowment for the Humanities' Office of Preservation, the Library of Congress, and the Commission. The report was edited by Carolyn Clark Morrow as a practical tool for states interested in developing preservation plans. It will be disseminated widely to state libraries and archives.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Providing Access To The Accumulated Human Record As Far Into The Future As Possible

Number 31

Newsletter

February 1991

Preservation Review and Assessment Underway

An assessment and review committee drawn from the Commission's primary higher education constituencies met January 23 at Syracuse University's Greenberg House, Washington, DC, to begin a three- to six-month analysis of the Commission's past, present, and possible future mission. The committee, functioning as consultants to the board, has been charged with the following:

- Assess the progress in preservation in the nation over the past five years;
- Assess the continuing need for preservation activities—identify the major issues for the future: Which are most tractable? Which are most essential?
- Within this context, review and assess the role of the Commission with particular attention to identifying those areas of preservation in which the Commission can be most effective in promoting the interests of the national library and archival community.
- Recommend directions for future Commission activities.

The committee includes David H. Stam, University Librarian, Syracuse University (chair); William D. Schaefer, former executive director of the Modern Language Association and executive vice chancellor at the University of California, Los Angeles; Yvonne Wulff, Assistant Director for Collection Management, University of Michigan Libraries; and Arthur Norberg, Director, Charles Babbage Institute, University of Minnesota. Stam has invited newsletter readers who may wish to provide comments for this review to contact him at his office (Syracuse University Library, 222 Waverly Avenue, Syracuse, NY 13244).

"Our Printed Past in Peril," an article calling for action to save books made from acid-based paper, appears in the November 1990 issue of the British edition of *Reader's Digest*, which boasts over six million readers. Other versions of the article, by Robert Wernick, have been published in French and German editions of the magazine.

Inter-Library Image Distribution Demonstrates Possibilities for Deteriorating Scholarly Materials

The Commission has provided partial support for a demonstration of image processing and distribution between the Library of Congress and the Avery Art and Architectural Library, scheduled at press time for January 23, 1991. The Commission's support stems from an interest in the application of such technology for the archival storage and distribution of deteriorating scholarly materials containing both text and image (see the article in this issue on the Joint Task Force on Text and Image).

The transfer was scheduled to include both compressed and noncompressed images and the display of the same image on original 35mm slide, analog video disc storage, 24-bit screen and printer, 8-bit screen and printer, 4-bit screen, and HDTV screen, for comparison and assessment of the quality and fidelity associated with each medium. **The transfer and display of the same image in different formats provided an opportunity for comparison and assessment of the quality and fidelity associated with each medium.** Issues of cost comparability and product availability were to be discussed in a workshop following the demonstration. More information on the technology is available from Paul V. Christianson, Associate Director, Center for Telecommunications Research, Columbia University, 1220 Seeley W. Mudd Bldg., New York, NY 10027.

Group Discusses Collaboration in Use of Digital Technologies

Thirteen representatives responsible for library and computing activities at six universities met as a discussion group in New York City December 12, 1990, at the invitation of the Commission. Representatives from Cornell, Harvard, Pennsylvania State, Princeton, Tennessee, and Yale explored the implications of interinstitutional collaboration and the need for common protocols in the application of digital technologies for preservation.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117 • (202) 483-7474

Joint Task Force Studying Image Requirements, Technology

At the first meeting of the Joint Task Force on Text and Image (see the August 1990 Newsletter), the President of the Commission described the mission of the Task Force and gave its charge. She pointed out that the Task Force is composed of librarians, scholars, curators and practitioners whose professional concerns involve the use of images with accompanying text for scholarly research. This occupational and disciplinary heterogeneity is deliberate. It is designed to uncover the various perspectives that these several viewpoints bring to the tasks of preserving and making widely accessible drawings, maps, photographs, prints, and other illustrations that have been made and are stored on relentlessly disintegrating acidic paper. In the course of exploring diversity, the Task Force may well discover commonalities in needs, strategies and methods, as well as resources, across these many fields.

The mission of the Task Force is to develop a comprehensive, internationally coordinated plan to insure the preservation of scholarly materials containing text and images important to the continuing vitality of research in the relevant disciplines. Specifically, the Task Force is charged to:

—develop and establish a network of communication channels among all groups of scholars and others who are dependent upon text-cum-image publications for research and the advancement of knowledge.

—distinguish among the varying needs of the relevant disciplines and articulate commonalities and differences.

—develop a set of basic premises, a list of priorities, and a series of overall strategies for a long-range preservation effort.

—develop strategies to disaggregate and set priorities for the various preservation activities, hence enabling us to:

- take immediate action on those areas that are amenable to currently available treatments.
- conduct longer-term analysis of less tractable problems.

—develop a research agenda, in priority order, for pilot studies, demonstration projects, and specific applications of new technologies.

In the course of its deliberations at the first meeting, the Joint Task Force noted that their charge required them to understand differences and similarities among disciplines with regard to such issues as the use of image in relationship to text, the requirements for color, for resolution in black-and-white reproductions, and other features having to do with the quality of the preserved image. Some idea of the range of image types (e.g., drawings, halftones, color illustrations, woodcuts, etc.) involved is necessary and it would be desirable to know about placement in the book (same or adjacent page, appendix, fold-out, etc.) Further, the Task Force remarked that it would be useful to know what the distribution of image types and placements was for orienting their work toward the most common and frequent situations.

The Task Force may well discover commonalities in needs, strategies and methods, as well as resources, across these many fields.

The Task Force also concluded they needed to know more about available technologies for preservation and the interrelationships among them, particularly with regard to cost, longevity, ease of use, convertibility of format, and similar questions. There was also a suggestion that still other disciplines, especially systematic/taxonomic sciences and cartography, should be included in the scope of preservation interest. Finally, the Task Force concluded that it should begin to work at once on a classification of requirements for image preservation.

—Henry W. Riecken, Senior Program Advisor

[Ed. Note: At press time, the Joint Task Force was meeting a second time at Wye Center, MD, for presentations and discussions concerning image requirements in specific fields and developments in image technology with implications for preservation. The work of the Task Force is funded by the Getty Grant Program.]

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela D. Block · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

A Research Review

Exposure of Deacidified Paper to Sulfur Dioxide and Nitrogen Dioxide

This research review was prepared at the Commission's request by Peter G. Sparks as one follow-up to the Directory of Information Sources on Scientific Research, March 1990.

"Exposure of Deacidified Paper to Sulfur Dioxide and Nitrogen Dioxide," by Edwin L. Williams and Daniel Grosjean; *The Getty Conservation Institute Newsletter*, page 6, Spring 1990.

This paper will be good reading for library preservation officers and preservation scientists who have a technical interest in understanding how the alkaline reserve in deacidified paper can protect the paper from the absorption of airborne pollutants Sulfur Dioxide (SO_2) and Nitrogen Dioxide (NO_2).

Whether it becomes acidic from the process by which it is made or from the absorption of atmospheric pollutants, paper is degraded by the acid hydrolysis of cellulose. The focus of this initial investigation is the chemical interaction of the alkaline reserve in aqueous and non-aqueous, Wei To deacidified papers with low levels of SO_2 and NO_2. The unusual aspect of this work is that the two types of paper studied were exposed to concentrations of SO_2 and NO_2 found in ambient air, which are usually from 5 to 50 parts per billion (ppb). Previous studies of SO_2 interaction with deacidified paper were carried out at concentrations 20 to 2,000 times higher than those used in this study. As the authors point out, that approach can lead to complications, because SO_2 at higher concentrations can form sulfuric acid aerosol in the air and the observed damage to the paper could be due to the sulfuric acid rather than the SO_2. The authors also point out that this study is the first to look at the exposure of paper to NO_2.

Considerable discussion of experimental methods and results gives the reader a clear idea of how the study was carried out and the nature of the data collected. A number of interesting observations are reported, of which four are given below.

1. Both SO_2 and NO_2 were continuously absorbed by the deacidified and untreated paper throughout the entire 13-to-29 week exposure period, and both gases were removed at the same rate whether alone or as a mixture.

2. The deacidified papers had a much higher capacity for the uptake of SO_2 than for the uptake of NO2.

3. Chemical analysis of the exposed papers showed that a sulfate was the only sulfur-containing reaction product detected on exposure to SO_2 gas and SO_2 + NO_2 gas mixtures. This result appears to be independent of paper type and whether the paper was deacidified or not.

4. Observed sulfate and nitrite concentrations were higher in deacidified papers than in untreated papers.

Future experimental work is suggested by the authors with an eye to developing a fast screening method to examine the effectiveness of various methods of deacidification and to then select several processes for detailed studies.

• • •

A few comments are worth making at this point in the study on what can be gleaned from initial results. The following represent some jointly held views developed after my discussions with Dr. James Druzik of the GCI Scientific program:

First, the study may give some solid evidence that the alkaline reserve compound offers real protection to the cellulose from gaseous pollutants. This follows from observation #4 that the concentrations of products formed from the reaction of the reserve compound and the pollutant gases (reported as sulfates, nitrates and nitrites) are generally higher in the deacidified paper than in the untreated paper control. **In your bookstacks, this means that when the pollutant gases move between the pages of a deacidified book only a small amount of these materials will be left to do potential damage to the paper.**

Secondly, and as important, this study points out the need to consider the effect of nitrogen dioxide exposure on paper. The concentration of sulfur dioxide in the air is being lowered in many parts of the world due to clean air programs. This could leave other pollutant gases such as nitrogen dioxide, which are harder to control, as the principal pollution source for airborne acidity in non-alkaline paper. Moreover, as Dr. Druzik has pointed out, **the impact of this scenario on HVAC systems is important because the oxides of nitrogen are far more difficult to chemically filter out than sulfur dioxide.**

It is recommended that a copy of the complete report be ordered from Dr. Druzik at the GCI Scientific Program, Getty Conservation Institute, 4503 Glencoe Avenue, Marina del Rey, CA 90292-6537; (213) 822-2299.

Paper Progress in Germany

The following letter (translated by Hans Rütimann) regarding the use of permanent paper in Germany is signed by two principals of one of Germany's large paper manufacturing concerns.

Re: Symposium on permanent paper

Dear Mr. Rütimann,

You may remember that during the symposium on permanent paper on 14 February 1990, I announced that the PWA Grafische Papiere is planning to convert to alkaline paper production by Fall of 1990.

This has happened — since 1 October 1990, all coated and uncoated paper manufactured by PWA GP conforms to the "Frankfurt Requirements:"

— Only bleached cellulose without wood pulp fibers is used.
— the pH-value is 7.5 - 9.0.
— Calcium carbonate is used as buffer.

We believe that these steps will make a contribution in the spirit of the "Frankfurt Requirements."

Sincerely yours,

PWA Grafische Papiere GmbH
Dept. of Technical Services
signed: Reinwart and Schmitt

[Ed. Note: For a report on the Frankfurt symposium on permanent paper, see the May 1990 Newsletter.]

Reports of Interest

The Politics and Management of Preservation Planning, by Karl G. Schmude, University Librarian of the Dixson Library at the University of New England in Australia, offers several solutions to commonly expressed preservation/access concerns: **obstacles in planning**, including the extent to which libraries have promoted the use and accessibility of their collections but have neglected the issue of future availability; **high costs** of preservation programs; and **difficulties in cooperation** among libraries.

Presented during the 55th IFLA Council and General Conference in Paris, August 19-26, 1989, and published in the August 1990 issue of the *IFLA Journal* (volume 16, no. 3, pp. 332-335).

"The ongoing computer revolution makes the task of saving Government records for historical purposes more complex." Thus begins a 30-page report submitted by the Committee on Government Operations to Congress on November 6, 1990 — *Taking a Byte Out of History: The Archival Preservation of Federal Computer Records* (House Report 101-978). Based on a study made by the Committee's Government Information, Justice and Agriculture Subcommittee, the report estimates that "75 percent of all Federal transactions will be handled electronically in the year 2000." The findings of the study and suggested recommendations will be of interest to the broader preservation and access community. The report also discusses: Federal Government Use of Computer Technology, Software and Hardware Dependence, National Archives and Records Administration (NARA) Preservation Strategy, and Related Records Management Problems.

Free copy of House Report 101-978, from: House Document Room, HOB Annex 2, Room B18, 2nd and D Streets, SW, Washington, D.C. 20515 (include a self-adhesive, self-addressed label).

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Providing Access To The Accumulated Human Record As Far Into The Future As Possible

Number 32

Newsletter

March 1991

IPI Issues Interim Report on Dark Stability of Color Microfilm

The Commission has received an interim report covering the first 12 months of research on the dark stability of color microfilm products performed by the Image Permanence Institute (IPI) under a grant from the Getty Grant Program to the Commission. In a cover letter included with the report, IPI Director James M. Reilly states:

Cibachrome dyes are so incredibly stable that they simply won't be the issue for this film. It's a question of which will give out next, the gelatin or the polyester support, and how long that will require . . .

Excerpts from IPI's report to the Commission follow.

———

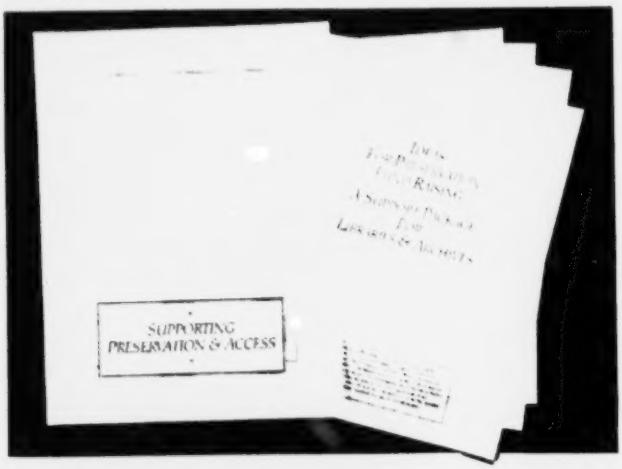
Two types of film are being compared in the study: conventional chromogenic film (from Kodak) and silver dye bleach film (Cibachrome). The project scope expanded from only considering the dye fading aspects of dark keeping to include measurements of the physical properties of the plastic support and gelatin emulsions. . . . Tensile strength, emulsion melting point, and emulsion wet scratch resistance are the properties being measured.

. . . . Overall, this study is the first one ever to comprehensively address base, emulsion, and dye stability properties in such a way as to allow for predictions of lifespan. As such, it may be a model for studies in the future.

Results so far show the expected greater dye stability of Cibachrome, so it probably will be limited by gelatin or base deterioration; it's not possible yet to know which. The chromogenic films show a quite strong temperature and humidity dependence for dye fading, and their acetate supports are also showing expected degradation.

———

A final report will be issued at the end of the two-year grant period.



New Supply of Fund Raising Support Package

The Commission's supply of its fund raising support package, "Ideas for Preservation Fund Raising," has been replenished. The package was developed in response to requests from the Commission's sponsoring institutions. It includes an overview from the national perspective, articles judged helpful for making a case for local preservation support, and examples of institutional fund-raising initiatives. The flexible format — a pocket folder with inserts — enables a library or archive to add its own information for fund-raising presentations.

Packages are available free to the Commission's sponsors. Others may purchase the package, while supplies last, for $10.00. Orders must be prepaid, with checks (no cash) made payable to "The Commission on Preservation and Access." Payment must be in U.S. funds.

The preservation of library materials is a goal that affects every library department and many library procedures, for preservation is at the heart of guaranteeing access to information.

— "Of Textblocks and Clamshell Boxes," by Becky Ryder, in BiblioTech, V2,n1, Newsletter of the Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University Libraries

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117 • (202) 483-7474

Specialists Discuss Preserving the Book as an Artifact

The Commission has invited a small group of specialists to meet for one day to explore possible cooperative approaches to selecting books for artifactual conservation. The informal discussion was scheduled for February 13 at Commission headquarters. Previous work with Advisory Committees has proven the value of involving knowledgeable specialists in initial deliberations regarding nationwide approaches to selection. Invitees to this meeting are being asked to consider ways to broaden the inquiry.

Among the questions on the agenda for discussion are:

How do we determine what constitutes the "national interest" and the "local interest" in a context of unique and site-bound scholarly resources?

Is it possible to model such an effort on the cooperative preservation microfilming program, or is cooperation meaningless in this context?

Invited to attend the meeting are: Max Evans, Director, Utah State Historical Society; William L. Joyce, Associate University Librarian for Rare Books & Special Collections, Princeton University; Linda Matthews, Head, Special Collections Department, Emory University; Alice D. Schreyer, Assistant Director for Special Collections, University of Delaware Library; and Samuel Allen Streit, Assistant University Librarian for Special Collections, Brown University.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela M. Davis · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

Membership Changes for Scholarly Advisory Committee on Art History

Joining the Commission's Scholarly Advisory Committee on Art History are Dr. Elizabeth Boone, Director of Pre-Columbian Studies, Dumbarton Oaks; and Professor Marvin Eisenberg, Department of the History of Art,, University of Michigan. Completing their terms on the committee are Professor Phyllis Pray Bober (Bryn Mawr), Professor Egbert Haverkamp-Begemann (Institute of Fine Arts, New York University) and Dr. Alan Fern (National Portrait Gallery). This committee was scheduled to meet with its new members February 19.

RLG-OCLC Agreement to Benefit Cooperative Preservation

A cooperative agreement reached late last year between the Research Libraries Group, Inc., (RLG) and the OCLC Online Computer Library Center is expected to help avoid costly duplication of services and to supplement ongoing cooperative efforts in standards, computer linking, and exchange of preservation data, according to K. Wayne Smith, OCLC president. James Michalko, RLG president, stated that the agreement will enable more institutions "to join with their colleagues around the country in an array of activities and grant-funded projects to support preservation."

The two-year agreement encourages increased participation in RLG's Preservation Program through OCLC's subsidizing of program fees for eligible OCLC-member institutions. To date, OCLC and RLG have exchanged nearly half a million bibliographic records for filmed items. More information is available from OCLC (614)761-5163, and Patti McClung at RLG (415)962-9951.

Lehigh University Joins Sponsors

Lehigh University has joined with 36 other academic institutions to help sponsor the Commission's activities. The support of the higher education and research library community is a vital component of the Commission's capacity to facilitate national and international initiatives for the preservation of our scholarly resources and written heritage.

133

Commission Receives First Report on Digital Preservation Demonstration Project

The following information is excerpted from Cornell University's First Interim Report to the Commission—Progress from July 1990 through November 1990, which was issued on January 25, 1991. The report was prepared by Anne Kenney, Assistant Director, Department of Preservation and Conservation, and Lynne Personius, Assistant Director, Scholarly Information Systems, Cornell Information Technologies. See the August 1990 Newsletter (page 3) for background on this 18-month pilot project, which is testing an advanced technology for recording deteriorating books as digital images and producing, on demand, multiple high-quality copies.

Introduction

The Cornell/Xerox/Commission on Preservation and Access Joint Study in Digital Preservation has been in progress since January 1990. This is the first of three status reports to be issued at interim stages of the project.

The first three phases of the project . . . are complete. Cornell and Xerox have collaborated in the development of scanning workstation hardware and software specifically designed to meet the needs of a technician doing preservation scanning. The equipment needed to perform scanning and printing has been delivered and is operating successfully. At this point, books are being scanned and stored, and printed paper facsimiles are being produced. . . . The development of the prototype hardware/software has taken longer than originally anticipated. . . . Attention is now being focused on improving efficiency and speed in the processing and handling of material. Development and delivery of the image storage system and development of the request server needed to offer access to images are planned for first quarter 1991.

Selection

Half of the 1000 volumes to be digitally preserved have been selected from the Mathematics Library. The math monographs include the works of very significant authors and those volumes that have contributed substantially to the development of the discipline. Each title has been carefully selected for its historical and intellectual significance based on faculty review and citation studies. The volumes are in poor condition yet are heavily used locally and much requested by scholars in other libraries throughout the world. The second 500 volumes will be selected primarily on the basis of their condition and will be representative of a cross section of materials typically found in modern research libraries. The Library's four selection teams—humanities, social sciences, sciences, areas studies—are in the process of identifying 100 volumes each. A further 100 volumes have been selected from the Olin Library brittle books program. . . .

Cataloging

Sample catalog records for both the preservation paper copy and the computer file have been developed . . . and the first nineteen volumes are in the process of being cataloged. Records will be created on RLIN and downloaded via the RLIN/NOTIS Generic Transfer and Overlay (GTO) to the NOTIS catalog.

Cost Model Progress

Work is progressing on a model that will serve as a tool to predict the cost of digital preservation.

Preservation does not exist in a vacuum. We preserve something either in order for it to be consumed, like strawberry preserves, or to provide access to it . . .

. . . Information is one of the very few commodities which has the characteristic of being taken or sold, but without diminishing the resources of the original owner.

—"Our Crumbling Heritage,"
George E. Brown, Jr., Congressman, 26th District, CA.

As a society, I believe our goal should be to create an environment in which librarians, archivists, scholars, and citizens can make collection decisions based on the value and content of the publication rather than a reaction to the condition of the medium.

—"Collection Preservation: The Practical Choices,"
Patricia Battin.

FROM Paper Preservation: Current Issues and Recent Developments. Edited by Philip Luner. Atlanta, GA: TAPPI Press, 1990.

The value and uses of library collections in a research institution are debated in a publication sponsored by the Center for the Book. *Research Collections in the Information Age: The Library of Congress Looks to the Future*, an 18-page booklet, is written by two library specialists from the Library of Congress. Stephen E. Ostrow, Chief of the Prints and Photographs Division, presents the case of the Library of Congress as a collection-based institution; Robert Zich, director of the Planning Office, offers the case that the information derived from the collections is more important than the collections themselves.

$3.95 at the Library of Congress Sales Shop or by mail from the Publishing Office, Box J, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20540 ($3.50 per order shipping and handling, prepayment required).

Applications for the **PRESERVATION MANAGEMENT SEMINAR** for College Librarians are being accepted by SOLINET up to the deadline of March 15, 1991. The eight-day seminar — geared for librarians with part-time preservation responsibility — will be held July 20-27, 1991, at Washington & Lee University, Lexington, VA. Costs for tuition, room, and board are expected to be $1,200.

The seminar is co-sponsored by SOLINET and the Commission. The Commission is awarding one scholarship to a qualified attendee. Attendance is limited, with successful applicants to be selected by the College Libraries Committee. More information is available from SOLINET Preservation Program, 400 Colony Square, Plaza Level, Atlanta, GA 30361-6301 (800)999-8558.

Please help reduce newsletter mailing costs by notifying us of address changes and deletions. Send address corrections to Trish Cece, Communications Assistant. Enclose a copy of your current mailing label.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Providing Access To The Accumulated Human Record As Far Into The Future As Possible

Number 33

Newsletter

April 1991

Barbara Goldsmith Elected to Commission Board

Barbara Goldsmith, an author, journalist, and social historian who has championed preservation issues to the American public, has been elected to serve on the Commission board effective April 1991. As a trustee of the New York Public Library (NYPL), Goldsmith was a driving force behind NYPL's Commitment Day, March 7, 1989, hailed as a landmark in book preservation. On that date, over 100 publishers and authors committed themselves to the use of acid-free paper for first printings of quality hardcover trade books.

It was more than 10 years ago when Goldsmith — researching in libraries for a novel she was writing — discovered the problem of brittle paper. She spearheaded a group called Authors and Publishers in Support of Preservation of the Printed Word and mobilized PEN (poets and playwrights, essayists and editors, and novelists), the Authors Guild, and the Association of American Publishers to declare their commitment to the use of acid-free paper. Her drive to bring the need for permanent paper to the attention of the public did not end with NYPL's Commitment Day. She has since made many personal appearances and written several articles on the issue.

Goldsmith is a graduate of Wellesley College and has been awarded honorary doctorate degrees from Syracuse and Pace Universities. She also is a recipient of the Brandeis University Library Trust award. She was named a trustee of NYPL in 1987.

National Advisory Council on Preservation Gains New Member

John C. Vaughn has joined the National Advisory Council on Preservation (NACP) as the representative for the Association of American Universities, where he serves as Director of Federal Relations. The NACP, which meets annually, is composed of representatives from 22 library, academic, governmental, and scholarly organizations concerned with preservation and access issues.

Commission Launches Project on Scientific Research

The Commission is launching a project to further distribute news of scientific research with implications for preservation needs. The project is a follow-up to the *Directory of Information Sources on Scientific Research Related to the Preservation of Books, Paper, and Adhesives*, which was published in March 1990. (Copies of the *Directory* remain available at no cost from the Commission.)

In consultation with scientists and researchers, the Commission is selecting reports potentially useful for preservation programs in libraries and archives. Copies of chosen reports will be distributed to a panel of preservation professionals representing various institutional perspectives. Panel members will read reports in the context of their institutions' needs, and will prepare informal reviews on the implications and usefulness of the research.

As worthwhile reports are identified, the panel members and the Commission will distribute information on the findings to broader preservation communities. The effectiveness of this approach will be evaluated at the end of a one-year test period.

The panel members are: **Margaret Byrnes**, Head, Preservation Section, National Library of Medicine; **Tom Clareson**, Preservation Service Manager, AMIGOS Bibliographic Council; **Richard Frieder**, Preservation Officer, Northwestern University Library; **Karen Garlick**, Senior Conservator, National Archives and Records Administration; **Kenneth Harris**, Director for Preservation, Library of Congress; **Howard P. Lowell**, State Archivist and Records Administrator, Delaware State Archives; **Jan Merrill-Oldham**, Head, Preservation Department, University of Connecticut Library; and **Christine W. Ward**, Chief, Bureau of Archival Services, New York State Archives.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117 • (202) 483-7474

Scholarly Advisory Committees: Progress on Selection Strategies

The Scholarly Advisory Committee on **Art History**, at its most recent meeting in February, began designing a systematic process for generating a significant bibliography of art periodicals and subjecting the list to scholarly review to identify the titles deemed most significant for art historical research. The Committee, at earlier meetings, had come to the opinion that the first priority art historical materials were probably to be found in art periodicals, various sorts of catalogs, and corpora. Periodicals seemed a practical way to begin, for it appeared likely that adequately long runs of major periodicals could fairly easily be located for the time period of publication that was most threatened by embrittlement.

The group considered a number of alternative approaches, including existing general bibliographies and reference lists, specialized field lists, and bibliographic utility-generated lists of periodicals. Further exploration of the feasibility of several alternatives will be required, but the general outlines of the next phase are clear and the committee is committed to the review task.

One portion of the discussion turned around critical distinctions surrounding the selection of scholarly resources for preservation microfilming. Many of the field's rare materials are not in immediate danger of embrittlement because of the high quality of the rag paper on which they were printed. Although conversion to microform of such non-endangered rare materials can increase scholarly access to them, the principal rationale for preservation microfilming is to save content in danger of being lost due to brittleness, with highest priority being given to scholarly importance. The very poor quality of paper on which some Third World publications have appeared, for example, in pre-historic archaeology—as well as their relative inaccessibility—makes them prime candidates for preservation microfilming.

Members of the Art History committee are: Nancy S. Allen, Librarian, Museum of Fine Arts, Boston; Elizabeth Boone, Director of Pre-Columbian Studies, Dumbarton Oaks; Professor Richard Brilliant, Department of Art History and Archaeology, Columbia University; Professor Marvin Eisenberg (Emeritus), Department of the History of Art, The University of Michigan; Professor Lorenz Eitner, Department of Art, Stanford University; Professor Larry Silver; Department of Art History, Northwestern University; and Professor Deirdre C. Stam, School of Library & Information Science, Catholic University of America.

• • •

The Scholarly Advisory Committee on **Modern Language and Literature** began drafting a final report to the Commission at its February meeting. The committee also is working to involve more widely the membership of the Modern Language Association (MLA) in the preservation of threatened research resources for literary scholarship. Arrangements have been concluded for holding a special gathering of the leaders of MLA Sections and Discussion Groups at its annual meeting in San Francisco next December. This gathering will be addressed by J. Hillis Miller, Chairman of the Scholarly Advisory Committee, and by Elaine Marks, one of its members who is also Second Vice President of MLA. The purpose of the session is to raise awareness of preservation issues on the part of MLA members and to obtain advice from the specialized subdivisions of the organization as to the location and identity of important scholarly materials that are prime candidates for preservation.

Serving on this committee are: Professor Emory Elliott, President's Chair of English, University of California, Riverside; Professor John Fisher (Emeritus), Department of English, University of Tennessee, Knoxville; Professor H.L. Gates, Jr., Department of English, Duke University; Professor Elaine Marks, Department of French, University of Wisconsin- Madison; Professor J. Hillis Miller, Department of English and Comparative Literature, University of California, Irvine; Professor W.J.T. Mitchell, Department of English, University of Chicago; Professor Rainer Nägele, Department of German, The Johns Hopkins University; Professor Catharine R. Stimpson, Dean of the Graduate School-New Brunswick and Vice Provost for Graduate Education, Rutgers University. Henry W. Riecken serves as Senior Program Advisor to the Commission for the Scholarly Advisory Committees.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela M. Davis · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

To those with ears to hear, libraries are really very noisy places. On their shelves we hear the captured voices of the centuries-old conversation that makes up our civilization, or any civilization. Here is the most convenient, most portable, and, in many ways, the most durable carrier of speech we have ever found: the book.
—"Libraries and Learning," by Timothy S. Healy; *The Bookmark*; page 200; Spring 1990.

Special Report

Joint Preservation Conference of Association of Physical Plant Administrators and the Commission on Preservation and Access

Attendance and Interest at High Levels

by Joel Clemmer, College Libraries Committee

Reflecting the growing concern over deteriorating contents of the nation's paper-based collections, 101 librarians, physical plant personnel and architects met February 28-March 1, 1990, in Washington, DC, to discuss preservation of library and archival materials. The two-day conference, jointly sponsored by the Association of Physical Plant Administrators (APPA) and the Commission, had as its goal fostering better working relationships among participant groups in order to improve environmental conditions of library and archives materials. The turnout was much higher than expected, with an almost equal number of facilities administrators and librarians in attendance, as well as several architects.

The conference keynote address by Dr. Billy E. Frye, Vice President for Academic Affairs and Provost of Emory University and chair of the Commission, provided convincing evidence of the magnitude of investment in the nation's research libraries, each of which has an estimated replacement cost of $150-200 million dollars, as well as the threats to preservation of their contents. Donald G. Kelsey, Library Preservation Officer for the University of Minnesota, provided detail on the deterioration of paper and the effects of fluctuating temperature and relative humidity and pointed out that staff with specialized knowledge, such as custodians, can be immensely helpful in identifying problems if mechanisms are in place to get their input.

An entertaining and demonstrative role-playing exercise between Nancy Gwinn, librarian, and Michael Lee, Office of Plant Services for the Smithsonian Institution, clearly demonstrated the challenges of communication within organizations. Lawrence Steubing, Head of Engineering Services at the Smithsonian, introduced a case study outlining the challenge of renovating the "John Smith Library at Midwestern University." The hypothetical library facility offered a challenging panoply of problems, including inadequate space and patchwork mechanicals. Participants had the evening to consider John Smith's array of problems.

The final day of the conference led off with reviews of issues by Smithsonian experts: architectural power and HVAC (Lawrence Steubing); security (Robert Burke); fire suppression systems (J. Andrew Wilson); custodial maintenance (Charles Dunn); and maintaining the facility for a reliable environment (Howard Wink). Although the presentations successfully delivered an information base from which participants could deal with the challenges of the case study, they also served to reinforce a principal theme of the conference: that, in the words of Wink,

"Success comes when the facilities manager and customer [librarian] understand each other's problems."

Maureen Sullivan, conference facilitator, guided the group into a final exercise that again reinforced the need for cooperation among professions . . .

"The librarians in our group talked about what should be done; the engineers and physical plant people wanted to talk about how to do something."

. . . as well as providing opportunity for a high degree of innovative thinking...

"Consider moving the college to a milder climate"

"Put everything in an addition and leave the old building as a monument to 1949 architecture."

Sullivan closed the successful conference with a summary of a principal theme: that librarians and physical plant personnel work in the same institutions and thus share the same mission. Success for each depends on collaboration and communication.

Smithsonian participants were chaired by Michael League. The Commission's planning team consisted of Joel Clemmer, DeWitt Wallace Library, Macalester College; Donald Kelsey, University of Minnesota Libraries, and Patti McClung, Research Libraries Group.

FOR MORE INFORMATION ON THE CONFERENCE . . .

The Association of Physical Plant Administrators of Universities and Colleges (APPA) is planning to issue a publication from this conference, which will include the text of Frye's address. For more details, contact: Steve Glazner, Director of Communications, APPA, 1446 Duke Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-3492.

Excerpts from the Conference Keynote Address by Dr. Billy E. Frye, Vice President for Academic Affairs and Provost of Emory University, and Chair of the Commission

"... The value of the collections of the 119 ARL [Association of Research Libraries] libraries alone, with over 350 million volumes is between $25-35 billion, a number that, just coincidentally, happens to be close to the pent-up cost of urgent deferred maintenance of the entire physical plants of the nation's colleges and universities! Surely such an asset deserves to be treated with utmost respect."

"Clearly, environmental control is one area where good physical plant management can have an enormous positive effect on preservation both by increasing the longevity of paper *per se*, and by giving us more time in which to deal with the problem and over which to spread the costs. There are limits on what can be done, of course, since people and books must occupy the same space. But knowledge of the role environmental conditions play surely can suggest options — such as the importance of maintaining constant conditions in the stacks, irrespective of academic schedules or outside conditions."

A Library Director's View of the Conference

The following Evaluation Form was volunteered by Thomas W. Leonhardt, Dean, University Libraries, University of Pacific, Stockton, CA.

The Association of Physical Plant Administrators
of Universities and Colleges
1446 Duke Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-3492
703/684-1446, FAX: 703/549-2772

APPA PROGRAM EVALUATION

PRESERVATION OF LIBRARY & ARCHIVAL MATERIALS SEMINAR
February 28-March 1, 1991 • Washington, D.C.

1. On a scale from one to four, one being excellent, was the information presented at the seminar valuable and useful?

1 (EXCELLENT)

2. What was the most beneficial information you received?

Without detracting from the rest of the program, I found the presentation on fire prevention to be the most helpful, especially when I got back to my library and discovered the awful truth about our own shortcomings and the lack of protection by building codes. As a library director I need to keep up to date with developments in fire safety and the other issues that the seminar so capably addressed.

3. Was anything omitted from the program that would have enhanced it?

I think that each aspect of the program could have been longer. The speakers pointed out that their talks were pared down because of the time constraint. I would still vote for this overview type of seminar when time is a problem but would have appreciated more time for the fire protection segment and for overall maintenance including deferred maintenance, preventive maintenance, and maintenance planning when designing a new building, remodeling, or retrofitting a warehouse down in the industrial part of town. I see value in allowing more library case studies to be presented, perhaps prepared in advance and submitted so that the panelists/speakers/reactors could then discuss them. I think that many academic libraries have unique aspects of the general problems that could use illumination.

4. If this seminar was held again, would you encourage others from your institution to attend?

YES.

The length of the seminar should be two full days.

Additional comments:

The University of the Pacific Library would be glad to host/sponsor such a seminar for the west coast. I think that a good audience from California, Washington, Oregon, Nevada, and a couple of others could be assembled easily. Co-sponsorship by the Commission on Preservation and Access and other library organizations in the West could probably be arranged with no difficulty. I am quite serious about the offer.

To me, an audience of library directors and directors of physical plants would be ideal. Even if we delegate a lot of the things we do, we need to be familiar with the broad issues and even some of the details. We don't need to be experts but we need to know which questions to ask and what kind of answers to expect. We must often choose options that are not ideal but then we need to know what the risk and possible consequences are.

5. In addition to developing programs such as the Preservation of Library and Archival Materials Seminar, would other information and materials be useful, and if so, please describe:

As I mentioned above, you could probably do seminars on given segments on the preservation this is preservation in its broadest and most useful context. That is how I received this seminar in Washington and found it most useful.

139

Change in Application Deadline for Preservation Management Seminar

The deadline for the Preservation Management Seminar co-sponsored by the Commission and SOLINET, the Southeastern Library Network, has been changed from March 15 to March 30, 1991. (A March 15 deadline was given in the March 1991 issue of the Commission's newsletter.) The eight-day seminar for librarians with part-time preservation responsibility will be held July 20- 27, 1991, at Washington & Lee University in Lexington, Virginia. The 16 applicants selected to attend will learn how to assess and prioritize their libraries' needs, and how to implement a successful preservation effort that is appropriate to the goals of their collection. The cost for tuition, room and board is $1,200.

Faculty who will be teaching the seminar are: Lisa Fox, Program Development Officer for Preservation, SOLINET; Carolyn Clark Morrow, Malloy-Rabinowitz Preservation Librarian, Harvard University; Carol Eyler, Head of Technical Services, Mercer University; and Charlotte Brown, College Archivist & Special Collections Librarian, Franklin and Marshall College.

For further information and application instructions, contact the SOLINET Preservation Program, 400 Colony Square, Plaza Level, Atlanta, GA 30361- 6301, or call at 800-999-8558 or (404) 892-0943.

A Demonstration of Image Processing and Distribution

—by Michael Lesk,
Technology Assessment Advisory Committee

NOTE: The February 1991 Newsletter announced an inter-library image distribution demonstration with implications for deteriorating scholarly materials scheduled for January 23, 1991. Technology Assessment Advisory Committee member Michael Lesk was on hand for that demonstration, and submitted this informal report to the Commission:

On January 23, 1991, I attended a demonstration at Columbia University of a Commission/GTE image storage and retrieval demonstration. The demonstration was run by Angela Giral of the Avery Library at Columbia, Clayton Andrews of Columbia, Bill Steele of GTE, and Jean Baroa of Avelem (a French company). The Avery Library views this primarily as a preservation activity, not as an improved access activity.

They have scanned 50 images and are storing them at the Library of Congress on hard disk, using 1.5 Mbit satellite link between LC and Columbia to transmit the images, and displaying them on a variety of devices. It appears the images were mostly digitized from 35mm slides, although some were digitized from fiche and some from paper. The typical stored file is perhaps 2000 x 2000 pixels, each 24-bit color. They are displayed on devices typically 1000 x 720 with 8 or 24-bit color.

In the demonstration, the librarian would search for pictures having various MARC field contents, and then display them on a screen. It was possible then to request either a local printout on a grey-level monochrome printer, or a remote print on a color printer followed by mailing. A dialup line is used to access the LC station; the satellite is only for transmitting the images.

The strong points of the demonstration are:

1. A 3:1 compression of the images based on hierarchical coding plus Huffman coding, reducing the transmission time to about 2.5 seconds per image.

2. The ability to use ordinary IBM PC type hardware for all system functions.

3. The ability to adapt to quite a variety of input and output devices (I saw an Eikonix slide scanner, a Howtek color page scanner, an Alden low-cost thermal printer, and several color screen displays, including a wide-screen HDTV set).

4. A typical MARC-based Boolean search system for catalog information on the images.

5. A user interface that allows the user to specify the resolution of his terminal, and the area of the picture to be displayed, and using progressive transmission sends only the minimum number of bits needed to display what has been requested at the maximum screen resolution.

Weak points were:

1. The satellite link was down the day of the demonstration.

2. I am not sure the resolution is totally adequate for all serious use by art or architecture students (although anything is better than being told the item is unavailable because it's too fragile).

3. I am not confident the system can be scaled up. The kind of color scanning that was being done tends to require a great deal of manual attention to get faithful color representation. I hope that the new Kodak color standards will help here.

4. Some of the displays are pretty slow. [Ed. Note: As a result of this demonstration, a new program is being developed to speed the presentation of the display.]

Special Report Inside:

Viewpoints from three attendees of a joint preservation seminar for facilities managers and librarians/archivists — the first of its kind — are presented in a special insert to this newsletter. The seminar was cosponsored by the Association of Physical Plant Administrators and the Commission to foster better working relationships among participant groups in order to improve environmental conditions of library and archives material. Attendance figures and initial evaluations indicate the event was a success. An excerpt from the keynote address by Dr. Billy E. Frye, Vice President for Academic Affairs and Provost of Emry University, and Chair of the Commission, indicates the shared responsibility for preserving scholarly resources discussed at the event:

"Given the explosion in the volume and costs of published material . . . it is obvious that no institution working alone can build adequate collections any more than it can save the acidic collections it already has working alone. Rather, we ought to envision a time when the autonomous individual collections of our nation's research libraries are melded into a large dispersed collection to which we all contribute and in which we all share equally, with appropriate allowances for our respective needs and investments; a time when our faculty and librarians will make choices between acquisitions and other expenditures not on the criterion of "volumes added" but on the basis of "units of access" provided. . . .

. . . [E]ven if this distant vision comes into existence, it will not absolve us of individual responsibility for our libraries. Far from it, such an evolution would only underscore the responsibility that each institution has to build and protect its own library resources as an integral part of a larger entity. The library as a physical facility will remain a vital part of each academic community. Again, therefore, I admonish you never to underestimate the value of this asset, economically or intellectually, nor to underestimate the importance of your own role in preserving this asset and making it both a pleasant and profitable place where scholars and students engage their basic medium, the accumulated information, knowledge and wisdom of the ages."

Report From 1989 Statewide Preservation Programs Conference Being Distributed

A report on the *National Conference on the Development of Statewide Preservation Programs* held March 1-3, 1989, at the Library of Congress is being distributed by the Commission free of charge to its sponsors, state library and archives agencies, and others on its mailing list. Like the conference itself, the report was a cooperative effort. Contributing to its publication were: Harvard University Library (design and production), the Library of Congress (photographs), and the Commission (costs of publication and distribution). The report was edited by Carolyn Clark Morrow, Harvard's Malloy-Rabinowitz Preservation Librarian, to be a practical tool for states interested in developing preservation plans.

Copies of the report remaining after its complimentary distribution will be available, while supplies last, for $15.00 (U.S. funds required) from the Commission. Send checks made payable to "Commission on Preservation and Access" to Trish Cece, Communications Assistant. The publication also will be submitted to ERIC, the Educational Resources Information Center.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Providing Access To The Accumulated Human Record As Far Into The Future As Possible

Number 34

Newsletter

May 1991

David B. Gracy II Elected to Commission Board

David B. Gracy II, a preservation and archival educator, has been elected to the Commission board effective April 1991. Gracy currently is the Governor Bill Daniel Professor in Archival Enterprise at the Graduate School of Library and Information Science (GSLIS), University of Texas at Austin. He joined the GSLIS faculty in January 1986 after serving as Director of the Texas State Archives (1977-1986). Prior to the Texas appointment, Gracy was Assistant Professor and Archivist at the Georgia State University Library, where he established the Southern Labor Archives (1971-1977). He also has taught at Texas Tech University and in the Rare Books School of Columbia University. Gracy was appointed to the Commission's Task Force on Preservation Education in 1989.

In 1987, Gracy was presented with the Texas Excellence in Teaching Award, one of a number of certificates and awards of merit he has received over the past 20 years. The new board member has served as President of the Society of American Archivists, the Society of Georgia Archivists, and the Austin Chapter of the Association of Records Managers and Administrators. His current board appointments include the National Archives of the Episcopal Church and the Summerlee Commission on Texas History, where he is chair of the Task Force on Archives. Among his publications is the article, "Between Muffins and Mercury . . . The Elusive Definition of 'Preservation'," *The New Library Scene*, 9 (December 1990).

Gracy earned his B.A. and M.A. degrees, both in History, from the University of Texas at Austin, and his Ph.D. in History from Texas Tech University. He received certification as an archivist from the Academy of Certified Archivists in 1989.

A list of publications available from the Commission is included as an insert in this newsletter. This form, which may be photocopied, should be used to help expedite orders for the Commission's reports. To request additional copies, call or write Trish Cece, Communications Assistant.

Bibliothèque Nationale — Commission Contract to Hasten International Access to Preservation Microfilm Masters

At a meeting at the Bibliothèque Nationale (BN) on March 27, library officials concluded negotiations on a contract with the Commission to convert to machine-readable form the BN's entire retrospective register of microform masters. The two-year contract calls for the library to convert 130,000 titles to machine-readable U.S.-compatible format. Payments totaling FF 2,682,000 (approximately $480,000), or two-thirds of the total project cost, will be made by the Commission over the two-year period as production goals are met. The BN is contributing the remaining one-third of the cost.

The joint agreement was developed as part of the International Project, headed by Hans Rütimann. This is the first project to be supported by the $1 million grant awarded last year to the Commission by the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation. The French conversion effort was described as "a model for the kinds of projects that would be of immediate use to the international scholarly community" in the Commission's proposal.

In two years, we will have available a research tool which will be appreciated by French researchers, as well as by their American counterparts. I rejoice in this cooperation for the benefit of the international scholarly community to which we are very devoted.

—General Administrator of BN, Emmanuel Le Roy Ladurie

More than 140,000 monographs, mostly 19th-century French literature, have been filmed at the BN's preservation facility in Sablé. However, only about 8,000-10,000 items have been converted to machine-readable form. Early discussions among the BN, the Commission, and the Mellon Foundation indicated that these efforts could be speeded

(continued on page 2)

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117 • (202) 483-7474

National Endowment for the Humanities Announces $3 Million for Preservation

Fourteen grants totaling more than $3 million for preservation projects in 11 states were announced in late March by the National Endowment for the Humanities (NEH). The awards allow institutions to preserve materials important to the study of history, literature, philosophy, and other humanities disciplines. Seven of the grants support **microfilming of books, periodicals, and archival documents**. Four of the funded projects are part of the Endowment's **U.S. Newspaper Program**, a coordinated effort to locate, catalog, and preserve on microfilm the 250,000 newspapers published in the country since 1690. Two of the new grants will support **statewide preservation plans**, and the remaining award will fund the development of **improved archival storage techniques**.

The NEH budget for fiscal year 1991 for preservation programs is $22.6 million. Last month, the Commission — together with the Association of Research Libraries and the National Humanities Alliance — participated in joint testimony before the Subcommittee on the Interior and Related Agencies of the Committee on Appropriations in support of Congressional funding for the 1992 NEH preservation budget. Excerpts from that testimony will be included in the June 1991 Commission newsletter.

Further information on the new grants is available from the Office of Preservation, National Endowment for the Humanities, 1100 Pennsylvania Ave., NW, Washington, DC 20506.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela M. Davis · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

(continued from page 1)

up with outside financial support; consequently, the international availability of BN's register could be expedited.

The Mellon grant to the Commission, announced in February 1990, is to be used over a period of approximately three years toward costs of creating an international database of bibliographic records for preserved library materials and of facilitating cooperative preservation microfilming outside the U.S. linked to similar work in this country. The BN project is the first of a series of pilot activities to be sponsored in various countries.

International Project Tracking on Microfilming Projects

International Project Director Hans Rütimann has begun compiling a collection-level list of preservation microfilming projects abroad. The working list, which is by no means complete, now contains brief descriptions of filming activities and plans in 15 countries. Examples of entries include:

Brazil: National Plan for Microfilming Brazilian Periodicals
— More than 15,000 master negatives are made so far and a joint project with six Latin American national libraries is planned.

China: Ancient Chinese books, mostly Chinese local history; Chinese genealogy materials; "South Manchurian Railway Company" collections (The Library of Academia Sinica, Beijing).

— 2,000 titles of Chinese rare books: Qian Long, Qing Dynasty and Sung to Ming Dynasty, 960-1644 AD; doctoral dissertations (Peking University Library).

— Chinese ancient materials (14 sub-centers of the Center of National Libraries Document Microforming).

Hungary: A national program of microfilming all Hungarian newspapers began in 1969 (National Library). Between 1 and 1.5 million pages of newspapers are filmed annually. Hungarian newspapers from libraries in Slovakia and Yugoslavia have also been filmed under this program. Filming is now being extended to include journals and individual collections (manuscripts, theatrical materials, etc.).

Israel: Judaica Archival Project · Filming of the variant readings of the Babylonian Talmud; 40-volume Koosevski concordance; Eastern European Manuscript collections (i.e., the Saltykov-Schedrin Library in Leningrad permitted the filming of 17,000 Hebrew manuscripts and fragments).

Other countries in the draft list include: Australia, Austria, Canada, France, Germany, Great Britain, Japan, Poland, Spain, Taiwan, and Venezuela. Rütimann is obtaining additional information about projects in Algeria, Chile, Egypt, Syria, and Tunisia. He has asked that persons with information about additional projects contact him at the Commission.

143

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Ave., N.W. #313
Washington, D.C. 20036
Telephone: 202/483-7474
FAX: 202/483-6410
BITNET: CPA@GWUVM

ORDER FORM 5/91

MATERIALS AVAILABLE FROM THE COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

Quantity	Title	Price
_____	CPA Brochure	free
_____	"Slow Fires" Brochure	free
_____	Annual Report (July 1, 1988 - June 30, 1989)	free
_____	Annual Report (July 1, 1989 - June 30, 1990)	free
_____	Newsletters: nos. 1 - (June 1988 -) (some back issues available)	free
_____	"Spring Hill" booklet: Scholarly Resources in Art History: Issues in Preservation, Report of the Seminar, September 29 - October 1, 1988	$5.00*
_____	Report: Selection for Preservation of Research Library Materials (August 1989)	free
_____	Progress Report: The International Project (August 1989)	free
_____	Report: Mass Deacidification Procedures for Libraries and Archives: State of Development and Perspectives for Implementation in the Federal Republic of Germany by Peter Schwerdt (September 1989)	free
_____	Report: Directory - Information Sources on Scientific Research Related to the Preservation of Books, Paper and Adhesives, by Maxine Sitts (March 1990)	free
_____	Report: Technical Considerations in Choosing Mass Deacidification Processes, by Dr. Peter G. Sparks (May 1990)	$5.00*
_____	Report: Image Formats for Preservation and Access, A report of the Technology Assessment Advisory Committee to the Commission on Preservation and Access, by Michael Lesk (July 1990)	free

OVER

Quantity	Title	Price
_____	Ideas for Preservation Fund Raising: A Support Package for Libraries and Archives (July 1990)	$10.00*
_____	Report: Preservation Education Institute Final Report by Deanna B. Marcum (August 1990)	free
_____	Report: Preservation and Access Technology. The Relationship Between Digital and Other Media Conversion Processes: A Structured Glossary of Technical Terms by M. Stuart Lynn (August 1990)	$5.00*
_____	Report: Copyright and Preservation: A Serious Problem in Need of a Thoughtful Solution by Robert L. Oakley (September 1990)	$15.00*
_____	National Conference on the Development of Statewide Preservation Programs - Report of a Conference held March 1-3, 1989, in Washington, D.C. (March 1991)	$15.00*

***Commission sponsors receive all publications on a complimentary basis. For all others, orders must be prepaid, with checks (no cash) made payable to "The Commission on Preservation and Access."** Payment must be in U.S. funds. Send check with order to Trish Cece, Communications Assistant, The Commission on Preservation and Access, 1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW, Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117.

All publications have been submitted to ERIC.

This order form may be photocopied. Please type or print your name and address below.

Name _____

Title _____

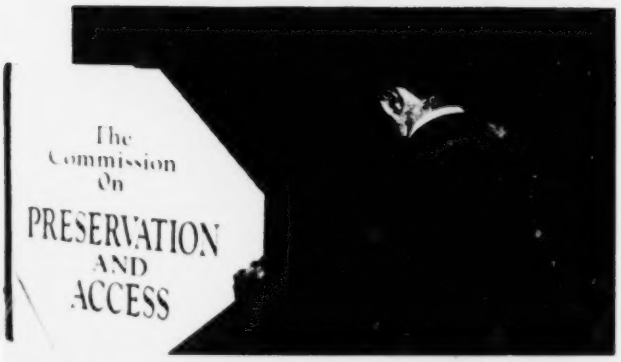
Institution _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip code _____

Country _____

Giant Brittle Book Exhibit Scheduled for Pennsylvania, Ohio, Missouri

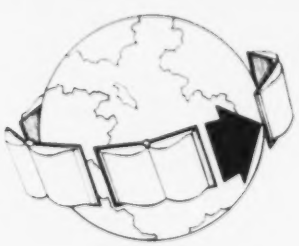


The Giant Brittle Book exhibit is scheduled to travel to Dawson, Pennsylvania, where it is being shown at the **Pittsburgh Regional Library Center** Spring Conference from May 15 to May 17, 1991. In late August, the display moves to the **Ohio State University Libraries** preservation exhibit in Columbus, where it will remain until October 11. The **American Theological Library Association** will show the giant book at the **American Academy of Religion/Society of Biblical Literature** annual meeting, to be held in Kansas City, November 23-26.

The Giant Brittle Book is available free of charge, except for shipping charges. For more information contact Trish Cece, Communications Assistant, at the Commission.

Reader's Digest Preservation Article Continues International Trek

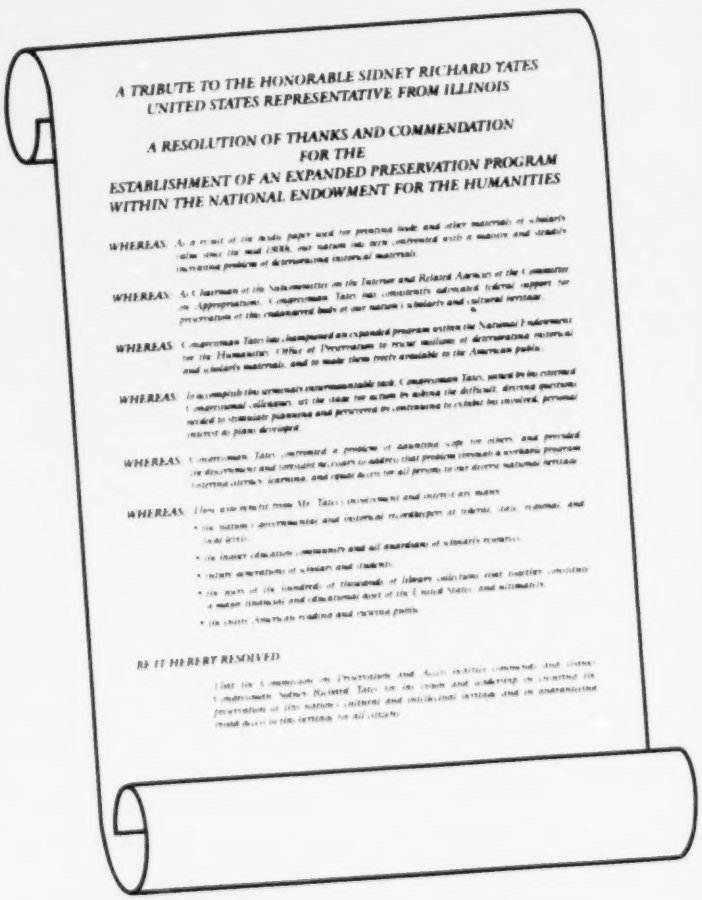
We continue to receive reports of foreign language versions of "Our Printed Past in Peril," a *Reader's Digest* article by Robert Wernick that calls for action to save books made from acid-based paper. The article has appeared in the following editions: **Portugal** (August 1990), **Brazil** (date unknown), **Far East (Hong Kong**, February 1991), and **Danish** (August 1990). Earlier Commission newsletters reported on **French, German, and British** editions. *Reader's Digest* plans to publish adapted versions of the article in most, if not all, of its 39 international editions, which are translated into 17 languages and read by 38 million people.



Congressman Sidney Yates Honored for Preservation Advocacy

Congressman Sidney Richard Yates, a major proponent of federal support for nationwide, coordinated preservation activities and a chief advocate for sustained funding for the National Endowment for the Humanities preservation program, was presented with a resolution of thanks and commendation by the Commission last month. The U.S. Representative from Illinois was cited for his "vision and leadership in ensuring the preservation of this nation's cultural and intellectual heritage and in guaranteeing broad access to this heritage for all citizens."

A limited number of copies of the resolution are available at no charge from Trish Cece, Communications Assistant, at the Commission.



A TRIBUTE TO THE HONORABLE SIDNEY RICHARD YATES
UNITED STATES REPRESENTATIVE FROM ILLINOIS

A RESOLUTION OF THANKS AND COMMENDATION
FOR THE
ESTABLISHMENT OF AN EXPANDED PRESERVATION PROGRAM
WITHIN THE NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE HUMANITIES

WHEREAS

WHEREAS

WHEREAS

WHEREAS

WHEREAS

WHEREAS

BE IT HEREBY RESOLVED

For several days after my first book was published I carried it about in my pocket, and took surreptitious peeps at it to make sure the ink had not faded.

—James M. Barrie

Update: Statewide Preservation Programs Conference Report

Distribution of the report from the 1989 statewide preservation programs conference, announced in last month's Commission newsletter, has been delayed. We expect to receive shipment of the publication from Harvard University this month. We will promptly distribute complimentary copies as described in the April 1991 newsletter and fill any prepaid orders.

Our children and communities must be armed with the powerful tools of history, much still locked away in dusty archives, for that knowledge is the best source of hope and dreams. Our children can and must be active in their own salvation which is essential not only for their personal survival but for the survival of our cities, indeed our nation.

Please make sure that the information in archives reaches the children. Please don't think they are too young! Their energy and creativity will astound and delight all of us!

—Excerpt from testimony of Joan Maynard, Executive Director, Society for the Preservation of Weeksville and Bedford-Stuyvesant History, speaking on "Archives, Unique Research Resources, and the Future of New York," at a public hearing on October 4, 1990 at New York's City Hall; *For the Record*, The Newsletter of the New York State Archives and Records Administration and the New York State Historical Records Advisory Board, Vol. 9, No. 1, 1991.

Please help reduce newsletter mailing costs by notifying us of address changes and deletions. Send address corrections to Trish Cece, Communications Assistant. Enclose a copy of your current mailing label.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Providing Access To The Accumulated Human Record As Far Into The Future As Possible

Number 35

Newsletter

June 1991

Congressional Testimony Calls for Full-Level Support for NEH Preservation Program

Testimony of a research library director and a Pulitzer Prize-winning scholar before the House Appropriations Committee on April 18, 1991, stressed the importance of sustained funding for the National Endowment for the Humanities to maintain the momentum of its 20-year brittle books program and other preservation activities. Betty Bengtson, library director at the University of Washington, Seattle, and Dr. James McPherson, Edwards Professor of American History, Princeton University, testified for the Association of Research Libraries, the National Humanities Alliance, and the Commission.

Speaking as one of many concerned stewards of unique national resources, Bengtson strongly advocated the continuation of full funding for the five-year preservation plan first introduced to the Congress in 1988. That plan, articulated by Endowment Chair Lynne Cheney, called for $17.7 million in the year 1992. The NEH request for FY92 proposed a modest increase of $200,000 over FY91, to $16.6 million, rather than the $1.1 million increase projected in the five-year plan.

Bengtson's testimony urged restoration of the full $17.7 million, and also requested continued funding (for up to 10 percent of the microfilming budget) to offset expenses for the stabilization of illustrated materials and repair of damage incurred in microfilming. In addition, the testimony called for a supplement of $1.5 million to respond to the expanding momentum in the U.S. Newspaper Program and the efforts to preserve special collections of historical records, documents, and manuscripts.

Providing a scholar's perspective was Dr. James McPherson, author of the book *Battle Cry of Freedom*, which won the Pulitzer Prize for History in 1989. McPherson described his discovery of deteriorating materials while conducting research for his doctoral dissertation, which also became his first book:

"As I turned these precious but highly acidic pages, some of them tore and crumbled in my hands no matter how carefully and delicately I handled them. I was horrified by the experience of damaging, perhaps destroying the very sources that nurtured my knowledge. . . .

Over the thirty years since that experience, things have changed and improved a good deal. Nearly all of the newspapers and many of the pamphlets I used then have subsequently been microfilmed. . . . This has been a great benefit not only to me but to many students whose graduate and undergraduate research I have directed."

Betty Bengtson, Director of Libraries, University of Washington, Seattle, and Dr. James M. McPherson, Edwards Professor of American History, Princeton University, show an embrittled book — Mortality Statistics 1935 (U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of the Census) — to the Subcommittee on the Interior and Related Agencies, Committee on Appropriations, U.S. House of Representatives, on April 18, 1991.

Cornell Digital Preservation Contract Extended Six Months

The Commission has extended for six months its contract with Cornell University for a joint digital preservation demonstration project. As noted by the study's principals, the project has made substantial progress over the past year, but the development, testing, and modification of the prototype equipment and software has occurred over a longer period than originally anticipated. The August 1990 and March 1991 newsletters include articles on this project, which is now scheduled to conclude in December 1991.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117 • (202) 483-7474

Mellon Grant to Support Mass Deacidification Round-Table

The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation has awarded a grant to the Northeast Document Conservation Center, a non-profit regional center specializing in preservation of paper based materials, to sponsor a round-table on mass deacidification. The two-day invitational planning meeting will be held September 12-13, 1991, at NEDCC's headquarters in Andover, MA. Participation is limited to ten members of the Association of Research Libraries, which is cooperating in the event. The keynote speaker will be Richard DeGennaro, Roy E. Larsen Librarian of Harvard College and former Commission board member. Organizers of the meeting will publish the central papers and discussion as a book, edited by Dr. Peter G. Sparks, who is coordinating the program. Sparks is the author of the Commission report, *Technical Considerations in Choosing Mass Deacidification Processes.*

NCLIS Requests States to Use Alkaline Paper

The National Commission on Libraries and Information Science (NCLIS) has requested all state governors and state librarians to inform them of their progress regarding the use of permanent paper. In March 1991, Charles E. Reid, Chairman of the U.S. NCLIS, sent a letter to all states urging them to use alkaline paper. NCLIS will assemble the information in a report to the President and Congress, which will describe the status of state-level implementation of the national policy on permanent paper (Public Law 101-423).

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela M. Davis · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

Library of Congress Preservation Office Publishes Mass Deacidification Bibliography

Bibliography on Mass Deacidification, a 32-page report by Carole Zimmermann, is now available from the Library of Congress Preservation Office. According to Zimmermann, the purpose of the report is to reach all audiences interested in the preservation of book and paper materials through mass deacidification. The bibliography provides a broad presentation of available literature, including materials from scientific, library science, and popular works.

Kenneth E. Harris, Director for Preservation and a member of the Commission's National Advisory Council on Preservation, states in the foreword: "Mass deacidification of paper was not too long ago only a wishful concept. Much to the advantage of libraries and archives, this budding technology continues to advance with a fresh infusion of ideas and resources. The hectic pace of progress over the past few years has justifiably translated into an increasing proliferation of literature. It is hoped that this bibliography, which we expect to update periodically, will serve to keep us informed about recent developments in the field."

Bibliography on Mass Deacidification is available at no charge from the Preservation Office, Library of Congress, Madison Building, LM-G21, Washington, D.C. 20540.

Preservation Article Wins Award From Association of Physical Plant Administrators

"The Library Environment and the Preservation of Library Materials," by Carolyn L. Harris and Paul N. Banks, has been selected as the winner of the 1991 Rex Dillow Award for Outstanding Article by the Professional Affairs Committee of the Association of Physical Plant Administrators of Universities and Colleges (APPA). The award will be presented on July 23 at APPA's Annual Meeting in Orlando, FL.

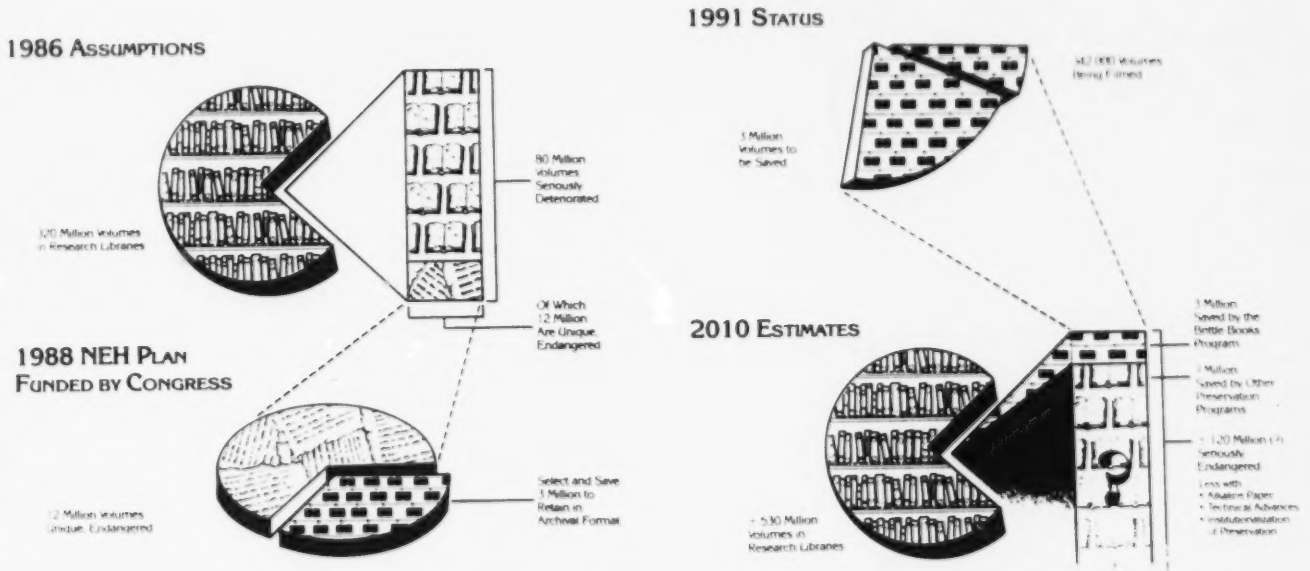
The article first appeared in the Fall 1990 issue of *Facilities Manager* and is now reprinted in *Preservation of Library and Archival Materials*, a compilation of presentations from the seminar on environmental conditions for housing of library and archival materials, held February 28-March 1, 1991, in Washington, DC. That seminar was sponsored jointly by APPA and the Commission. The compilation is available for $28.00 to APPA member institutions and for $35.00 to non-members (includes postage and shipping). Send check with order to APPA Publications, P.O. Box 753, Waldorf, MD 20604.

YATES HONORED FOR EXPANDED PRESERVATION PROGRAM

U.S. Representative Sidney Yates (right) accepts a resolution of thanks and commendation from Dr. Billy E. Frye, chairman of the Commission (left), during a meeting at the congressman's office, April 18, 1991. Joining in the applause are Hennette Avram, Associate Libranan for Collections Services, Library of Congress, and Dr. James M. McPherson, Edwards Professor of American History, Princeton University. Avram is a member of the Commission board. McPherson is author of *Battle Cry of Freedom*, which won the Pulitzer Prize for History in 1989. The Commission met with the Illinois congressman to express appreciation for his leadership and vision in establishing an expanded preservation program within the National Endowment for the Humanities.

Contributors to the framed resolution:
—Hand-marbled paper by Don Guyot, Colophon Book Arts, Olympia, WA.
—Acid-, alum-, and rosin-free paper by Mohawk Paper Company, Cohoes, New York.
—Typesetting & design by Design Innovations-Ten Point Type, Washington, DC.
—Matting and framing by B. David's Custom Framing, Washington, DC.

THE 20-YEAR BRITTLE BOOKS PROGRAM


1986 ASSUMPTIONS
120 Million Volumes in Research Libraries
80 Million Volumes Seriously Deteriorated
Of Which 2 Million Are Unique, Endangered
1988 NEH PLAN FUNDED BY CONGRESS
2 Million Volumes Unique, Endangered
Select and Save 1 Million to Retain in Archival Format
1991 STATUS
1 Million Volumes to be Saved
2010 ESTIMATES
1 Million Saved by the Brittle Books Program
1 Million Saved by Other Preservation Programs
Less with
• Alkaline Paper
• Technical Advances
• Institutionalization of Preservation
+ 530 Million Volumes in Research Libraries

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Association of Research Libraries Introduces *Preservation Program Models*

The Association of Research Libraries (ARL) has announced the publication of *Preservation Program Models*, a report to assist research library directors in their efforts to shape programs that will produce significant advances in preserving North American research collections for current and future use. Preparation of this report was supported by the H.W. Wilson Foundation. It discusses "the ten components of a comprehensive preservation program to which library administrators must give attention," and includes organizational models for preservation programs based on four size groupings of ARL libraries. Copies are available from the ARL Executive Office, 1527 New Hampshire Ave. NW, Washington, DC 20036, for $20 ($40 for non-ARL members).

College Libraries Committee Reviews Past Two Years, Looks Ahead to New Agenda

The College Libraries Committee recently concluded its second year of operation and is preparing a report detailing its accomplishments. Since the committee has proven particularly valuable in incorporating college libraries into the national preservation agenda, the members agreed to continue to serve on the committee as currently constituted and to develop a proposed agenda for further action.

The committee's education sub-group has selected 16 persons, including the winner of a Commission-sponsored scholarship, to attend the July 1991 Preservation Management Seminar cosponsored by the Commission and SOLINET, Inc. (see the January 1991 newsletter). Members were very satisfied with the number of applicants for this newly developed seminar and with the high level of individual qualifications and institutional support shown in the applications. The names of those selected will be made public after they confirm their attendance. The committee will conduct an evaluation of the event six months after its completion to measure its effects on institutional practice and is moving ahead with plans to hold a second seminar in 1992 in either New England or the Mid-Atlantic region.

The committee met at Commission headquarters in April; its next meeting will be on October 4, 1991.

Stamp Collectors Encourage Preservation Action

The Arthur Salm Foundation is offering stamp collectors free copies of "Collectors Club of Chicago, Report Number 1" (March 1991), a report on the acidic content of album pages. The foundation also is encouraging all album page manufacturers to offer acid-free pages to stamp collectors. The new report includes information on 64 different album pages and a glossary of technical terms. Initial tests found no difference in the acidic content between album pages and the same page with a plastic overlay. Loose-leaf pages bought from discount stores were also tested, since many collectors use these for storage.

To obtain the report, send a legal-sized, stamped, addressed envelope to the Arthur Salm Foundation, 1029 N. Dearborn Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Further reports are planned.

We confront the danger of historical amnesia. As the sources for understanding our national past deteriorate and vanish, we will gradually lose our sense of identity, our capacity to understand who and what we are, how we got that way, and why. We will be unable to grapple with the problems that confront us today and in the future in an intelligent way because we will not be able to analyze the origins and development of these problems.

—Dr. James McPherson, from April 18, 1991, testimony in support of NEH funding.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Providing Access To The Accumulated Human Record As Far Into The Future As Possible

Number 36 July 1991

Newsletter

Guidelines for International Database Nearing Completion

Several nations cooperating to develop minimum data requirements for an international register of microform masters are close to reaching an agreement that will help assure broad access to preserved materials.

Collaboration on the requirements document has been steadily underway since a Commission-sponsored meeting in Zurich, Switzerland, May 13-16, 1990. Meeting participants included representatives from the United States, Canada, Venezuela, United Kingdom, France, West Germany, East Germany, and Switzerland. (See the February 1990, June 1990 and July 1990 Newsletters for background information.)

Tom Delsey, Director of Policy and Planning, National Library of Canada, is coordinating the development of the document. "It is clear that we are close to reaching an agreement on the minimum data requirements," he noted in a recent report to the Commission. Comments received on the second draft have been generally supportive. Participants are now considering proposed courses of action to deal with the remaining outstanding issues.

Commission Engages Margaret Child as Program Consultant for Non-print Materials

As this newsletter was going to press, the Commission announced it had engaged Margaret Child, former Assistant Director for Research Services of the Smithsonian Institution Libraries, as a part-time Program Consultant. Dr. Child will be working with the library and archival community to develop and coordinate collaborative programs for the preservation of non-print materials. More information on this initiative will be announced in future newsletters.

Giant Brittle Book Travels to Iowa

The Giant Brittle Book exhibit travelled to Des Moines, Iowa, June 6-10, where it was displayed by the State Historical Society of Iowa at the 1991 Conference of the Congress of Historical Organizations.

Preservation Management Seminar Participants Selected

The College Libraries Committee's education sub-group has selected 16 persons, including the winner of a Commission-sponsored scholarship, to attend the Preservation Management Seminar for College Librarians this month at Washington & Lee University, Lexington, VA. The seminar, co-sponsored by SOLINET and the Commission, is geared for library staff with part-time preservation responsibilities. A primary goal is to help staff members develop the management skills and implement the activities that contribute to successful preservation programs. The Commission and SOLINET are sharing costs of design and first-time operation, with the expectation that the event may be repeated. The names of those selected are listed below.

Anne Armour, Head of Archives and Special Collections
Jessie Ball duPont Library, University of the South
David Kearley, University Librarian

Krista L. Armstrong, Assistant Librarian, Technical Services
Howe Library, Shenandoah University
Christopher A. Bean, Director of Library Services

Ruth Ash, Archivist
Memorial Library, Berry College
Ondina S. Gonzalez, Director of the Library

Art Bagley, Jr., General Librarian
Merl Kelce Library, University of Tampa
Lydia Acosta, Library Director

Robin Brabham, Special Collections Librarian
Atkins Library, University of North Carolina at Charlotte
Raymond Frankle, Director of the Library

Margaret Clerkin, Bindery Supervisor
Starr Library, Middlebury College
Ronald E. Rucker, Library Director

Catherine L. Crohan, Assistant Librarian
Jerome Dawson Memorial Library, Siena College
Catherine E. Welsh, Library Director

Gail Garfinkle, Asst. Reference Librarian & Coordinator of Special Collections
Robert Scott Small Library, College of Charleston
David J. Cohen, Director of Libraries

continued on page 2

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117 • (202) 483-7474

continued from page 1

Preservation Management Seminar

Participants

Robert Garzillo, Technical Services Librarian
RISD Library, Rhode Island School of Design
Carol S. Terry, Director of Library Services

Jane A. Hedberg, Bibliographic Services Librarian
Margaret Clapp Library, Wellesley College
Micheline E. Jedrey, College Librarian

Vickie L. Kline, Head of Technical Services
Schmidt Library, York College of Pennsylvania
Susan M. Campbell, Library Director

Annette Morris, Collection Conservator
Edward Bennett Williams Library, Georgetown University Law Center
Robert L. Oakley, Director of the Law Library

Victoria Thomas Stanton, Head, Serials Department
Thomas G. Carpenter Library, University of North Florida
Andrew Farkas, Director of Libraries

Rebecca Stuhr-Rommereim, Preservation Officer
Burling Library, Grinnell College
Anne Kintner, Acting Librarian of the College

Michael Sutherland, Special Collections Librarian
Mary Norton Clapp Library, Occidental College
Jacquelyn M. Morris, College Librarian

Yolanda Warren, Reference Librarian and Assistant Professor
University Library, Washington & Lee University
Barbara J. Brown, University Librarian

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela M. Davis · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

—Excerpts From Seminar Applications

"This training will enable the UNF library to further develop preservation activities, and will provide insight into work on special collections, microfilming and stack maintenance. In addition, in three to five years, we will begin planning for an addition to our building, and issues of environmental control will have to be addressed in the planning process."

—Andrew Farkas
Director of Libraries
University of North Florida

"As you can tell, the Georgetown University Law Library is fully committed to its preservation program, and hopes to be a key library in the development of programs and policies for the preservation of legal materials."

—Robert L. Oakley
Director of the Law Library
Georgetown University Law Center

"The content of the week-long seminar is ideally suited for Wellesley's needs at this time. Though we have made progress in meeting our objectives regarding preservation, we are at a critical stage in development. The initial planning for the facility has highlighted the need for a comprehensive programmatic statement for preservation. I believe that the training Ms. Hedberg will receive will serve as a catalyst for our efforts by providing a framework for decision-making and policy-setting."

—Micheline E. Jedrey
College Librarian
Wellesley College

Phase 6 of ATLA Preservation Program to Begin This Month

This month the American Theological Library Association (ATLA) begins Phase 6 of its Monograph Preservation Program — the filming of embrittled monographs from the 19th and early 20th century that are denominationally specific. Phase 6 will continue for ten years.

ATLA's goal is to document the 19th-century American religious experience and migration of religious ideas, thought, and culture from Europe, Africa and beyond. This will be accomplished by filming a wide range of materials produced by, on or about individual religious groups. A systematic approach will be used as particular topical areas are covered annually of each denomination. These include denominational histories, doctrines, liturgies, missions, religious education, hymnody, biographies, and popular religion and piety. ATLA will preserve not only the history of those religious bodies that have survived, but also the history, theology and mission of those groups that no longer exist.

Denominations to be filmed in Phase 6 (1991-92) include Methodists, Lutherans, Roman Catholics, Quakers and Unitarians. For more information about Phase 6 call ATLA at (708) 869-7788.

Mass Deacidification Update

International Developments

In a recent update to the Commission, Hans Rütimann, Program Officer for the International Project, reported some news about mass deacidification activities in France and Germany.

The Bibliothèque de France has signed a contract with USSI (Usine Spéciale de Séparation Isotopique) and the German chemical company Hoechst for the development and application of a treatment that promises the advantages of existing methods (short treatment period, closed process with no environmental damages, paper strengthening, etc.) with no disadvantages. More information is expected from the Bibliothèque de France and the Bibliothèque Nationale this month.

The Deutsche Bibliothek Deacidification Plant developed by Battelle in Frankfurt am Main was officially dedicated in the Fall of 1990, and further testing is currently underway. The plant's concept is based on a nonaqueous MMC process, using magnesium-methylcarbonate or other organic alkaline magnesium compounds dissolved in a mixture of alcohols and CFCs. The main features of the concept are to close the solvent cycle, to stop the emission of CFC-solvents, to reduce the total treatment time per batch with respect to higher capacities and reduced treatment cost per book, and to make possible easy in-library operation. Further tests will be conducted — based on experiments elsewhere — to avoid damage to treated materials. Battelle has announced that the first German pilot plant will have an annual capacity of 80,000 to 250,000 books. The project is financed by the German Ministry of Research and Technology.

LC Moves Forward With Mass Deacidification Program

As reported in a recent issue of the *LC Information Bulletin*, the Library of Congress (LC) is moving ahead with plans to preserve its collections using commercially available mass deacidification technologies.

The program's goal is to process one million books a year and extend the life of books at least threefold, from 300 to 500 years for new books, by neutralizing acid and by depositing an alkaline reserve (an acid neutralizer) to protect them from pollution. It will take 20 years to process the 14 million books in LC's general and law collections and all incoming books. A panel of experts is evaluating proposals for a five-year contract.

In September 1990, LC issued a request for proposals for deacidification of its collections. The solicitation is performance-based, that is, the performance requirements are stated in terms of expected results. Proposals for various processes were received by LC in March and are under evaluation by a panel of experts including library administrators, conservators and scientists.

LC hopes to contract for mass deacidification services this summer. Assuming one year for the construction of the processing facilities, production-level deacidification of the LC's collections will begin in 1992 and continue, under this five-year contract through 1997. This contract is for the deacidification of books only.

Cooperative Preservation Photocopying Project: A Case Study

The following report describes a cooperative preservation strategy developed by 41 law libraries to provide continuing access to a major reference tool in response to a lack of interest from the reprint publishing community. Their experience represents a creative alternative for re-issuing embrittled titles on acid-free paper, and provides some promise that the preservation market can become a more viable economic venture for publishers in the future.

In 1988 Georgetown University Law Library, together with more than 40 other law libraries nationwide, completed a cooperative preservation photocopying project, involving a 31-volume legal reference set. They contracted with LBS Archival Products in Des Moines, Iowa, to disbind and reproduce the brittle volumes on acid-free paper and then bind the reproduction.

* * *

Initially, it was not the intention of Georgetown University Law Library to administer a large-scale cooperative preservation photocopying project. However, the library needed a serviceable copy of *Federal Cases, 1789-1880*, an important legal reference set. . . .

Georgetown University Law Library owned two sets, but a detailed inventory showed that both were in poor condition. Some volumes were worse than others, but many of the bindings were becoming detached. The paper in most volumes was brittle or weak, so they could not easily be rebound or repaired. The set was available in microfiche through Law Library Microform Consortium, but Georgetown Law saw a need to have a hard copy edition of this reference set to meet the daily research needs of students and faculty.

continued on page 4

continued from page 3

Georgetown Law contacted several other major academic law libraries that acknowledged their *Federal Cases* volumes were also very deteriorated. We began discussing how we might persuade West Publishing Company, the original publisher, or some other reprinter to reprint the set. We also considered whether our respective libraries would be interested in having the set reproduced on acid-free paper by commercial high-speed photocopy methods. We wondered whether we could obtain a reduction in the price of preservation photocopying if we did several copies at once.

In answer to further inquiries, West Publishing Company stated that *Federal Cases* volumes were no longer available, and that they did not intend to print more. They had no objection to our finding another reprinter. We asked the major law reprinters if they could reprint, but found that for the most part they lacked interest. We were told it is not economical to reprint with a limited market of potential customers. . . .

Because of its size, the project threatened to become a logistical nightmare; it did present a definite challenge. Archival Products had successfully completed a similar large-scale project involving the Florida Territorial Laws in which about 400,000 page-copies were made. The *Federal Cases* project, however, was even more massive. When completed, 1.8 million pages of *Federal Cases* had been photocopied. . . .

The last reproduction set of *Federal Cases* was sold in 1990. Since that time an additional request has been received. As it is Archival Products' policy to retain printing masters for all sets, they will be able to reproduce more sets. Considering the size of the job, it may be economical to wait until several requests are received and run them at the same time. In the meantime, Archival Products continues to improve their equipment, supplies and processes. Any librarian interested in obtaining a copy of *Federal Cases* may wish to contact LBS Archival Products directly at (800) 526-5640.

—Excerpted with the permission of Linda Nainis from her article in Abbey Newsletter, *April 1991, volume 15, pp. 26-28. [Nainis was Assistant Law Librarian for Collection Management when she shepherded the reproduction project for Georgetown University Law Library, Washington, D.C.]*

Harvard University Library Task Group Publishes Report

The Harvard University Library Task Group on Collection Preservation Priorities has published a 74-page report, *Preserving Harvard's Retrospective Collections* (April 1991). The publication is the group's first step towards the development and systemization of a comprehensive preservation program for Harvard's library collections.

In the executive summary, the group states: "Harvard's response must also be shaped by the preservation activities of others (and outside funding), as well as by our desire to contribute as significantly as possible to the national and international effort to preserve texts through microfilming." Topics discussed include Selection for Preservation Action, Preservation Strategies and Preserving Access. The report concludes with a summary of recommendations, which is intended to suggest a direction and priorities for individual library directors, senior librarians and university officials.

The publication is available for $15.00 from the Harvard University Library Publications Office, 25 Mt. Auburn Street, Cambridge, MA 02138.

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Providing Access To The Accumulated Human Record As Far Into The Future As Possible

Number 37

Newsletter

Summertime Good News Edition

August 1991

In keeping with a two-year tradition, the August Newsletter once again focuses on summertime good news. Among the positive developments: The availability of new Commission reports, progress of cooperative preservation projects, endorsement of permanent paper use in Europe, and acceptance of a new Commission board member. . . .

Dr. John L. Heilbron Joins Board

Dr. John L. Heilbron, Vice-Chancellor of the University of California, Berkeley, has accepted an invitation to join the Commission's board. Dr. Heilbron was appointed Vice-Chancellor of the Berkeley campus in June 1990; in that position he is the senior campus executive under the chancellor, with a broad range of responsibilities including planning and academic coordination.

Dr. Heilbron is Class of 1936 Professor of History and the History of Science at U.C., Berkeley. He writes about the history of the physical sciences and their institutional settings from the Scientific Revolution of the 17th century forward. His work on the 18th century includes *Electricity in the 17th & 18th centuries: A Study in Early Modern Physics* (1979), and *Elements of Early Modern Physics* (1981). His latest book, written in collaboration with R.W. Seidel, is *A History of the Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory*, Vol. 1, *Lawrence and his Laboratory* (1990). He is currently completing a small book with the working title, *Quantitative Science Around 1800*.

Dr. Heilbron earned his undergraduate and masters degrees in physics and his PhD. in history at U.C., Berkeley. He served as assistant professor at the University of Pennsylvania and as A.D. White Visiting Professor at Cornell University, and was Chairman of the Berkeley Division of the Academic Senate of the University of California for two years prior to his appointment as Vice-Chancellor. He is an elected foreign member of the Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences (1987) and a fellow of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences (1988). Dr. Heilbron holds an honorary doctorate in philosophy from the University of Bologna (1988) and is a member of the American Philosophical Society (1990).

New Report on Availability of Latin American Preservation Microforms

A new report issued to the Commission's constituency last month — *The Production and Bibliographic Control of Latin American Preservation Microforms in the United States* — summarizes the current state of Latin Americanist microfilming activity in the United States and, to a lesser degree, in other world areas. The 40-page report was prepared by Dan C. Hazen, Selector for Latin America, Spain, and Portugal at Harvard College Library, who conducted a six-month study under contract to the Commission.

The study addressed one of the major issues raised by participants in a May 1990 planning meeting convened in Zurich, Switzerland by the Commission. At that meeting, representatives of eight countries discussed the need for an internationally-compatible database capacity for preservation microfilm records. One immediate concern was that inadvertent duplication of filming of Latin American materials might occur as preservation activities increased during international preparations to celebrate the quincentenary of the Spanish and Portuguese presence in the Americas.

In addition to providing specifics on the filming of Latin American materials, the report is expected to be useful to scholars, to contribute to further development of international preservation strategies, and to encourage similar reviews in other collections organized by geographical area. Accompanying the report is a support document, "Preserved Research Collections on Latin America." This eight-page listing was extracted from a more extensive database of federal- and state-funded preservation grants compiled by the Commission's Communications Program.

continued on page 2

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117 • (202) 483-7474

continued from page 1

The Commission has distributed complimentary copies of both reports to those on its mailing list. Additional copies are available while supplies last for $5.00, with required prepayment by check (U.S. funds only). Checks should be made payable to "Commission on Preservation and Access," and sent to the attention of Trish Cece, Communications Assistant. Commission sponsors receive all publications at **no charge**.

Updated Brochure Available

The Commission has published an updated brochure that describes its initiatives for 1991-92. The brochure briefly discusses the Brittle Books program; selection of materials for preservation; technologies that offer options for enhanced access to preserved materials; improvement in the quality of materials used to produce documents of enduring value; the International Project's efforts to contribute to a compatible, international database of preservation records; integrating preservation into library school instruction; supporting cooperative programs; linking diverse constituencies through the Communications Program; and expanding the public's access to preserved materials.

The 8-page brochure also lists the Commission's sponsors, members, committees and task forces. A form is included for readers to request more information on various topics related to preservation, a list of publications and resources, and/or a newsletter subscription. Single or multiple copies of the brochure are available upon request from Trish Cece, Communications Assistant. If you're requesting multiple copies, please let us know how you plan to use them.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela M. Davis · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

Yale Completes Report on Feasibility Study of Converting Microfilm to Digital Imagery

A new report to the Commission from Yale University explores the feasibility of a project to study the means, costs and benefits of converting large quantities of preserved library materials from microfilm to digital images. The 41-page report, *From Microfilm to Digital Imagery*, was developed under contract to the Commission by Donald J. Waters, Head, Systems Office, Yale University Library.

In his study, Waters identifies requirements for a major, multi-year project to convert microfilmed texts to digital images, to provide both intra- and inter-institutional access to the stored images, and to investigate the broader implications for enhanced intellectual access to digitized scholarly materials. The report includes a vision statement, a model of incremental investment, a description of system architecture, and a detailed plan of work for the larger project.

Complimentary copies of *From Microfilm to Digital Imagery* have been distributed to the Commission's mailing list. Additional copies are available, while supplies last, for $5.00, with prepayment by check required (U.S. funds only). Checks should be made payable to "Commission on Preservation and Access," and mailed to the attention of Trish Cece, Communications Assistant.

Commission Intern Investigating Cooperative Preservation Strategies

During the months of mid-May through July, the Commission hosted an intern. Connie Stevenson, from the School of Library and Information Science at the Catholic University of America, came to the Commission to earn credit for a practicum in the area of preservation in the school's MLS program. In conjunction with the Communications Program at the Commission, Connie informally collected information on cooperative preservation programs and projects.

The perpetual and rapidly declining state of collections due to acidic paper, the economic strain of preservation and conservation upon budgets, and the difficulty of duplicating preservation resources at individual institutions has brought cooperative preservation to the top of many state, regional, and local agendas. It is this new demand for cooperative preservation efforts that prompted Connie's research project. The research will produce an information resource to be made available through the Commission.

European Librarians and Publishers Urge Widespread Use of Permanent Paper

The European Librarians and Publishers (ELP) Working Group has stated that it is urgently necessary from now on to use acid-free age-resistant paper and to support initiatives and strategies leading to such use. ELP is calling for governmental agencies to support further research concerning permanent paper, and is asking the Council of Europe and the Commission of the European Communities for their support and initiatives for standardization.

In issuing a set of recommendations to provide a basis for long-term safeguarding of the printed word, ELP stressed that permanent paper standards have to be compatible within the European Community. The recommendations take into account recent changes in paper making: "There is no longer a particular problem in producing acid-free paper. It is available in increasing quantities, and price can no longer be an objection."

— ABI-Technik 11. 1991, N.2 page 149.

Two Pennsylvania Foundations Support Preservation Activities

The Pew Charitable Trusts have awarded a grant of $2.77 million for a collaborative library project to improve access to important holdings of rare books, manuscripts, archives, films, photographs and drawings in 16 Philadelphia-area research libraries. The project, "Initiative for the 1990s," is being undertaken by the Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries. The five-year effort will add a quarter-million computerized descriptions of holdings in Philadelphia libraries to the electronic cataloging networks. The Pew grant is being matched by $1.38 million from private, public and institutional sources.

Last year the William Penn Foundation began funding a three-year grant for the Conservation Center for Art and Historic Artifacts' (CCAHA) Preservation Needs Assessment Program. CCAHA offers expertise and financial support to small-to-mid-sized local museums, historic houses and other institutions with historic collections. Applications for participation in the second year of the program must be submitted by October 15, 1991. For more information contact CCAHA at (215) 545-0613.

National Advisory Council on Preservation Gains New Member

Connie Brooks has joined the National Advisory Council on Preservation (NACP) as the representative for the American Library Association. Brooks serves as chief of the Preservation Department for Stanford University Libraries. The NACP, which meets annually, is composed of representatives from 22 library, academic, governmental and scholarly organizations concerned with preservation and access issues.

Multi-University Cooperative Plans for Small-Scale Mass Deacidification

The Committee for Institutional Cooperation (CIC) Libraries are positioning themselves to begin mass deacidification on a small scale as soon as it can be done responsibly. Following two initial tests of the process, a third test run is now underway. At a meeting in late June, all 13 CIC Libraries decided to send materials to the mass deacidification facilities for this test run. Each participating library will experience first-hand the organizational issues of mass deacidification, including selection of materials, in-house staffing and procedural issues, quality control work, and marking or recording treatment.

All known mass deacidification vendors were invited to conduct the test runs, with two choosing to participate. A total of approximately 1,700 items will be deacidified with the completion of the three test runs. Before the end of the year, the CIC Task Force on Mass Deacidification plans to issue a document reporting on its activities and making recommendations.

The CIC is an academic consortium of major midwestern research universities, including the University of Chicago, the University of Illinois at Chicago, the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, the University of Iowa, Indiana University, the University of Michigan, Michigan State University, the University of Minnesota, Northwestern University, Ohio State University, Pennsylvania State University, Purdue University and the University of Wisconsin-Madison. For further information, contact Sue Nutty, CIC Mass Deacidification Coordinator, at (708) 467-1379.

We have preserved the Book, and the Book has preserved us.
—David Ben-Gurion

Summer Housecleaning Yields Free Articles, Reports

While cleaning its shelves to make room for new publications, the Commission recently discovered some "oldies but goodies." The following articles and reports are available free, while supplies last, in single or multiple copies. Send your request to Trish Cece, Communications Assistant.

"American National Standard for Information Sciences — Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials," 1985. From the National Information Standards Organization: Camera-ready copies in various sizes of the "infinity" symbol used to designate use of permanent paper for printed library materials. Also, guidance on how publishers can comply with the standard and how they can place the statement and infinity symbol in their publications.

"Brittle Books and Journals," by Philip H. Abelson (editorial), *Science*, October 30, 1987.

Our Memory at Risk, Preserving New York's Unique Research Resources — A Report and Recommendations to the Citizens of New York by the New York Document Conservation Advisory Council, 1988.

"Publications on Permanent Paper," a campus memo from Philip Leinbach (Director, Tulane University Libraries).

Reprint from *Research Update*, Winter 1990, "Preserving Our Intellectual Record: An Exercise in Mutability," by Tina L. Creguer. Published by University Microfilms International, Ann Arbor, MI.

"RLG Contributes to National Preservation Effort," *The Research Libraries Group News*, Issue No. 20, Fall 1989.

"Strathmore Paper Report — Archival Paper Research," published by the Strathmore Paper Company, 1990. Discusses art conservation, archivability and acid paper.

National Conference on the Development of Statewide Preservation Programs · Report of a Conference held March 1-3, 1989, in Washington, D.C. has been distributed by the Commission to its sponsors, state library and archives agencies, and others on the mailing list. Remaining copies are available, while supplies last, for $15.00 (U.S. funds required) from the Commission. Send checks made payable to the "Commission on Preservation and Access" to Trish Cece, Communications Assistant. The publication has been submitted to ERIC, the Educational Resources Information Center.

"Stability, Care and Handling of Microforms, Magnetic Media and Optical Disks" by William Saffady (*Library Technology Reports*, V.27, n.1, January-February 1991) addresses the materials sciences aspects of nonprint media, and is of interest from both technical and practical aspects, according to Alan Calmes, a member of the Commission's National Advisory Council on Preservation. The report also serves as a bibliographical essay on a wide variety of up-to-date references regarding the materials, systems, uses, and expectations of each medium. *Library Technology Reports* is published by the American Library Association, 50 East Huron Street, Chicago, IL 60611. Single issues, when available, are $45.00 each ($30.00 to current subscribers).

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Providing Access To The Accumulated Human Record As Far Into The Future As Possible

Number 38

Newsletter

September 1991

Management Seminar Teaches Strategy

Preservation Administrators From 16 College Libraries Translate Theory into Practice

Individual responsibility for learning, flexible instruction tailored to college libraries' needs, and lots of group work applying management principles to practical products contributed to a "tough, but incredibly great experience," according to instructors and participants of the July Preservation Management Seminar cosponsored by the Commission and the SOLINET Preservation Program.

. . . I have more confidence. I have reinforcement on what I'm doing right and directions for expansion/ improvement.

The marathon seven-day event, which included advance readings and day and evening sessions, was designed by SOLINET preservation staff and the Commission's College Libraries Committee, composed of eight college library directors. Two major training objectives were to help attendees develop a solid base of plans for addressing their libraries' most pressing preservation needs, and to enable libraries to devise a process for managing preservation activities, not as a separate department, but incorporated into the existing organization.

It really was preservation boot camp. Great to be steeped (if not marinated) in preservation information.

Switching between lectures and work groups, the 16 participants were introduced to broad issues and planning strategies, and then challenged to apply the principles to actual work situations. Breakout groups developed staff training programs, a freshman orientation course, disaster recovery plans, and other take-home materials.

I gained the most help on strategic planning and utilizing other staff for decision-making and planning.

Members of the College Libraries Committee selected the 16 participants from 27 applications. Over 18 months of planning went into the event, which is likely to be repeated next year. Institutional commitment to preservation was a major factor in selecting attendees; SOLINET will be conducting a six-month evaluation of the seminar's impact on participating libraries' activities and programs. Those interested in applying for a future seminar can contact:

SOLINET Preservation Program
400 Colony Square, Plaza Level
Atlanta, GA 30361-6301

Faculty were: Lisa Fox (dean), Program Development Office for Preservation, SOLINET; Charlotte Brown, College Archivist & Special Collections Librarian, Franklin and Marshall College; Carol Eyler, Head of Technical Services, Mercer University; and Carolyn Clark Morrow, Malloy-Rabinowitz Preservation Librarian, Harvard University.

Micropublisher Survey Moves Ahead

RLG to Manage Major Study of Commercial Filmers

Some 750 micropublishers will be contacted regarding such issues as the quality, storage conditions, and location of microform master negatives, as part of a survey to be conducted by the Research Libraries Group, Inc., under contract to the Commission. The project builds on an initial survey developed and validated by the American Association of Law Libraries, also under contract to the Commission.

The new contract calls for RLG to submit to the Commission no later than December 1, 1991, the following products: A Directory of Micropublishers, tabulated survey results, and a narrative analysis of the survey. The survey covers microform production and quality control, storage of first-generation master negative film, storage containers and enclosures, and inspection of stored first-generation negatives.

There can be major differences between the standards used . . . for commercial purposes and for preservation.

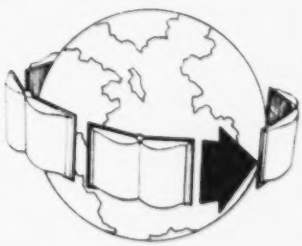
The report from the AALL pretest was included as an insert to the November-December 1990 newsletter. Answers from the pretest and discussions with production personnel showed that there can be major differences between the standards used for the production and storage of master negatives for commercial purposes and for preservation.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117 • (202) 483-7474

EROMM Pilot Project to Benefit Preservation

Increased Capacity for Compatible International Database

As part of a program dedicated to the libraries in Europe, the 12-member Commission of the European Communities (CEC) is helping establish the "**EROMM Project**" to set up a pilot machine-readable **European Register of Microfilm Masters**. The Commission on Preservation and Access also is supporting the project with small, but important, supplemental funds.



Hans Rütimann, Program Officer for the International Project, was initially invited to EROMM's first meeting (in Luxembourg in early December 1989), during which the feasibility study for such a register was reviewed. The CEC EROMM initiative is being taken quite seriously by its member countries, according to Rütimann. The project is expected to expand beyond the European countries, and cooperation with North American bibliographic utilities will be considered.

CEC is providing 60 percent of the total cost for the first year's operation (Phase I). The Commission on Preservation and Access is using Mellon Foundation monies to support the remaining 40 percent of the initial costs, or ECU's 67,960. The EROMM contract calls for making available in a common database bibliographic information about preservation microfilms. Participating in the first phase of the CEC project are the British Library (England), the Bibliothèque Nationale (France), the Biblioteca Nacional (Portugal), and the Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Göttingen (Germany).

The EROMM contract calls for making available in a common database bibliographic information about preservation microfilms.

The pilot phase is to take input from the four countries and create a UNIMARC-based file, expected to be compatible with the minimum data requirements recommended for the international exchange of bibliographic records of microform masters.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela M. Davis · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

Medieval Scholars Receive Preservation Funds

NEH Grant to Save 12,000 Embrittled Volumes

The Medieval Academy of America Committee on Library Preservation, working in concert with the Commission's Scholarly Advisory Committee initiative, has received more than $629,000 from the National Endowment for the Humanities (NEH) to preserve the contents of 12,794 embrittled scholarly volumes. The three-year grant was awarded to the University of Notre Dame, which houses The Medieval Institute and its library.

Illustration by Bill Megenhardt

According to Robert C. Miller, director of libraries at the University of Notre Dame, The Medieval Institute's library is one of a handful of research collections in the world that is a self-contained resource for research in medieval studies. The collection is used daily by faculty and students at Notre Dame, and the Institute regularly hosts visiting international scholars.

About half the library's volumes fall within the brittle books period of 1800 to 1950. The microfilming activity will preserve embrittled volumes particularly rich for studying medieval intellectual life, including philosophy, religious studies, and education.

In cooperation with the Medieval Academy, the Commission has been sponsoring meetings of the Scholarly Advisory Group on Medieval Studies, now chaired by Susanne Roberts, Humanities Bibliographer at Yale University Library. In addition to developing the grant application, the group is:

- Identifying libraries with strong general collections in medieval studies and in sub-disciplines of the field;
- Assembling a list of prominent collections;
- Locating programs that contribute to preservation of materials for medieval studies; and
- Encouraging grant applications and preservation efforts by members of the Medieval Academy.

Newsletters from January, May, and October, 1990, describe previous Medieval Studies activities supported by the Commission.

Commission on Preservation and Access

1785 Massachusetts Ave., N.W. #313
Washington, D.C. 20036
Telephone: 202/483-7474
FAX: 202/483-6410
BITNET: CPA@GWUVM

ORDER FORM -- SEPTEMBER 1991

AVAILABLE MATERIALS

	Quantity	Author and Title	Price
NEW	_____	Miller, J. Hillis. *Preserving the Literary Heritage. The Final Report of the Scholarly Advisory Committee on Modern Language and Literature of the Commission on Preservation and Access* (July 1991)	free
NEW	_____	Waters, Donald J. *From Microfilm to Digital Imagery. A Report of the Yale University Library to the Commission on Preservation and Access* (June 1991)	$5.00*
NEW	_____	Hazen, Dan C. *The Production and Bibliographic Control of Latin American Preservation Microforms in the United States* (June 1991)	$5.00*
NEW	_____	*National Conference on the Development of Statewide Preservation Programs - Report of a Conference held March 1-3, 1989, in Washington, D.C.* (1991)	$15.00*
	_____	Oakley, Robert L. *Copyright and Preservation: A Serious Problem in Need of a Thoughtful Solution* (September 1990)	$15.00*
	_____	Lynn, M. Stuart. *Preservation and Access Technology. The Relationship Between Digital and Other Media Conversion Processes: A Structured Glossary of Technical Terms* (August 1990)	$5.00*
	_____	Marcum, Deanna B. *Preservation Education Institute Final Report*, August 2-4, 1990 (August 1990)	free
	_____	Miller, Michael. *Ideas for Preservation Fund Raising: A Support Package for Libraries and Archives* (July 1990)	$10.00*
	_____	Lesk, Michael. *Image Formats for Preservation and Access. A Report of the Technology Assessment Advisory Committee to the Commission on Preservation and Access* (July 1990)	free
	_____	Sparks, Peter G., Dr. *Technical Considerations in Choosing Mass Deacidification Processes* (May 1990)	$5.00*

OVER 182

Quantity	Author and Title	Price
_____	Sitts, Maxine. *Directory - Information Sources on Scientific Research Related to the Preservation of Books, Paper and Adhesives* (March 1990)	free
_____	Schwerdt, Peter. *Mass Deacidification Procedures for Libraries and Archives: State of Development and Perspectives for Implementation in the Federal Republic of Germany* (September 1989)	free
_____	*The International Project* (August 1989)	free
_____	*Selection for Preservation of Research Library Materials* (August 1989)	free
_____	*Scholarly Resources in Art History: Issues in Preservation. Report of the Seminar, September 29 - October 1, 1988* (1989)	$5.00*
_____	*Annual Report* (July 1, 1989 - June 30, 1990)	free
_____	*Newsletters*: nos. 1 - (June 1988 -) (some back issues available)	free
_____	*CPA Brochure*	free
_____	*"Slow Fires" Brochure*	free

***Commission sponsors receive all publications on a complimentary basis. For all others, orders must be prepaid, with checks (no cash) made payable to "The Commission on Preservation and Access."** Payment must be in U.S. funds. Send check with order to Trish Cece, Communications Assistant, The Commission on Preservation and Access, 1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW, Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117.

All publications have been submitted to ERIC.

This order form may be photocopied. Please type or print your name and address below. (A self-addressed mailing label will help expedite your order.)

Name _____

Title _____

Institution _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip code _____

Country _____

A book, it has been said, is a machine to think with.

—from *Caring for Your Books*, by Michael Dirda, issued by the Book of the Month Club, New York, NY.

Modern Language and Literature Scholars Issue Recommendations

Scholarly Advisory Committee Completes 18-Month Study

The Commission's Scholarly Advisory Committee on Modern Language and Literature, after 18 months of study, has issued its final report, *Preserving the Literary Heritage*. The eight-page report summarizes the basic principles that emerged from the committee's discussions, and recommendations for action by professional organizations and scholars of modern language and literature.

The committee's recommendations:

- Educate colleagues and librarians about the magnitude of the brittle book problem;
- Assure a foolproof mechanism for bibliographic control;
- Pursue liaisons with European libraries;
- Encourage Congress to appropriate more money for preservation; and
- Use the Modern Language Association as a clearinghouse for recommendations from various groups for which particular collections are deemed most important for preservation.

The members of the committee were: Emory Elliott (California, Riverside); John Fisher (Tennessee); Henry Louis Gates, Jr. (Harvard); Elaine Marks (Wisconsin, Madison); W.J.T. Mitchell (Chicago); Rainer Nägele (Johns Hopkins); Annabel Patterson (Duke); Catharine Stimpson (Rutgers, New Brunswick); and J. Hillis Miller, Chair (California, Irvine).

Complimentary copies of the report have been distributed to the Commission's mailing list. Additional copies are available, while supplies last, at no charge from Trish Cece, Communications Assistant.

Mass Deacidification at Harvard

—**Special Report** by Carolyn Clark Morrow, Malloy-Rabinowitz Preservation Librarian, Harvard University and Harvard College Libraries, July 1991

Harvard University Library is moving forward with the development of its mass deacidification program. A task group was formed in 1990 to investigate three aspects of mass deacidification: selection, technology and financial planning. The subgroup on technology has been particularly active, analyzing available deacidification processes with the assistance of Harvard Chemistry professors James Butler (Division of Applied Sciences) and Andrew Barron (Department of Chemistry).

In April 1991, the technology subgroup made site visits to deacidification facilities at Texas Alkyls (Akzo) in Deer Park, Texas, and Lithium Division (FMC) in Bessemer City, North Carolina. Following the site visits, batches of materials were sent to each facility in order to demonstrate treatment. While Harvard will use the treated batches to visually demonstrate the effect of deacidification on a variety of library materials, it has also contributed to the indepth study underway at the Canadian Conservation Institute, under the direction of Helen Burgess, Senior Conservation Scientist, to further assess and compare the effectiveness and characteristics of commercial deacidification processes.

Based on the successful treatment of its sample batches and on the judgment of its task group on deacidification technology, Harvard will send library materials for mass deacidification in fiscal year 1992, spending approximately $85,000. The following libraries will have materials deacidified: Law School Library, Widener Library (reference collection, map collection), Tozzer Library (anthropology), Fine Arts Library, Kummel Library (geology), and the Music Library. In May 1991, collection managers at Harvard participated in a meeting with Richard Miller, Deacidification Project Manager for Akzo Chemicals, Inc., to discuss the treatment process and cycle, logistics, and selection criteria.

Harvard will continue to develop the rationale for its mass deacidification program, even while it begins the treatment of collection materials on a modest scale. Harvard believes that a useful strategy for initiating a mass deacidification program is to start small, gain operational experience, and gradually build to an appropriate size program based on the needs of the collection and the priorities of the library's overall preservation program.

1992 NEH Funding Below 5-Year Plan

An excerpt from the American Library Association *ALA Washington Newsletter* report on House action on the 1992 budget for the National Endowment for the Humanities (June 27, 1991):

. . . The $4 million increase for the Office of Preservation represents additional funds for the National Heritage Preservation Program (to stabilize collections of material culture), raising it from the $4.2 million requested to $8.2 million. The remaining $16.7 million is for preservation of library and archival materials, $1 million below the level envisioned for FY '92 in the original NEH multiyear plan, but $100,000 more than the Administration's FY '92 request for brittle books preservation. Compared with the budget request, the House bill includes an increase of $600,000 for microfilming of brittle books, but a decrease of $500,000 for training of preservation personnel.

BEYOND BRITTLE BOOKS

Strategies for Manuscripts, Archives, Photographs Under Investigation

As announced in the July newsletter, the Commission has contracted with Margaret Child to serve as a part-time consultant for the next several months. Ms. Child's initial assignment is to encourage the development of both macro and micro strategies for setting priorities for the preservation of manuscript, archival and photograph collections.

At the present time, it is difficult to do national planning or even to evaluate the relative merit of individual projects to preserve such materials because there are no objective standards by which to judge the strength of a collection and no generally accepted guidelines to determine the degree of deterioration.

Strategies such as the "Great Collections" method of selection that have been used to set priorities for filming brittle books work at best imperfectly for special collections and archives because extremely important materials on a single subject are scattered among a far greater number of repositories.

Similarly, the "vacuum cleaner" approach to preserving virtually the entire contents of a print collection may not work well for archival collections whose sheer volume may require that only a sample be preserved. On the other hand, the growing practice in libraries of reformatting only items that are "basket cases" may also not work for archives because the costs of distinguishing degrees of deterioration within a collection and delaying treatment to a later date may be excessive.

Ms. Child plans to work closely with the Preservation Section of SAA, the Rare Books and Manuscripts Division of ACRL, and other interested groups and individuals to begin to define preservation strategies appropriate to special collections and archival materials. She would appreciate suggestions for projects that might be undertaken and samples of internal procedures and forms developed by repositories to survey collections to determine condition and needs. Ms. Child can be reached at the Commission on Thursdays and Fridays.

PRESERVATION ON UPSWING IN RESEARCH LIBRARIES

Brittle Books Filming Accelerates; More Reliance on External Funding

The *1989-90 ARL Preservation Statistics* report from the Association of Research Libraries (ARL) offers persuasive evidence of the continuing development and expansion of preservation programs within North American research institutions. Preservation expenditures for the 115 reporting libraries rose to over $66 million in 1989-90. Increasingly, funds from external sources are augmenting institutional resources, and a significant portion of preservation budgets comes from grants.

The 1989-90 data underscore the impact of the accelerating efforts of the brittle books program, says ARL. Libraries microfilmed approximately 92,000 volumes in 1989-90.

The 1989-90 ARL Preservation Statistics are available from ARL, 1527 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, DC 20036.

INCLUDED INSIDE:
An updated Publication List.

Please use this list (or a copy) to order Commission reports. If you'd like multiple copies for distribution, please contact Trish Cece.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Providing Access To The Accumulated Human Record As Far Into The Future As Possible

Number 39

Newsletter

October 1991

Panel Comments on Scientific Research

Reports on Environmental Conditions, Microenvironments

After compiling a directory of scientific research information sources in early 1990, the Commission identified a set of related needs: to expand ongoing communication among preservation professionals, scientists, conservationists, and laboratories; to target worthwhile scientific projects for analysis by the preservation community; and to interpret research results with likely applications for preservation. The Commission since has initiated a review panel composed of working librarians, archivists, and conservators from eight institutions with varying preservation concerns (see April 1991 newsletter).

Panel members are providing viewpoints on research focusing on applications suited to their institutions' needs. In addition to submitting comments to the Commission, they are sharing their findings with colleagues through other publications and presentations at meetings. The effectiveness of this approach will be evaluated at the end of a one-year test period.

The following excerpts are taken from reviews of the first package of materials. More complete reviews will appear in future newsletters.

• • •

The Characterization of Microenvironments and the Degradation of Archival Records: A Research Program, Elio Passaglia, National Bureau of Standards, Institute for Materials Science and Engineering, October 1987. NBSIR 87-3635. A Report Prepared for the National Archives and Records Administration. Establishes a theoretical basis for a research program for the study of microenvironments.

"Among conclusions drawn from analysis of the models were: (a) containers with gaps as found in the prototypical container [Hollinger box] result in diffusion of pollutants through the gaps at a rate that for practical purposes, the container might as well be open; (b) containers can provide protection from the macroenvironment provided they have no gaps in them; (c) sealing deteriorating paper in an impermeable container may speed deterioration; and (d) the area that seems to hold the most promise for further investigation is containers with reactive walls."

— Delaware Bureau of Records and Archives Mangement, Howard P. Lowell

> *We believe that conservation requires the effective collaboration of practical conservator, scientist, and cultural historian. . . . I think that creating the right environment for that kind of exchange is a core management challenge in an institution. . . .*
>
> —*"Finding a Structure of Collaboration," by Gerry Hedley, guest editorial, CCI (Canadian Conservation Institute) Newsletter*, Autumn/Winter 1990, pp.8-9.

". . . this report is difficult for the non-scientist to read (in terms of the reader being able to relate conclusions to the research data and methodology). It does present considerable interesting ancillary information in the sections that review the published literature and state the researchers' basic assumptions."

— National Archives, Karen Garlick

"The information related to microenvironments in containers is valuable in designing and evaluating protective enclosure activities in many preservation programs across the country. Now that I am aware of this report, I will give it to Northwestern's collections conservator for evaluation."

— Northwestern University, Richard Frieder

(continued on page 2)

College Archives Receives Two Federal Grants

NEH and Title II-C Support Preservation Microfilming

The Amherst College Archives has received two federal grants in support of the preservation microfilming of the Dwight W. Morrow Papers. The National Endowment for the Humanities' Division of Preservation and Access and the U.S. Department of Education Higher Education Act, Title II-C Program joined forces in providing $105,000 to support the 18-month project. The preservation of the Morrow papers will ensure their continued availability and will increase access by national and international scholars with a microfilm edition.

Morrow (1873-1931) was a diplomat, financier, and lawyer who corresponded with business, political, and international leaders. The 120 linear feet of Morrow Papers have been used by researchers at Amherst College since 1954.

— Adapted from Amherst College Library Press Release: September 1, 1991

PANEL COMMENTS

(continued from page 1)

* * *

Sorbent Removal of Air Pollutants from Museum Display Cases, Sucha S. Parmar and Daniel Grosjean, research sponsored by the Getty Conservation Institute, Marina del Rey, CA, which submitted the report for review. Published in *Environmental International*, Vol.17, pp.39-50, 1991; Pergamon Press. Study conducted to provide the art conservation community with simple, cost-effective methods (passive and active) for reducing environmental damage to objects in display cases.

"A useful and relevant study."

— Library of Congress, Chandru Shahani

"This paper provides interesting information about the experimental methods used by the authors and useful data about the behavior of sorbents. It will be good reading for the conservation community as well as for those technically oriented persons engaged in museum, library, and archive exhibition and display programs. The potential for practical application of this research is clearly apparent and it is probable that, during the course of the next few years, a substantial body of experience using sorbents in exhibition cases will emerge."

— AMIGOS Preservation Service (James G. Stroud, Harry Ransom Humanities Research Center, The University of Texas at Austin)

"This research contains at least three pieces of valuable information for archives. . . . [One of which] a widely-used and available sorbent, activated charcoal, met target performance for all five pollutants tested."

— Delaware Bureau of Records and Archives Management, Howard P. Lowell

"Having indicated the relatively narrow uses of the information in this report, it does provide useful data for the manager with exhibit applications in which a pollutant-free contained environment is required. This would include most institutions with an exhibit program. . . ."

— New York State Archives, Chris Ward

* * *

A Graphical Representation of the Relationship of Environmental Conditions to the Permanence of Hygroscopic Materials and Composites, Donald K. Sebera, Chemist, Preservation Research and Testing Office, Preservation Office, Library of Congress. Proceedings of Conservation in Archives. International Symposium, Ottawa, Canada, May 10-12, 1988.

"This article addresses a critically important issue, i.e., providing a persuasive tool for preservation staff for use in discussions with physical plant staff and library administrators. We all believe that proper environmental control is essential, but we can never answer questions about the negative ramifications of inaction. The isoperm will allow us to do that."

— Northwestern University, Richard Frieder

"Among the text's examples, the author details the following useful applications: to define temperature and RH ranges which are suitable or unsuitable for exhibition or storage; to note environmental ranges to be avoided in terms of mold growth; and to define conditions where paper flexibility is endangered. He further demonstrates the advantages of using a pictorial representation as compared with a numerical form for making quick observations as well as for allowing the viewer to more readily perceive, formulate and, potentially, address pertinent questions concerning the representation."

— AMIGOS Preservation Service (Ellen Cunningham-Kruppa, The University of Texas at Austin)

"The information presented in this paper will be useful to librarians and archivists planning preservation programs because of its implications for long-term storage of materials. This report is worth the time required to understand it. . . . I encourage the preservation manager in a library or archives to plow through this paper; I found it made much more sense the second time through."

— New York State Archives, Chris Ward

"[The] isoperm model offers a relatively simple graphic means of describing the interrelationship of temperature and humidity in storage environments and predicting the increase or decrease in longevity that changes in either will produce. That having been said, it should be stated that the paper may prove too technical for the nonscientific reader. What would be helpful to the practicing librarian or archivist is a layman's version of his paper and an objective evaluation of its validity."

— National Library of Medicine, Margaret Byrnes

Panel members are: **Margaret Byrnes**, Head, Preservation Section, National Library of Medicine; **Tom Clareson**, Preservation Service Manager, AMIGOS Bibliographic Council; **Richard Frieder**, Preservation Officer, Northwestern University Library; **Karen Garlick**, Senior Conservator, National Archives and Records Administration; **Kenneth Harris**, Director for Preservation, Library of Congress; **Howard P. Lowell**, State Archivist and Records Administrator, Delaware State Archives; **Jan Merrill-Oldham**, Head, Preservation Department, University of Connecticut Library; and **Christine W. Ward**, Chief, Bureau of Archival Services, New York State Archives.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin · President; Maxine K. Sitts · Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela M. Davis · Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece · Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

SPECIAL REPORT

NATIONWIDE PRESERVATION SURVEY LOOKS AT MANAGEMENT, FILMING, ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

FRESH DATA FROM OVER 400 LIBRARIES PROVIDES INITIATIVES FOR FUTURE ACTION

—by Tom Clareson, Margaret Child and Darryl Lang

In October 1990, the Regional OCLC Network Directors Advisory Committee (RONDAC), undertook the largest and most diverse nationwide preservation survey effort ever attempted: 1,026 questionnaires were directed to a random sample of all types of OCLC libraries: academic, public, law, medical, federal, junior/community college, and other (including state, municipal, corporate, theological and school) and to all 74 of OCLC's academic research library members. Four-hundred and fifty-two libraries returned the questionnaires, a 44 percent return rate. This special report focuses on only some of the results. Further information is available from summary reports distributed by the regional OCLC networks.

Preservation Management

The survey revealed significant differences between academic research libraries and all other types of libraries in the area of preservation management and staffing.

Nearly a third of the academic research libraries consider preservation a high priority; another half rank it as an average priority. More than two-thirds of the remaining respondents consider preservation a low institutional priority. Allocation of funds to preservation purposes follows much the same kind of curve from a high of 95 percent for academic libraries to a low of 11 percent for junior and community colleges. A significant number of respondents are spending money on preservation even though they do not have a preservation plan in place or in progress.

Almost two-thirds of all respondents have someone on their staff with knowledge of preservation issues and practices, even though almost half of the libraries have no one formally assigned to preservation responsibilities. Academic research libraries again differ from the general pattern by having a higher percentage of full-time staff assigned to preservation.

Preservation Education and Training

Library staff gain preservation knowledge mainly by attending training programs of a wide variety of types and levels. Academic research library staff attend more college or university graduate-level courses than do staff of other libraries. They also attend all other levels of training — state, regional, and national programs as well as those provided by professional organizations and apprenticeship training — in far greater numbers. The training workshops most often attended by staff from all types of libraries include basic repair, care and handling, disaster preparedness, library binding and environmental control.

Disaster-preparedness is by far the most desired type of training. Workshops on general preservation management, basic repair and conservation treatment, and storage and pest control are also considered to be very much needed. Similarly, respondents indicate that disaster assistance in the event of fire or water damage is their most needed service.

> *. . . a remarkable 92 percent of the academic research libraries consider coordination of mass deacidification, preservation microfilming, and coordinated state or regional disaster preparedness activities to be very important.*

Again, responses from academic research libraries are significantly different from the others. They concur that disaster assistance is very important but place a higher value on training materials, a newsletter, and an information service than other kinds of libraries. Even more interesting, a remarkable 92 percent of the academic research libraries consider coordination of mass deacidification, preservation microfilming, and coordinated state or regional disaster preparedness activities to be very important.

PRESERVATION PRIORITY

	Total*	Academic Research	Academic	Public
Base: Total Answering	450	37	141	71
	(%)	(%)	(%)	(%)
High Priority	7	30	7	6
Average Priority	30	51	36	29
Low Priority	63	19	57	65

* Total includes all library types.

Preservation Microfilming

Many libraries believe they are preserving their collections by filming but, in fact, are not adhering to national standards, thus compromising the films' quality and life expectancy.

Twenty-seven percent report that they are currently microfilming a portion of their collections for preservation purposes. This figure includes almost three-quarters of academic research libraries, one-quarter of academic libraries and a surprising 45 percent of public libraries. A majority of the libraries doing preservation microfilming contract with a commercial vendor and another third use a non-profit organization. Thirty percent do microfilming in-house.

More than half (60 percent) of the libraries doing preservation microfilming state that filming is being done in accordance with American National Standards Institute guidelines. A third of the libraries either acknowledge that their filming does not conform to any standards, or did not know, or did not answer the question.

Thirty-nine percent of the libraries doing filming report that master microfilm negatives are stored off-site in environmentally controlled vaults. Only half report their films to a bibliographic network or the National Register of Microform Masters. Again, there is a marked contrast between academic research and other libraries: only 21 percent of the former fail to report to the networks, compared to 59 percent of public libraries and 50 percent of academic.

Environmental Factors

More than half of all the respondents have not assessed the condition of their buildings. In contrast, a remarkable 87 percent of the academic research libraries report that they have reviewed both their buildings and climate control systems. The respondents were also asked to evaluate the adequacy of the buildings that house their collections. More than half recognize they have problems with humidification and dehumidification, and more than two-fifths with control of light and HVAC (heating, ventilation and air-conditioning) systems.

> *. . . it is disturbing to note that more than half the libraries do not provide constant climate control throughout the year for their general collections, and two-fifths do not do so for special collections.*

Both academic and academic research libraries show distinctly higher percentages of dissatisfaction with all aspects of their physical plants than do other libraries. This suggests either that more of these libraries are housed in aging or poorly designed structures, or that they are more aware when systems do not perform to standards.

Nonetheless, it is disturbing to note that more than half the libraries do not provide constant climate control throughout the year for their general collections, and two-fifths do not do so for special collections. From one-third to one-half are not able to say at what temperature the heating and air conditioning systems are maintained for their general and special collections, respectively. Overall, a higher percentage of academic research libraries report being able to keep their temperatures stable both day and night and throughout the year, especially for their special collections. And, where answers are given, temperatures in special collections seem to be kept distinctly lower than in the general collections.

• • •

RONDAC co-sponsored the survey with the Online Computer Library Center, Inc. (OCLC). RONDAC serves as a forum for strategic direction and policy on the provision of OCLC services to users. OCLC's address is 6565 Frantz Road, Dublin, OH 43017-0702.

PERCENTAGE OF RESPONDENTS WHO RATED PRESERVATION-RELATED SERVICES AS VERY IMPORTANT

	Total*	Academic Research	Academic	Public
Base: Total Respondents	452	38	142	71
	(%)	(%)	(%)	(%)
Disaster Assistance	83	87	88	80
Workshops	74	61	82	72
Training Materials	69	87	80	66
Information	67	82	69	65
Newsletter	59	84	71	52
Hands-On Training	56	68	66	49
Consulting	50	50	56	55
Coordination	49	92	57	46
Referral	48	66	51	42
On-Site Training	48	53	58	49
Treatment Services	40	58	52	38
Grant Preparation	40	68	54	39
Preservation Microfilming	39	76	46	41
Mass Deacidification	28	63	31	24
Online Bibliographic Searches	22	37	30	20

Note: Respondents may have indicated more than one response. * Total includes all library types.

COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

REPORT

PRESERVATION EDUCATION TASK FORCE

AUGUST 1, 1991

Deanna B. Marcum, Chair
Sally A. Buchanan
David B. Gracy II
Carolyn Harris
Beverly Lynch
Robert D. Stueart

In the fall of 1989, the Commission on Preservation and Access established the Task Force on Preservation Education, and charged it with determining the current status of preservation education, establishing the requirements for the next decade, and identifying the means for enhancing the current programs and developing new programs to meet the challenges ahead.

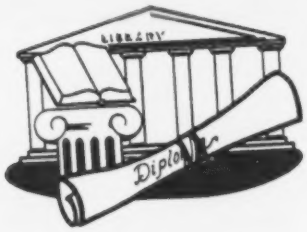
Made up of library school deans and library educators who specialize in preservation, the task force worked over a period of two years to gather information, discuss the many possibilities for action, and reach consensus on what should be included in its final report.

The substance of the task force's work and recommendations follows. Papers by individual members, supplemental to the final report, are available from the Commission upon written request.

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117 • (202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM), and by FAX (202) 483-6410.



Preservation Education Task Force
Final Report
August 1, 1991

Librarians have produced dozens, possibly hundreds, of reports on preservation in the last decade. Their message, more directly stated by some than others, is the same: library and historical collections are in jeopardy. Various pleas, exhortations, and threats have concluded the reports, but too often, the task forces and committees felt their jobs had been completed when the problem had been described. Library directors, funding agencies, and national commissions must do something, they told us. Unfortunately, few of these reports laid out the strategy for accomplishing what virtually everyone agreed was desirable.

The Commission On Preservation and Access recognized early in its history that a preservation strategy required long-term effort. Not only is it necessary to think in terms of a twenty-year calendar for microfilming that portion of the nation's printed collections that must be saved, it is also important to plan for a future that will forestall adding to the already staggering preservation burden. As part of its looking toward the future, the Commission determined the need to address the matter of education. How could the Commission influence the thinking of the next generation of librarians so that preservation would be, simply stated, a natural part of librarianship and archival enterprise, not a special project?

The Commission's charge to the education task force challenged us to think as broadly as possible, but as library educators and preservation specialists, we found it difficult to ignore an opportunity to write elaborate specifications for incorporating preservation into the required courses of library schools and to outline topics that should be included within specialized preservation courses. We agreed that preservation is at the very core of librarianship and archival studies, and we wanted to insure that it would be addressed in library school curricula. As the attached reports from task force members show, we sometimes felt it necessary to elaborate on the details that would help schools incorporate preservation into core courses or plan a basic preservation course.

Still, we recognized the need to rise above detail. We wanted to look at preservation in a more global way. After our work was nearly completed, the highly readable and thought provoking report on "Preserving Harvard's Retrospective

Collections," issued in April, 1991, forced a reformulation of our ideas. The Harvard report carefully describes the situation of today's research libraries: mountains of material must be preserved and there is no single approach to preservation that will work for everything. The Harvard task force acknowledged that priorities for preservation are in the eye of the scholarly beholder. The task force also pointed out in a most persuasive way that book collections are only a portion of the problem. Today's research libraries are responsible for serial publications, archival materials, manuscript collections, visual materials of many different kinds, and other non-book items. Preservation strategies for each category are necessarily different.

Harvard's preservation task force identified six activities that must become an integral part of routine library procedures: preparation for use, mass deacidification, library binding, replacement/reformatting, physical conservation, and environmentally-controlled storage and the buying of time. In other words, preservation is both a discrete set of activities within the library, but also an attitude toward stewardship of collections.

The question for our task force, then, was how do we instill this attitude, this set of values, into the next generation of librarians? Preservation must be a consideration included in every aspect of library education. And if the Harvard analysis is accepted, that is, if we believe that preservation is about choice, the most important thing library educators can do is to equip students in their programs to make sound, informed decisions. Instead of training each student to conserve library materials, we must instead arm them with the analytical techniques they must draw on to decide what should be preserved; what method or methods should be used; when to take responsibility for preservation and when to support another institution that is better prepared to assume the responsibility; when to enter into cooperative agreements; and how to evaluate new technologies as they emerge and promise to ease the preservation problem.

Boiled down to its essence, the only solution we see for preservation education is to go beyond the techniques of preservation to a thorough grounding in managerial decision making that reflects the reality of today's research libraries.

Such an approach does not encourage every librarian to learn the nuts and bolts of book and flat paper conservation. Indeed, it is more important that librarians and archivists learn that not all books, not to mention other formats, can be saved, and the role entrusted to them by society is to make the best possible decisions about what will be saved and by whom.

Recommendations

In light of our acknowledgement of preservation as a primary obligation of librarianship and archival enterprises, our recommendations include:

1) Acquaint every student with broad issues encompassed by preservation in the core curriculum.

2) Design faculty development programs that introduce current faculty members to a more holistic view of preservation.

3) In cooperation with state and regional networks, or other appropriate agencies, design and conduct continuing education programs that will acquaint practitioners with the fundamental tenets of preservation. Specialized courses should be offered to help skilled library managers develop expertise in preservation techniques so they might bring their management experience to bear on one of the library world's most significant problems.

4) Stimulate research among the library school doctoral programs that will address preservation issues.

5) Encourage library schools to think of preservation not only as a set of techniques, but also as an attitude.

In addition to our fundamental recommendations, the task force also encourages library schools to consider the following secondary recommendations:

6) Present case studies and problems to library science students that use preservation decisions as an example, with the purpose of enhancing analytical skills generally.

7) Include information about cooperative programs in the curriculum. Make sure students know how to assess the benefits as well as the costs of cooperation.

8) Support specialized instruction in preservation administration and library conservator training at a limited number of library schools.

9) Encourage the use of model preservation reports produced by research libraries as texts in library schools so that the complexity of the problem and the necessity for multiple approaches will be appreciated by the next generation of librarians.

Reports Focus on Institutional Agendas

Contracting for Services, Care of Recorded Sound

Two Commission reports that address institutional preservation initiatives are in the mail this month to sponsors and other organizations that regularly receive this newsletter.

Report on The Preservation Planning Project, from the University of Pennsylvania Libraries, describes a preservation program that would operate with a high level of participation from contracted services.

Early last year, the Commission contracted with the University of Pennsylvania and the Conservation Center for Art and Historic Artifacts (CCAHA) to generate guidelines and collect data applicable to other institutions as part of a larger preservation project being undertaken at the university. The larger project, funded partly by the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, had two major goals. The first was the formulation of a plan for the preservation of the university's collections using a broad, strategic approach that considers not only local needs, but also regional and national programs. The second goal was the development of a management strategy to enable a small internal staff to work in concert with regional preservation service organizations, which would supply the resources needed by the university to operate its preservation program.

This 44-page final report was assembled by Peter G. Sparks who served as the project's consultant.

* * *

The Care and Handling of Recorded Sound Materials, by Gilles St-Laurent, provides advice on the care and handling of recorded sound materials in collections, focusing primarily on the nature and composition of the recording media.

Although much of the Commission's activities have focused on the preservation of information contained on deteriorating paper, libraries and archives also house and care for information stored on a variety of media. Unlike microfilming of paper-based information sources, standards for preservation reformatting of deteriorating audio and video materials have not yet been established. In the meanwhile, institutions have a responsibility to preserve the non-print materials in their collections.

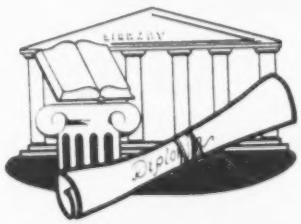
At the request of a number of colleges and universities that sponsor the Commission, the April 1990 newsletter carried a special report on the care and handling of video recordings. The new report on recorded sound materials — whose length precludes inclusion in this newsletter — is an expanded version of an article prepared initially for the National Library of Canada's *National Library News*.

White House Conference Focuses on Enhancing Access

Preservation Among Priorities for Government Action

Eliminating obstacles and enhancing access to information was a top concern of delegates during the White House Conference on Library and Information Services (WHCLIS), July 9-13, 1991, in Washington, DC. Delegates considered ways to overcome legal, physical, financial, linguistic and cultural obstacles to access. Among their recommendations were three directly related to preservation:

- *Congress shall adopt a national preservation policy to ensure the preservation of our information resources. The assessment of preservation needs should be clearly articulated with adequate funding provided for implementation of this policy. This policy must include: a) A broad-based program of preservation education and training is essential to a long-term development of a multi-institutional preservation effort; b) A comprehensive policy for preserving information on non-paper media; c) The development and dissemination of new technologies, standards and procedures in our libraries, archives and historical organizations; d) Increased federal funding to support existing regional preservation centers and to create new centers in unserved regions of the country. Together, these resources will help to ensure that small libraries, archives, and historical organizations will have access to the information and services they need to preserve their collections.*
- *States shall be provided with the resources necessary to preserve historical and cultural information held in their libraries, archives and historical organizations.*
- *The final report of the White House Conference on Library and Information Services shall be printed on permanent, durable paper.*



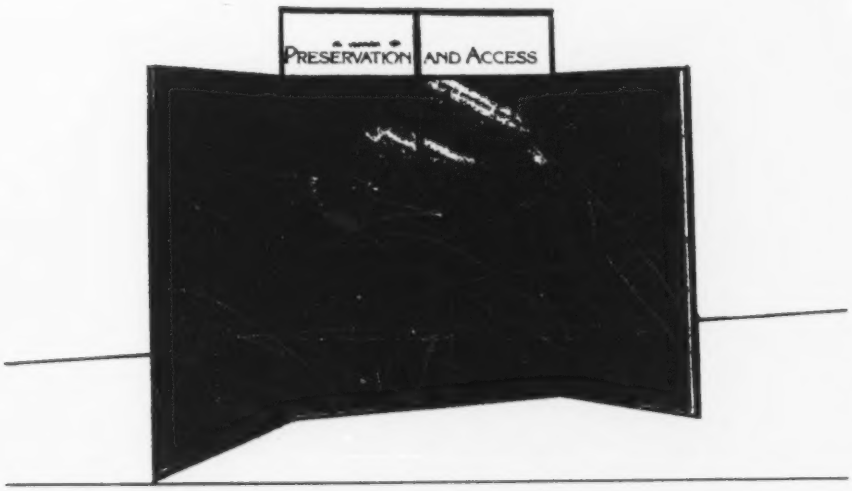
60 Archivists to Undergo Training as Preservation Administrators

SAA to Create Critical Mass of Preservation Programs With NEH Funds

A new Preservation Training Program being launched by the Society of American Archivists (SAA) intends to create a critical mass of institutional preservation programs managed by competent archival administrators, and to do so as rapidly and efficiently as possible. The program was recently awarded a $645,554 grant by the National Endowment for the Humanities, the largest received to date by SAA. The society plans to train 60 archivists over a three-year period.

The program was developed by an advisory committee whose work was supported in part by the Commission. The training will examine preservation topics from a management point of view. More information is available from SAA, 600 S. Federal, Suite 504, Chicago, IL 60605.

New Modular Brittle Book Exhibit Available for Loan



Display Adaptable to Institution's Needs

A new eight-panel photographic exhibit that draws attention to the preservation and access of information in brittle books is available for short-term loan to universities and colleges, libraries, archives, scholarly societies, and other organizations. The Commission designed the 10-by-7 foot modular display around a large full-color photograph of a brittle book with crumbling paper. (Supplied courtesy of the Preservation Section of the National Library of Medicine).

The modern display includes velcro end-panels for mounting information and photographs specific to an institution's own preservation program. Panels can be re-arranged to serve as a complete backdrop for a conference booth or for a tabletop display. The exhibit is lightweight, portable, and easy to assemble. Institutions can borrow the display free of charge, but must pay shipping charges. The original Giant Brittle Book also remains available for loan. For more information contact Trish Cece, Communications Assistant.

Environmental Control Publication is First of its Kind

New York State Offers New Resource for Libraries, Archives

The first environmental control publication developed specifically for libraries, archives and other organizations, *"Conservation Environment Guidelines for Libraries and Archives,"* has been published by New York State Library's Conservation/Preservation Program.

The 88-page resource packet discusses the conservation environment, collections environment assessment and monitoring, and compromises for conservation environment goals. It also addresses building environments and systems that can create a good conservation environment.

The packet is available for $10.00 from Tiffany H. Allen, The New York State Library, 10-C-47 Cultural Education Center, Albany, NY 12230. Checks should be made payable to "The University of The State of New York."

Environmental conditions is a continuing concern of the Commission, which co-sponsored a seminar earlier this year on the topic with the Association of Physical Plant Administrators of Universities and Colleges (see "Special Report," April 1991 newsletter).

INSIDE: The Final Report of the Preservation Education Task Force is included as an insert to this newsletter.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611

ISSN 1045-1919

The Commission on Preservation and Access

Providing Access To The Accumulated Human Record As Far Into The Future As Possible

Number 40

Newsletter

Nov.-Dec. 1991

Archival Task Forces to Explore Appraisal & Documentation Strategies

To move forward with the development of a collaborative strategy for preservation of and access to archival manuscript and photographic collections, the Commission has formed two task forces — one to examine documentation strategy and one to examine appraisal theory and practice.

At the present time, it is difficult to do national planning or even to evaluate the relative merit of individual projects to preserve archival materials because there are no objective measures by which to judge the strength of a collection. It is hoped that the task forces can help develop such measures.

The groups are charged to examine existing guidelines, theory and practice in order to determine their applicability to the selection of important collections for preservation. One group will consider how best to modify and/or expand the application of documentation strategy so that it will assist archivists in making rational preservation decisions. The other group will consider how to include issues related to current or eventual preservation needs in the appraisal of new acquisitions, and how to address the reappraisal of existing holdings to determine priorities.

Each task force is being asked to produce a formal written report of its findings by May 30, 1992. The reports will then be used as the basis for discussion at a combined meeting of the two groups some time during the summer.

Timothy L. Ericson, archivist of the University of Wisconsin at Milwaukee, who recently served as interim executive director of the Society of American Archivists, is chair of the documentation strategy group. Robert E. Sink, director of archives and records management of the New York Public Library, is chairing the appraisal group. The two task forces are staffed by Margaret Child, consultant.

At the present time, it is difficult to do national planning.

This past decade has been witness to a stunning proliferation of new information technologies and the widespread use of computers in all sectors of society. For that reason, archives must quickly develop the capacity to preserve the record in an increasing variety of formats — paper, audio-visual, computer tapes and disks . . .

— Don W. Wilson, Archivist of the United States, in *For the Record*, The Newsletter of the New York State Archives and Records Administration and the New York State Historical Records Advisory Board, Vol. 9, No. 1, 1991.

Annual Report Highlights Users of Preserved Knowledge

This year the focus of the Commission's Annual Report is on the present and future **users** of the knowledge that is preserved. The 1990-91 report features a special section titled, "The Agony of Choice: Strategies for Preservation and Scholarship." The last two annual reports have highlighted the "keepers" of knowledge — the library and archival communities.

Developments in technology, the International Project, education and training, archives, the Brittle Books program, scientific research and improvement of materials, and institutional initiatives are also covered. The 53-page report has been distributed to all those on the mailing list. Additional copies are available while supplies last.

Board Receives Review and Assessment Report

The external Review and Assessment Committee presented its report to the Commission at the annual board meeting September 26, 1991. The review and assessment committee, charged by the board in December 1990 with conducting a three- to six-month analysis of the Commission's past, present and future mission, operated as a consultant to the board. Its charge was as follows:

- Assess the progress in preservation in the nation over the past five years.
- Assess the continuing need for preservation activities. Identify the major issues for the future: Which are most tractable? Which are most essential?
- Within this context, review and assess the role of the Commission with particular attention to identifying those areas of preservation in which the Commission can be most effective in promoting the interests of the national library and archival community.
- Recommend directions for future Commission activities.

A cover letter to Billy E. Frye, board chairman, from committee chair David

(continued on page 2)

1785 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Suite 313, Washington, D.C. 20036-2117 • (202) 483-7474

Board Receives Review

(continued from page 1)

H. Stam, University Librarian, Syracuse University, states, "We have found the task to be both demanding and satisfying and hope that it will prove helpful to the Commission as it pursues its own most demanding tasks. Please note that the organization of the report adheres fairly closely to the outline of your original charge to the Committee, a structure which we found useful in organizing the fairly massive materials which we accumulated."

In addition to Stam, the committee includes William D. Schaefer, former executive director of the Modern Language Association and executive vice chancellor at the University of California, Los Angeles; L. Yvonne Wulff, Assistant Director for Collection Management, University of Michigan Libraries; and Arthur L. Norberg, Director, Charles Babbage Institute, University of Minnesota.

The board has disseminated the 37-page report to the Commission's U.S. and Canadian mailing list, together with a letter from the chairman requesting comments from readers. Board member Penny Abell is presenting the report to the National Advisory Council on Preservation at its annual meeting in November 1991, and the board will consider the recommendations and comments at its January 30, 1992 meeting. Additional copies of the report are available from the Commission while supplies last.

Mass Deacidification Update

Library of Congress Turns Down Bids

The Library of Congress (LC), which was seeking an industrial firm to deacidify millions of books, has turned down three vendors' offers because none could meet all technical and business requirements. LC issued a request for proposal (RFP) in September 1990 after a year of consultation with conservators and preservation scientists from around the world. The RFP contained requirements for toxicological and environmental safety, process efficacy and other preservation needs, and the aesthetic appearance of treated books.

LC intends, with Congressional support, to continue its search for a suitable mass deacidification technology. The three vendors have given LC permission to release their test data. More information is available from Gerald Garvey, Preservation Projects Officer, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20540.

A book is the only place where you can examine a fragile thought without breaking it, or explore an explosive idea without fear that it will go off in your face.

—Edward P. Morgan

Notre Dame Publishes Papers on Medieval Studies Preservation

Preserving Libraries for Medieval Studies — Working Papers from the Colloquium at the University of Notre Dame, March 25-26, 1990 has been issued by the University Libraries, University of Notre Dame. The 68-page publication contains essays contributed to the colloquium, which was supported by the Commission, the Medieval Academy of America, and Notre Dame's College of Arts and Letters.

The event's purpose was to begin to organize medievalists for a national effort in library preservation. According to the introduction written by colloquium organizer Mark D. Jordan, that purpose is being met, since the final recommendations have led to the forming of a very active national committee for library preservation within the Medieval Academy. The essays, notes Jordan, are worth reading to show "how a group of scholars in a broadly interdisciplinary field began to work out among themselves a practicable program for saving what they count the essential contents of research libraries."

The final recommendations have led to the forming of a very active national committee for library preservation within the Medieval Academy.

In addition to the essays, the publication includes lists of participants, topics of discussions, and recommendations. The Commission has mailed copies of the report to portions of its mailing list. A limited number of additional copies are available upon request.

Intern's Report on Cooperation Accepted for 1992 Book

Working Together — Case Studies in Cooperative Preservation by Intern Condict Gaye Stevenson has been accepted for publication in *Advances in Preservation and Access*, Volume 1 (Westport, CT: Meckler Corporation, 1992). Stevenson compiled the report during a three-month internship with the Commission as she was completing her degree at the School of Library and Information Science at the Catholic University of America. The Commission has distributed the report to its sponsors and colleagues. A limited number of additional copies are available.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117
(202) 483-7474

The Commission on Preservation and Access was established in 1986 to foster and support collaboration among libraries and allied organizations in order to ensure the preservation of the published and documentary record in all formats and to provide enhanced access to scholarly information.

The **Newsletter** reports on cooperative national and international preservation activities and is written primarily for university administrators and faculty, library and archives administrators, preservation specialists and administrators, and representatives of consortia, governmental bodies, and other groups sharing in the Commission's goals. The **Newsletter** is not copyrighted; its duplication and distribution are encouraged.

Patricia Battin, President; Maxine K. Sitts, Program Officer and Newsletter Editor; Pamela M. Davis, Administrative Assistant; Patricia Cece, Communications Assistant. The Commission is accessible via BITNET (CPA@GWUVM, SITTS@GWUVM) and by FAX (202) 483-6410.

A Rearch Review

Some Thoughts on Paper as an Information Storage Medium

This research review was prepared at the Commission's request by Dr. Peter G. Sparks, Preservation Consultant*

Paper as we know it was first made around 105 A.D. in China and has been serving very well in many ways for almost 2000 years. Only in the last 150 years or so has its lack of permanence created the challenges of preserving our written and printed intellectual heritage. Under the heading of the "brittle paper problem," these challenges take up a considerable amount of our time, fiscal resources, and intellectual energy in the search for acceptable solutions. At this time, then, it might be helpful to reflect briefly on how paper has behaved as a medium for the long-term storage of information and what we know about its properties. Perhaps a reminder of what we know about paper can help us choose more wisely where we should be going with the preservation of and access to library materials on paper.

During this century a considerable body of scientific knowledge has come into being that tries to explain how paper ages in a natural and also in an accelerated mode. For example, between 1963 and 1985 there have been at least eighteen research papers published on the subject. Moreover, there are volumes of processing, engineering, and chemical information on how modern paper is made and how its properties relate to various end uses. There are also a number of technical preservation studies done in the last fifteen years that relate to paper preservation. It is not within the scope of this article to review this extensive array of information. Suffice it to say that there is a great deal of technical information about paper that can be used to help us try to understand about its natural and accelerated aging, manufacture, and preservation. If one takes the time to review the results of some of these studies, useful facts turn up that are relevant to the preservation decisions that the field is making. For instance:

• There are many different grades of paper made for printing purposes, and the properties of these papers are different. Furthermore, under certain conditions a paper's properties can change over time.

• The properties of paper appear to change at different rates for different papers. For example, the aging rate is very dependent on what pulp and additives are used in making the paper.

• In accelerated laboratory aging experiments, acid paper loses about 50% of its strength during the first 10% of its life, and papers that became weak from aging lose their remaining strength very slowly over a real time equivalent of many decades. These weak papers do not fall apart on their own. They must have an external stress applied to them to initiate failure.

• A 1980 study showed there is good correlation between changes in paper properties after 35 years of natural aging and accelerated aging (72 hours at 100°C) done 36 years earlier on the original samples. The best correlation occurred for paper made from pure cellulose raw materials, where the acid decomposition reaction is the most significant process.

• The inevitable destiny of paper made by the "acid process" is acid-induced decomposition, enhanced by oxidative decomposition, autocatalyzed by the presence of trace metals, speeded along by moisture and temperature which change it irreversibly into a physically weak and brittle state.

• An increase in the moisture content of paper (due to a higher relative humidity environment) and in its temperature, increase the aging rate of paper. The effect starts to be measurable in the laboratory at relative humidity values above 40% and temperatures above 50° centigrade (122°F).

• Moisture cycling induces stress relaxation in paper, which can lead to irreversible and deleterious property changes.

• Alkaline papers, machine-made or deacidified, exhibit a pronounced decrease in their rate of decomposition as measured in the laboratory. For deacidified paper the magnitude of this effect is reflected in an estimated increase of 3 to 5 times of their original life expectancy with acid present. Different types of papers behave differently when deacidified, but they all gain some additional lifetime benefit. High-quality machine-made papers that have been deacidified can approach laboratory estimated lifetimes in the 400 to 500-year range.

• Coated papers use alkaline pigments, e.g., calcium carbonate, as a coating color. Although little investigation has been done on the accelerated aging of coated papers, the presence of these pigments should have a positive effect on the papers' aging stability. A recent study at the University of Pennsylvania Dental School Library, which has many historic volumes printed on coated paper, showed markedly fewer brittle papers in this collection.

• Collection condition surveys done in the last ten years on a number of major library collections show time after time that 25 to 30 percent of the paper in these collections is already brittle and 75 to 70 percent had some strength remaining. Moreover, these data also point out that 95%

or more of the paper in these collections is acidic. Although much quoted, these data should not be put aside as old information, since they form the basis for documenting the magnitude of the problems and for making preservation decisions.

What do we know from the real time observations that we make in our own collections of books and documents? In addition, what real time observations have been made outside our libraries that can give us a picture of the long term stability or instability of paper? These data are very important because they represent a measurement of how paper has changed over a known amount of time.

We look with wonder at the 15th, 16th, 17th and 18th century handmade papers used in the rare books in our collections. For those fortunate enough to have very early Chinese materials, seeing a paper that is approaching the age of 1000 years is a reassuring experience that these early papers, when properly cared for, are very stable materials. Similar observations can be made in any major library in most parts of the world, and there is no doubt that early hand-made papers have been and still are an archival medium.

On the other hand, papers made in the mid to late 19th century are, with few exceptions, badly degraded to a weakened and brittle condition. This of course is no big secret to any librarian or preservation officer. It is, however, overwhelming proof that the "inevitable destiny" of any paper made by the acid process is to eventually become brittle.

Observations of historic coated papers are very interesting. Many plates in late 19th century books are coated papers. I have seen a number of plates in perfectly fine condition sandwiched between weak and acidic pages in the same book. The coated paper appears to have held up well under rather adverse conditions for 75 to 100 years.

We have all seen brittle book papers that begin to fall apart during normal library use. The first locus of breaking is usually on corners and along the book spine where the paper can be easily bent through a small radius. If a piece of brittle paper is handled very carefully or not at all, it does not break and will tend to remain in one piece unless put under an externally applied bending or tensile stress. When a brittle sheet is put in a Mylar folder or Mylar encapsulated, for example, the paper is prevented from bending through a small radius by the supporting Mylar film and this allows the paper to be handled without breaking.

A machine-made alkaline paper produced in 1901 by Edwin Sutermeister at the S.D. Warren Paper Company has been under continuous observation since then and is reported to be holding up very well. This is perhaps the oldest piece of machine-made alkaline paper whose condition has been documented at frequent intervals.

Where does all this leave us with respect to paper and its future fate as a medium for storing information? How can this type of information be interpreted for use in shaping decisions? Here are a few examples:

1. Given the observations in the laboratory, from a materials behavior standpoint, brittle book paper (1 fold or less) will not fall apart if the volume is left unused on the shelf year after year. The minute changes in paper strength will be hard to measure in the laboratory and undetectable to the touch. On the other hand, that same brittle paper will start to break up during normal library usage, handling and processing.

2. Large diversified research collections contain a broad range of paper types from different time periods and from all the corners of the world. Research tells us that the aging behavior of these papers will be different. Therefore, the condition of these papers at any given time can be widely different. As a result, deacidification of a diverse collection will probably not impart *uniform stability and similar extended lifetimes* to all grades of paper represented in that collection. Deacidification can, however, increase the stability and lifetime to a varying degree of all the papers in that collection that are not brittle. Lastly, deacidification will probably not make all papers in that collection "archival" preservation media.

3. Handmade papers from many cultures and earlier periods have exhibited excellent archival preservation behavior over many centuries and will continue to do so if we can continue to shield them from specific physical, chemical and biological dangers. It is also probably true that machine-made papers made with high quality cotton pulp, non-acid sizing systems and loaded with 1 to 2% of a slightly alkaline filler will behave as an archival material. These stable papers will probably not need to be reformatted in order to create a preservation master copy. However, wide access to these materials may require a new format for distribution to other parties.

I will leave it to the readers of this article to further weigh how the modest sample of technical information presented above can help them in their own programs. We are fortunate to have a wealth of technical information on paper — perhaps a better data set than we have on any other medium — and we can use this information to define the role of paper in the library and archive collections of the future. We also need a continuing effort to carefully document past and recent scientific findings about paper behavior so the library and archive preservation field can use those findings in making informed decisions on how and when to retain and preserve or replace the paper in our current collections.

**The author served as Director for Preservation at the Library of Congress for eight years before becoming a consultant in 1989. His education is in the physical chemistry of polymers.*

Excerpted from an article to appear in the 1992 Advances in Preservation and Access, vol.1, published by Meckler. For a discussion of terms associated with the technologies of document preservation, see Preservation and Access Technology, The Relationship Between Digital and Other Media Conversion Processes: A Structured Glossary of Technical Terms, by M. Stuart Lynn and the Technology Assessment Advisory Committee.

UPDATE ON DIGITAL TECHNIQUES

by Anne R. Kenney and Lynne K. Personius

Cornell University and Xerox Corporation, with the support of the Commission on Preservation and Access, have been collaborating in a project to test a prototype system for recording deteriorating books as digital images and producing, on demand, high quality and archivally sound paper facsimiles. The project goes beyond that, however, to investigate some of the issues surrounding scanning, storing, retrieving, and providing access to digital images in a network environment.

The project has involved the collaborative efforts of two Cornell divisions, the University Library and Cornell Information Technologies (CIT). It is co-managed by the Assistant Director, Department of Preservation and Conservation, and the Assistant Director of CIT for Scholarly Information Sources (the authors of this article). While the two divisions have worked closely in the past, most notably in the conversion to an on-line catalog, this co-sponsorship serves as a model for future projects involving the library and information technology organizations in the use and control of electronic technologies. Within Xerox Corporation, the College Library Access and Storage System (CLASS) Project has been assigned to a group of engineers, with liaisons from marketing, system support, networking, and other projects. Representatives from these units participate in project development team meetings where the management from Cornell and Xerox discuss problems and possible solutions, share information, and chart future directions. The site for these meetings alternates between Xerox headquarters in Rochester and Cornell University in Ithaca.

PRODUCTION

This collaborative relationship has resulted in the development of workstation hardware and software specifically designed for use in a scanning environment where high speed, high resolution scanners are controlled by technicians. In the course of this project, which runs through December 1991, Cornell is scanning at 600 dots per inch resolution (dpi) 1,000 brittle volumes at a workstation located in Olin Library, the main graduate library. Scanned images are being created as TIFF images and compressed prior to storage using Group 4 CCITT compression.1

While this project is still in an experimental stage, and the initial costs incurred with "ramping up" for production are high, some preliminary findings of the Cornell/Xerox Project suggest that the use of scanning technology represents an affordable alternative to microfilming for reformatting brittle material. The time spent in actual scanning is comparable with microfilming production rates if all of the post-processing testing and quality control required of microfilming service bureaus are taken into account. In the Cornell/Xerox Project, scanning rates over 1500 images per day have been attained for sustained periods as long as three weeks or more. However, since the project is developmental, and production is frequently interrupted for software and hardware upgrades and testing (not to mention visitors!), production measurements for longer time periods have not been possible. These scan rates include time spent in initial setup and on-screen inspection, scanning, storing to optical, rescanning, and transmittal for printing.2

At this stage, if one were to compare the actual and projected costs associated with producing microfilm via production scanning to costs associated with service bureau microfilming, the two processes are competitive. The production-related costs of scanning to produce microfilm include labor, equipment, overhead, and conversion to microfilm. Today, these costs are comparable to, and within two years are projected to be less than, the costs of using conventional microfilming methodologies.

It appears that the cost feasibility of using digital technology for preservation reformatting is present today. In addition to fulfilling a preservation need by the creation of microfilm, digital technology offers value-added access and distribution benefits. The possibilities exist for converting microfilm to digital imagery as well, and Yale University has prepared a report on the feasibility of a project to study the means, costs, and benefits of converting large quantities of preserved library materials from microfilm to digital images.3

If one were to look at the costs of producing both microfilm and digital masters, the costs would include initial capture, conversion (to film in one instance, and to digital in the other), plus costs of storage and refreshing of the digital masters to keep them compatible with upgrades in the technology (which are identical for the two processes). The costs for scanning first versus microfilming first appear to favor the former. Over time the gap will continue to widen, with scanning first becoming significantly cheaper due to the anticipated decline in costs associated with the use of electronic technologies as compared with photographic technologies over the next decade.4 Cornell is preparing a detailed cost study on the use of digital technology that will be made available at the end of this project through the Commission on Preservation and Access.

If the cost associated with producing both microfilm (for preservation) and digital files (for access) were no longer a factor in determining which method of capture to use, the next concern to consider is quality. While newer continuous tone films may soon be available, the high contrast film currently used is not totally acceptable for reformatting a large percentage of illustrated material. With digital technology it is possible to capture halftone images as gray scale and surrounding text as high contrast black and white. Thus it may prove to be the case that capturing an image digitally first will result in a higher quality microfilm copy--or hard copy replacement or on-screen representation--than is currently achievable with conventional microfilming. Clearly this issue warrants further investigation. A lot of brittle material has already been microfilmed and obviously it is desirable to scan and digitize some of it for access purposes. Yale University's proposed project to convert large quantities of preserved library materials from microfilm to digital images will provide valuable data on the means, costs, and benefits involved. The issue of quality should be studied carefully. However as will be discussed below, much work needs to be accomplished before scanning technology can become a true alternative to microfilming.

IMAGE QUALITY

The digital files that are created at the scanning workstation in Olin Library may be viewed on screen during the initial set up for each book using the interface delivered as part of the Xerox product. The scanned images are then transmitted over the Cornell TCP/IP network for printing at a Xerox Docutech printer located in the computer center one half mile away. This recently released Xerox product prints 600 dpi pages from scanned images at the speed of 135 pages/minute.5

In the Cornell/Xerox Project, a primary goal is to evaluate the paper output from the Docutech. Copies are being made for each of the 1,000 books included in the project. The quality of the paper copy is extremely high: there is less than 1% variation in print size from the original; skew results only when the edge of the original text is not parallel to the

page trim; front to back registration is reproduced within 1/100th of an inch of the original; the contrast between text and background is sharp; and the 600 dpi resolution compares favorably with the capture capabilities of photocopy. While lower resolution scanning devices can produce satisfactory copies from crisp, high contrast modern documents, many of the 1,000 deteriorating volumes in this project contain irregular features typical of the production typography and printing techniques of the past century and a half. The 600 dpi copies successfully capture these printing nuances to represent faithful and legible reproductions of the originals. As paper copies are printed on permanent/durable paper that meets the ANSI standards for permanence, and the Docutech printer meets the machine and toner requirements for proper adhesion of print to page, the paper product is considered to be the archival equivalent of preservation photocopy.6

Microfilm also can be reproduced directly from the digital files. The Cornell/Xerox Project has produced some microfilm on a test basis with a company that has developed the capability of transferring high resolution digital images and gray scale into digital microfilm output. That company's sample microfilm output from 600 dpi images has a very high resolution, and the image is crisp with sharp contrast between text and background. Cornell will use microfilm output as its primary backup for the digital files, and as the preservation copy of the originals to meet national standards.

NETWORK CAPABILITIES

Xerox has announced its intention to enable Docutech to receive documents for printing directly from remote electronic devices. As of this writing (summer 1991), however, Cornell has the only networked version of the Docutech outside of Xerox. This configuration allows Cornell not only to separate physically the scanning function from printing but also to store the digital files in an image management system for subsequent use and dissemination. The digital files are being cataloged in both the Cornell on-line catalog (NOTIS) and the Research Libraries Group, Inc. database (RLIN). These records will provide researchers around the country with their initial access point into this developing digital library.

During this last year, Xerox, with the involvement of Cornell, has designed and is in the process of developing the architecture that provides the means for creating, organizing, storing, printing, and accessing digital images in a network environment. The CLASS system is composed of a software application that controls the scanning workstation, a flexible document structure architecture, a storage system, and a user interface designed for the public, all connected by a network to the DocuTech printer.

In the Autumn of 1991, the digital images will be transmitted to an image storage facility, consisting of an image server and an optical jukebox, also located in the computer center. The digital images will be stored on 12 inch optical platters and ultimately made accessible over the Cornell network via a request server that is in the final stages of development. Within the scope of this current project, researchers will be able to generate a print on demand request for a book or any portion of a book via this request server.

Critical to all of the system design and networking configuration is the document structure information. Xerox has produced detailed specifications for the software and database to implement the document structure architecture that are described in internal Xerox project reports. The document structure defines the organization of each book. It orders the individual images captured during the scanning process into a logical arrangement for presentation to the user. The "official" document structure is built at the time of scanning by the technicians. This document structure will describe the original text as accurately as possible, and will be stored with each digital book.

The overriding principle that guides the definition of the official document structure is that the correlation between images, and the page numbers printed on the originals, will be retained. This ensures that a request to view a particular page number from the text recalls the image with that number printed on it. Once this has been done, all of the self-referencing components of the original can take on real meaning in the digital version.

The second principle is that the user must have easy access to those self-referencing portions of the original. The table of contents, the index, list of illustrations or other pages that provide references within the text should be tabbed for easy use. Once these pages have been recalled on the computer screen, the user will be able to request specific pages or page ranges within the book. For instance, a person viewing the image of the table of contents can create a request for a chapter or a set of chapters to be located for on-screen viewing or printing.

The creation of the official document structure file for a given book should be kept as simple and straightforward as possible. The two principles, to provide retrieval by original page numbers and access to self-referencing sections from the original, are relatively easy to implement by the scanning technicians. More complete indexing would require additional time and a higher level of subject expertise, thus increasing the cost of initial capture.

In the digital environment, images may be viewed as part of more than one structure. Within the preservation context, there are at least two applications of this capability. First, a new document structure will be used to combine the text of books with microfilm targets that have been scanned in preparation for the creation of a microfilm copy from the digital files. Second, the digital files for a volume with damaged or missing material may be combined with images for substitute pages located elsewhere.

However, it is in the area of use that personalized document structures will prove most valuable. Ultimately, for example, anthologies or reserve reading packets can be assembled and annotated by defining a new document structure record describing text files and digital images that were originally part of several books. In fact, these originals may be located at different institutions. The ability to produce customized documents offers scholars new opportunities for research and publication but will pose challenges in the area of copyright and authenticity.

LOCAL ACCESS

Another component of the Cornell/Xerox project is the development of a public viewstation. A prototype has been installed in the Mathematics Library where users can access the full digital images for fifty mathematics monographs.[7] Xerox has provided the workstation and the software system, with input into the design by a committee of Cornell librarians and computer professionals, that is tailored to the library patron who is browsing the collections to chose material for use. From that workstation, researchers can select a book for review from a list of search results displayed in one window. A book icon is then moved to a second window known as the personal book shelf. After choices are made, opening the icon causes the actual pages of the book to be displayed on a high resolution screen. Screen output is delivered as 200 dpi images that are derived from the 600 dpi ones and resized to fit two pages to an 11 X 14 inch screen. Images can be enlarged for reading fine text; pages can be selected for viewing; tabs can be placed in the book for ease of movement through the text; and a request to print all or part of the book can be issued by the user.

The quality of the on-screen image is quite acceptable, principally as it is anticipated that screen viewing will be used for rapid browsing and retrieval. For extended reading, a user will soon be able to initiate a print-on-demand request of the 600 dpi digital images. This

workstation represents the first step in providing a level of browsing and retrieval that approximates looking through books in library stacks. In future projects, Cornell will develop an image conversion server that will enable readers from around the country to access the digital images using common computer platforms, such as Apple MacIntosh, IBM PS/2, and Sun workstations.

NATIONAL ACCESS

Remote access to digital images presumes a national networking infrastructure that can accommodate the transmission of massive data at high speeds. The files for digital images are large. An 8 and 1/2 X 11" page stored at 200 dpi resolution may be as large as 4 megabytes in its uncompressed form, compared to the file for an alpha-numeric representation of the page (averaging 3,000-5,000 bytes per page).8 Even though digital files may be compressed for storage and transmission economy, the resulting compressed images are still quite large. In the Cornell/Xerox project, the compression ratio is 15 to 1 for textual materials, with compressed image files averaging from 60,000 to 80,000 bytes per page. Transmitting a significant number of digital images would overwhelm moderate to low capacity networks.

The National Research and Education Network (NREN), currently pending funding in Congress, will consolidate the collection of TCP/IP networks now known as the Internet into one high speed, high capacity system. It is predicted that the increasing capacity of such a national network will keep pace with the demand for the timely transmission of an increasing volume of large digital files.9 Michael M. Roberts, in the Summer 1991 issue of EDUCOM Review, suggests that advances in the semi-inductor and fiber optics industries have resulted in a communications revolution that offers networking speed and capacity at costs that are reasonable. He goes on to modify a quotation by Gordon Moore, chairman of Intel Corporation, who said "Make your plans on the assumption MIPS are free." According to Roberts, "Today an updated prediction would be, 'Make your plans on the assumption BITS are free.'"10

The growth of networking in the United Stated during the 1980s has resulted in connections between many universities as well as government and industrial partners. The digital library of image information will be available to people in any of these locations. Estimates for distribution of network access by the end of 1991 include over 1,000 sites serving 2 to 4 million people involved in research or education. NREN will triple the number of sites, reaching all states and territories by 1995.11 It appears that the scanning and digitizing of deteriorating library material and the establishment of large capacity networks could coincide to produce a truly national digital library.

NOTES

1. Digital image technology, for the purposes of this article, is defined as the electronic encoding of scanned documents in digital image form. The text contained in these images is not converted (for textual interpretation or indexing purposes) to alphanumeric form at the time of scanning, although the potential exists for such conversion, in whole or part, from the digital files at some later time. The present capabilities of optical character recognition are inadequate for capturing both the information and the presentation of the original document, especially when one considers the vast number of languages, illustrations, type faces, and printing techniques present in the collections of modern research libraries. See Stephen Smith and Craig Stanfill, "An Analysis of the Effects of Data Corruption on Text Retrieval Performance," (Thinking Machines Corporation, Cambridge, MA: December 14, 1988).

2. In a recent three week period, the average daily scan rate was 1548, which included initial setup and on-screen inspection, scanning, storing, rescanning, and transmittal for printing. This rate was achieved despite down time for system and network failures associated with the use of prototype equipment and time spent in demonstrations for visitors. Estimates for one image per frame filming range as high as 2,000 per shift, but microfilming service bureaus are also responsible for density and resolution tests, visual film inspection, the preparation of three generations of film, and box labeling. The time to complete these additional tasks should be considered in calculating the microfilming production rate. Phone conversations, Anne R. Kenney with Shawne Diaz Cressman, Shift Supervisor, MAPS, The MicrogrAphic

Preservation Service, and with Fred Keib, Manager, Cornell Photographic Services, August 28, 1991.

The potential for containing labor costs exists on a number of fronts with digital technology. For example, selection and preparation time often represents a large percentage of the expense in reformatting. In a microfilm project, material is normally inspected for completeness prior to filming and after filming as well, because the number of retakes on a role of film is strictly limited. Digital technology is infinitely flexible: a page may be inserted or replaced with ease. Thus in a scanning project, material need be inspected just once, at the end of the process, rather than twice. Similarly, items that are missing pages may be scanned at any time, and the missing pages inserted as they are located. The major labor costs, that associated with the scanning of images, could also decline as institutions move from prototype to production operations and as improvements in automatic and semi-automatic feed mechanisms eliminate the risk of a paper jam, as automatic skew detection becomes standard, and as bound volume scanners are developed.

3. Donald J. Waters, From Microfilm to Digital Imagery. On the feasibility of a project to study the means, costs and benefits of converting large quantities of preserved library materials from microfilm to digital images (Washington: The Commission on Preservation and Access, 1991). Michael Lesk has argued that the cost of creating digital images from microfilm will be cheaper than scanning. See Michael Lesk, Image Formats For Preservation And Access. A Report of the Technology Assessment Advisory Committee to the Commission on Preservation and Access (Washington, Commission on Preservation and Access, 1990), p. 8.

4. Cost analysis was also a part of the National Library of Medicine study, where costs for scanning and related activities ranged between 12 and 28 cents per page. See volume 1, pages 11-15 in Document Preservation by Electronic Imaging. See also National Archives and Records Administration, Optical Digital Image Storage System, Project Report, March 1991 (Washington: National Archives and Records Administration, 1991) p. 19-24. The latter report concluded that scanning could not be justified purely on the basis of cost alone. Intangible benefits were cited, such as improved image legibility, improved timeliness and accuracy of access, enhanced retrieval, reduction of space requirements, and reduced or eliminated handling of original documents.

5. Barnaby J. Feder, "A Copier That Does a Lot More," The New York Times, Wednesday, October 3, 1990, D1.

6. Norvell M.M. Jones, Archival Copies of Thermofax, Verifax, and Other Unstable Records. National Archives Technical Information Paper No. 5. (Washington: National Archives and Records Administration, 1990). ANSI Standard Z39.48-1984, currently being revised, covers the requirements for permanent/durable paper. The Cornell/Xerox Project compared paper output from digital files that were scanned and printed at 300 dpi to those scanned and printed at 600 dpi. The 300 dpi images were found to be unacceptable for replacing (as opposed to providing surrogates for) deteriorating originals.

7. The first 500 of the 1,000 volumes chosen for the Cornell/Xerox Project were selected from the Mathematics Library and include works of significant authors and individual titles that have contributed substantially to the development of the discipline.

8. Anderson, Mitchell, Pennebaker, and Gonzales, "Image Compression Algorithms," (Paper delivered at the International Electronic Imaging Exposition & Conference, Boston, MA., October 3, 1988), pp. 398-401

9. Kenneth M. King, "Progress in Building a National Information Infrastructure," EDUCOM Review 26, No. 2 (Summer 1991): 63-64. The Coalition for Networked Information (CNI) was formed by the Association of Research Libraries, CAUSE, and EDUCOM in March 1990 to explore the promise of high performance computers and advanced networks for enriching scholarship and enhancing intellectual productivity. It has become a recognized force in the evolution of policies and practices which will govern the networked research and education information environment.

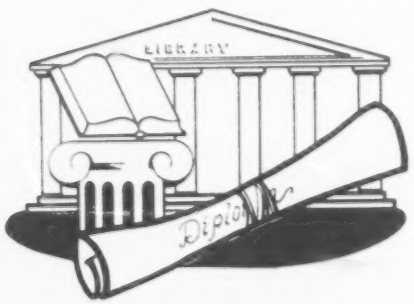
10. Michael M. Roberts, "Positioning the National Research and Education Network," EDUCOM Review 26, No. 2 (Summer 1991): 12

11. Paul Evan Peters, "Connectivity," (presentation to the Bentley Mellon Fellow Seminar on the Impact of Technology on the Research Process: Archives in the Year 2000, Ann Arbor, July 18, 1991).

College Libraries Committee Discusses Management Training, Digital Preservation

A Preservation Management Seminar for College Libraries and a proposed digital technology project provided the major agenda items for the College Libraries Committee at an October 1991 meeting held at Commission headquarters. The first one-week preservation management seminar, developed jointly by the Commission and SOLINET (Atanta, GA), was held July 20-27, 1991 at Washington & Lee University. According to Lisa Fox, SOLINET Preservation Officer, positive evaluations of the seminar were due in large part to the high motivation of attendees and to the ability of the faculty to adjust to learners' needs. Participants' awareness of and confidence in institutional support also contributed to a successful event.

The committee agreed to move ahead in planning a second seminar.



The committee and SOLINET will conduct follow-up evaluations with participants and library directors in February 1992, focusing on the seminar's impact on institutions' preservation programs. The committee agreed to move ahead in planning a second seminar in the northeast in Summer 1992, with tuition held at current rates. Further information on application procedures and location can be obtained from SOLINET, phone 800-999-8558.

Recognizing that there are many issues to address, including selection of materials and copyright, the committee agreed to consider the feasibility of a project to use digital imaging equipment to cooperatively scan out-of-print books needed for current college instructional programs. A benefit of scanning equipment is that it can be used by many departments on a campus. By taking advantage of existing equipment and an existing network, a library can gain the capability for digital imaging for incremental costs. A technology sub-group will examine the applicability of this approach, to be discussed at the next meeting scheduled for March 20, 1992.

California Advances Statewide Preservation

California has recently issued the proceedings of a March 1991 conference — *Toward a California Preservation Program*; prepared packages of original software and instructions for institutions to assess their preservation needs; and named a 30-person Preservation Task Force to participate in a three-day retreat in February 1992 to draft a statewide preservation cooperation plan.

The March 1991 conference, which marked the beginning of the statewide preservation program, was attended by 150 librarians, historians and archivists. The state financed the conference proceedings with Library Services and Construction Act Title III funds administered by the state librarian. The state now is distributing new needs assessment software packages that enable institutions to discriminate among competing preservation needs and establish priorities.

The upcoming February 1992 retreat will use previous conference outcomes and statistical data to draft a cooperative plan, which the state expects to implement under the emerging California Multitype Library Network. Further information is available from Barbara Will, Networking Coordinator, at the California State Library, Library Development Services, 1001 Sixth Street, Suite 300, Sacramento, CA 95814.

Preprint on Technology & Ethics of Future Preservation

"Mixed Microform and Digital", a preprint of an article by Rowland C.W. Brown appearing in the October 1991 AIIM *INFORM*, is available upon request from the Commission. The four-page article, prepared at the request of the Association for Information and Image Management (Silver Spring, MD), discusses ethical and technical considerations of the preservation of knowledge as we enter an environment in which electronic technologies may well dominate traditional print options.

Somehow our acceptance of impermanence in society may have dulled our efforts to seek immortality.

"Somehow our acceptance of impermanence in society may have dulled our efforts to seek immortality, to record for all time the fruits of our creativity, our life and times, our accomplishments and beliefs," Brown writes, suggesting that multiple solutions will be required for the future. Brown is a consultant to the Commission and chair of the Technology Assessment Advisory Committee.

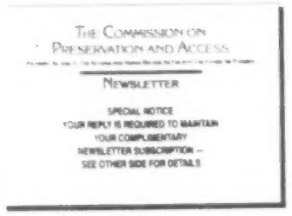
Board Member Avram Honored

Henriette D. Avram, associate librarian for collection services at the Library of Congress (LC) and a Commission board member, retires from LC at the end of December 1991. Ms. Avram has served LC for over 25 years, the last eight as director of the library's largest service unit. Ms. Avram's achievements are termed "formidable" by the library profession, and a recent tribute tagged her the "quintessential librarian." "She leaves a legacy here not only in the structure and standards of our bibliographic operations, but in the many library managers and specialists nurtured under her stewardship," commented James Billington, Librarian of Congress.

About Your Newsletter Subscription

On August 26, 1991, we mailed a SPECIAL NOTICE to all newsletter subscribers, asking for a reply by October 31, 1991. The notice asked subscribers wishing to continue receiving this complimentary newsletter to return the form, making any necessary address corrections. The notice explained that persons who did not return the form would be deleted from the mailing list.

As of the October 31, 1991, deadline, we have received replies from half of our mailing list of nearly 1,000. For those of you who did not return the form, this


THE COMMISSION ON PRESERVATION AND ACCESS

NEWSLETTER

SPECIAL NOTICE
YOUR REPLY IS REQUIRED TO MAINTAIN YOUR COMPLIMENTARY NEWSLETTER SUBSCRIPTION — SEE OTHER SIDE FOR DETAILS

is the last newsletter you will receive. (NOTE: Commission sponsors will continue to receive the newsletter, as will persons who were added to the list after August 26, 1991.)

We instituted this "purge" to help us contain our newsletter printing and mailing costs. We appreciate your cooperation in helping us maintain this newsletter as a service of the Commission.

Libraries should gauge their quality not in terms of size but in terms of how successful library users are in obtaining the information they want and whether librarians can obtain and deliver documents and information in a timely manner. . . . For most library users, success is getting your hands on what you need, when you need it. . . .

— Point of View — "Research Libraries Must Abandon the Idea That 'Bigger is Better' " by Richard M. Dougherty; The Chronicle of Higher Education; June 19, 1991.

INSIDE THIS NEWSLETTER

- "Update on Digital Techniques," a report from the collaborative project of Cornell University and Xerox Corporation to test a prototype system for recording deteriorating books as digital images and producing high quality, archivally sound paper facsimiles.
- Also, a Special Report, "Some Thoughts on Paper as an Information Storage Medium," prepared by Peter G. Sparks at the Commission's request as part of its scientific research initiative.

The Commission on Preservation and Access
1785 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 313
Washington, DC 20036-2117

NONPROFIT
ORGANIZATION
U.S. POSTAGE
PAID
Washington, DC
Permit No. 3611